

Europäisches Patentamt
European Patent Office
Office européen des brevets



(11) EP 0 882 718 A1

(12)

EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION

published in accordance with Art. 158(3) EPC

(43) Date of publication:
09.12.1998 Bulletin 1998/50

(21) Application number: 96943331.7

(22) Date of filing: 27.12.1996

(51) Int. Cl.⁶: **C07D 235/08**, C07D 235/10,
C07D 235/22, C07D 235/24,
C07D 235/26, C07D 235/28,
C07D 235/30, C07D 401/06,
C07D 401/12, C07D 405/06,
C07D 417/14

(86) International application number:
PCT/JP96/03858

(87) International publication number:
WO 97/24334 (10.07.1997 Gazette 1997/30)

(84) Designated Contracting States:
AT BE CH DE DK ES FI FR GB GR IE IT LI LU MC
NL PT SE

(30) Priority: 28.12.1995 JP 343425/95
08.10.1996 JP 287676/96

(71) Applicant:
FUJISAWA PHARMACEUTICAL CO., LTD.
Osaka-shi Osaka 541 (JP)

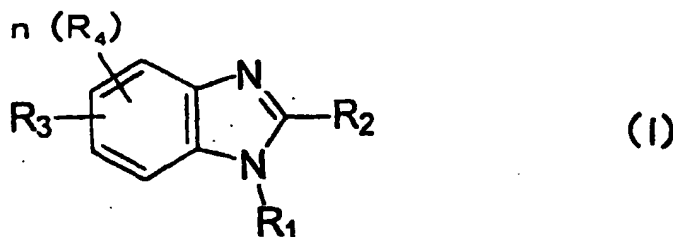
(72) Inventors:
• YAMASAKI, Noritsugu
Hyogo 672-8071 (JP)

- IMOTO, Takafumi
Ibaraki 305 (JP)
- MURAI, Yoshiyuki
Ibaraki 305 (JP)
- HIRAMURA, Takahiro
Ibaraki 305 (JP)
- OKU, Teruo
Ibaraki 305 (JP)
- SAWADA, Kouzou
Ibaraki 305 (JP)

(74) Representative:
VOSSIUS & PARTNER
Siebertstrasse 4
81675 München (DE)

(54) **BENZIMIDAZOLE DERIVATIVES**

(57) Novel benzimidazole derivatives represented by the formula (I):



wherein R₃ is a carboxyl group, a esterified carboxyl group, an amidated carboxyl group, an amino group, an amido group, or a sulfonyl group, or their pharmaceutically acceptable salts. Because of their blood sugar-depressing effect or PDE5 inhibitory effect, these compounds or salts thereof are useful as medicines for treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes, diabetic complications, syndrome of insulin resistance, hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders, hyperglycemia, or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy, tubulointerstitial disorders, renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis, distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions, allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by entero-

EP 0 882 718 A1

EP 0 882 718 A1

motility disorders, impotence, diabetic complications, nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA.

Description

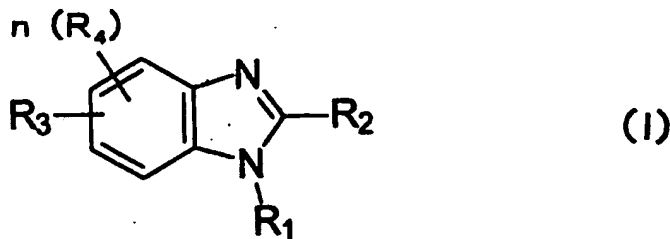
TECHNICAL FIELD

5 The present invention relates to novel benzimidazole derivatives, and, more precisely, to novel benzimidazole derivatives and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts having blood sugar level-depressing activity or PDE5-inhibiting activity. The present invention also relates to pharmaceutical compositions comprising, as an active ingredient, such benzimidazole derivatives or their salts.

10 DISCLOSURE OF THE INVENTION

The subject matter of the present invention is to provide novel benzimidazole derivatives and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts, and also pharmaceutical compositions which comprise, as an active ingredient, such benzimidazole derivatives or their pharmaceutically acceptable salts, and which are useful for preventing and treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes (type II diabetes), diabetic complications (e.g., diabetic nephropathy, diabetic neuropathy, diabetic retinopathy, etc.), syndrome of insulin resistance (e.g., insulin receptor disorders, Rabson-Mendenhall syndrome, leprechaunism, Kobberling-Dunnigan syndrome, Seip syndrome, Lawrence syndrome, Cushing syndrome, acromegaly, etc.), hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders (e.g., stenocardia, cardiac failure, etc.), hyperglycemia (e.g., abnormal saccharometabolism such as feeding disorders, etc.), or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy (e.g., diabetic glomerulosclerosis, etc.), tubulointerstitial disorders (e.g., renopathy induced by FK506, cyclosporin, etc.), renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis (e.g., after percutaneous arterioplasty), distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions (e.g., bronchitis, asthma (chronic asthma, allergic asthma), etc.), allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders (e.g., hypersensitive enteropathy syndrome, etc.), impotence (e.g., organic impotence, psychic impotence, etc.), and diabetic complications (e.g., diabetic gangrene, diabetic arthropathy, diabetic glomerulosclerosis, diabetic dermatopathy, diabetic neuropathy, diabetic cataract, diabetic retinopathy, etc.), nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA.

The present inventors provide pharmaceutical compositions comprising, as an active ingredient, any of benzimidazole derivatives of the following formulae (I) to (IV) and (VII) to (XIV), and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts, which is usable for preventing and treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes (type II diabetes), diabetic complications such as diabetic nephropathy, diabetic neuropathy and diabetic retinopathy, syndrome of insulin resistance (e.g., insulin receptor disorders, Rabson-Mendenhall syndrome, leprechaunism, Kobberling-Dunnigan syndrome, Seip syndrome, Lawrence syndrome, Cushing syndrome, acromegaly, etc.), hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders (e.g., stenocardia, cardiac failure, etc.), hyperglycemia (e.g., abnormal saccharometabolism such as feeding disorders, etc.), or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy (e.g., diabetic glomerulosclerosis, etc.), tubulointerstitial disorders (e.g., renopathy induced by FK506, cyclosporin, etc.), renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis (e.g., after percutaneous arterioplasty), distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions (e.g., bronchitis, asthma (chronic asthma, allergic asthma), etc.), allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders (e.g., hypersensitive enteropathy syndrome, etc.), impotence (e.g., organic impotence, psychic impotence, etc.), and diabetic complications (e.g., diabetic gangrene, diabetic arthropathy, diabetic glomerulosclerosis, diabetic dermatopathy, diabetic neuropathy, diabetic cataract, diabetic retinopathy, etc.), nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA.



55

In formula (I);

R₁ represents a hydrogen atom, an arylsulfonyl group, or a lower alkyl group; said lower alkyl group may be substi-

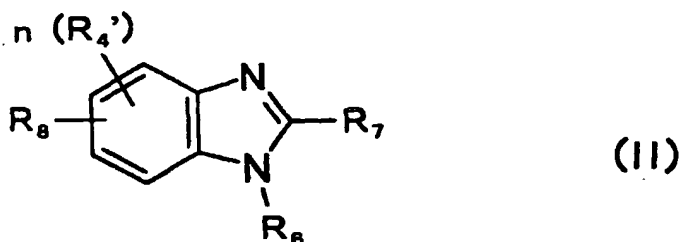
tuted by an aryl group or an aryl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a haloaryl group, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkyloxy group, a haloaryl-lower alkyloxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, a cyanoaryl group, and a heterocyclic group, or by a heterocyclic group;

R_2 represents a hydrogen atom, a lower cycloalkyl group, a hydroxyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a mercapto group, a lower alkylthio group, an amino group, a lower alkylamino group, a carboxyl group, an aryl group, or a lower alkyl group; said lower alkyl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkoxy group, a cyano group, a chlorocarbonyl group, an aryl group, or a heterocyclic group;

R_3 represents a carboxyl group, an esterified carboxyl group, an amidated carboxyl group, an amino group, an amido group, or a sulfonyl group; said amino group and said amido group may be substituted by an acyl group or a sulfonyl group; and a halogen atom, an amino group, or an acylamino group is bonded to said sulfonyl group; or R_3 may be bonded to the skeleton via a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

R_4 represents a neutral substituent; and

n means an integer from 0 to 3.

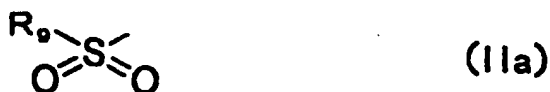


In formula (II);

R_6 represents an aryl-lower alkyl group or an aryl-lower alkyl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a haloaryl group, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a cyanoaryl group, an aryl-lower alkyloxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, and a heterocyclic group;

R_7 represents a lower alkyl group or a lower cycloalkyl group;

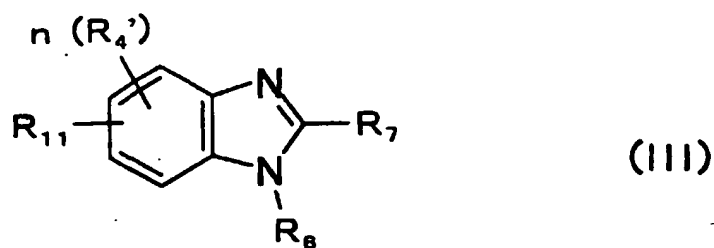
R_8 represents a carbamoyl group, which may be substituted by a lower alkyl group, a lower alkyl group substituted by a substituted or unsubstituted aryl group or a substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic group, an aryl group, a heterocyclic group, or a group of:



in which R_9 represents an alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a hydroxy-lower alkyl group, a tri-lower alkylsilyl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylthio-lower alkyl group, a heterocyclic group, or an aryl group; said aryl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, or a nitro group; or R_8 may be bonded to the skeleton via a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

R_4' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and

n means an integer from 0 to 3.



In formula (III);

15 R_6 represents an aryl-lower alkyl group or an aryl-lower alkyl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a haloaryl group, a cyanoaryl group, an aryl-lower alkoxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, and a heterocyclic group;

R_7 represents a lower alkyl group or a lower cycloalkyl group;

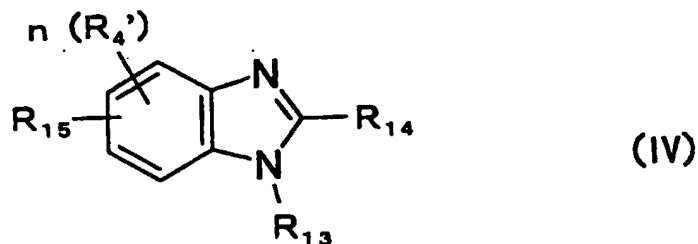
20 R_{11} represents a substituent of a formula:



30 in which R_{12} represents an alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a hydroxy-lower alkyl group, a tri-lower alkylsilyl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylthio-lower alkyl group, a heterocyclic group, or an aryl group; said aryl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, or a nitro group;

or R_{11} may be bonded to the skeleton via a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

35 R_4' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and
n means an integer from 0 to 3.



In formula (IV);

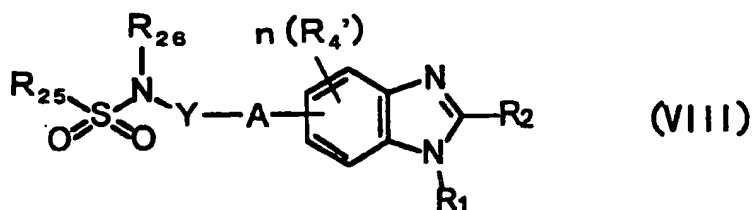
50 R_{13} represents an aryl-lower alkyl group or an aryl-lower alkyl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a haloaryl group, a cyanoaryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, and a heterocyclic group;

R_{14} represents a lower alkyl group;

55 R_{15} represents a substituent of a formula:



in which R_{16} represents a lower alkyl group or an aryl group;
 R_4' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and
 n means an integer from 0 to 3.



In formula (VIII);

R_1 represents a hydrogen atom, an arylsulfonyl group, or a lower alkyl group; said lower alkyl group may be substituted by an aryl group or an aryl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a haloaryl group, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkoxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a haloaryl-lower alkoxy group, an arylsulfonylamino group, an arylcarbonylamino group, an arylcarbonyl group, an arylalkenyl group, a cyanoaryl group, and a heterocyclic group, or by a heterocyclic group;

R_2 represents a hydrogen atom, a lower cycloalkyl group, a hydroxyl group, a hydroxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a mercapto group, a lower alkylthio group, an amino group, a lower alkylamino group, a carboxyl group, an aryl group, or a lower alkyl group; said lower alkyl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkoxy group, a cyano group, a halocarbonyl group, an aryl group, or a heterocyclic group;

R_{25} represents an alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, a lower cycloalkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a tri-lower alkylsilyl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylthio-lower alkyl group, an aryl group, a heterocyclic group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, or a hydroxy-lower alkyl group; said aryl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, or a nitro group;

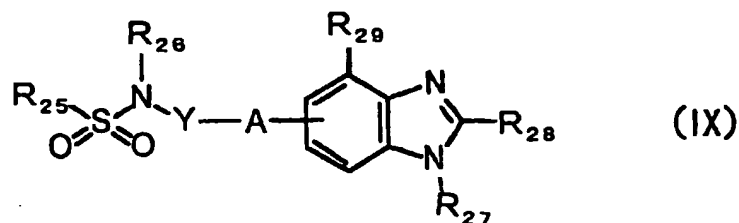
R_{26} represents a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group; provided that, when R_{25} and R_{26} are both lower alkyl groups, they may be bonded together to form a ring;

Y represents a carbonyl group or a lower alkylene group;

A represents a single bond, or a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

R_4' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and

n means an integer from 0 to 3.



In formula (IX);

R_{27} represents a hydrogen atom, an alkyl group having up to 7 carbon atoms, a halo-lower alkyl group, an arylsul-

fonyl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a heterocyclic lower alkyl group, or a halo-heterocyclic lower alkyl group; and the aromatic ring moiety in said aryl-lower alkyl group may be substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a cyanoaryl group, an amino group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a haloaryl group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, an aryl-lower alkyloxy group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a heterocyclic group, an aryloxy group, an arylcarbonyl group, an arylcarbonylamino group, and an aryl-lower alkyloxy group substituted by one or two halogen atoms;

R₂₈ represents a hydrogen atom, an alkyl group having up to 7 carbon atoms, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower cycloalkyl group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylamino group, a lower alkoxy group, a lower alkylthio group, a hydroxyl group, a mercapto group, an amino group, or a carboxyl group;

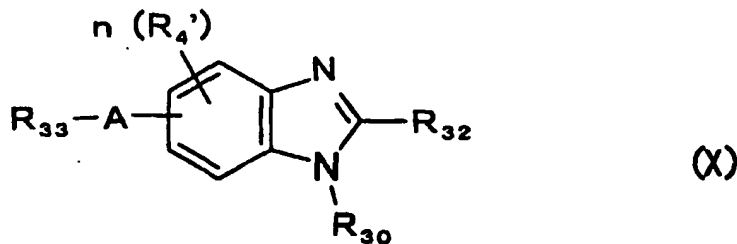
R₂₅ represents an alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, a halo-lower alkyl group, a tri-lower alkylsilyl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylthio-lower alkyl group, an aryl group, a heterocyclic group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, or a hydroxy-lower alkyl group; and said aryl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, or a nitro group;

R₂₆ represents a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group; provided that, when R₂₅ and R₂₆ are both lower alkyl groups, they may be bonded together to form a ring;

Y represents a carbonyl group or a lower alkylene group;

A represents a single bond, or a lower alkylene or alkenylene group; and

R₂₉ represents a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group.



In formula (X);

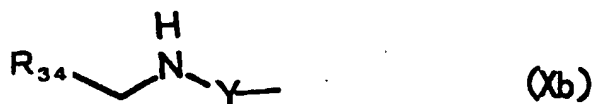
R₃₀ represents a hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a substituted or unsubstituted aryl-lower alkyl group of a formula:



in which R₃₁ represents a hydrogen atom, a cyanoaryl group, an amino group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a haloaryl group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, an aryl-lower alkyloxy group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a heterocyclic group, or an aryloxy group, or represents an aryl-lower alkyloxy group or an aryl-lower alkyloxy group substituted by one or two halogen atoms, an arylsulfonyl group, a heterocyclic lower alkyl group, an arylcarbonylamino group, an arylcarbonyl group, an arylalkenyl group, or a lower alkylenedioxyaryl group; and the alkyl moiety in said aryl-lower alkyl group may be substituted by a lower alkyl group;

R₃₂ represents a hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower cycloalkyl group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylamino group, a lower alkoxy group, a lower alkylthio group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, or a heterocyclic lower alkyl group;

R₃₃ represents a carboxyl group, a lower alkoxycarbonyl group, a (2-cyanoaryl)oxycarbonyl group, or a group of a formula:

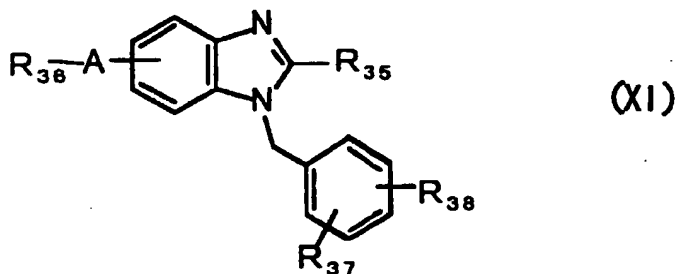


10 in which Y represents a carbonyl group or a lower alkylene group; R_{34} represents a lower alkyl group or a lower alkyl group substituted by a substituted or unsubstituted aryl or heterocyclic group, or represents an aryl group or a heterocyclic group;

A represents a single bond, or a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

15 R_4' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group. R_4' may include an alkyl group, an aralkyl group, an alkynyl group, and halogenated groups of these. R_4' may be either saturated or unsaturated, may be either linear or cyclic, and may even be branched, as the case may be. For the halogenated groups, the type of the halogen therein is not specifically defined, and the number of the halogen substituents therein is not also specifically defined. n means an integer from 0 to 3. Therefore, one, two or three R_4 's may be bonded to the skeleton, or no R_4' may be bonded thereto. The position of R_4' is not specifically defined and may be any of the ortho-position, the meta-position and the para-position relative to the other substituent. However, when R_{30} is a hydrogen atom, n is 0, or that is, no R_4' is bonded to the skeleton.

20



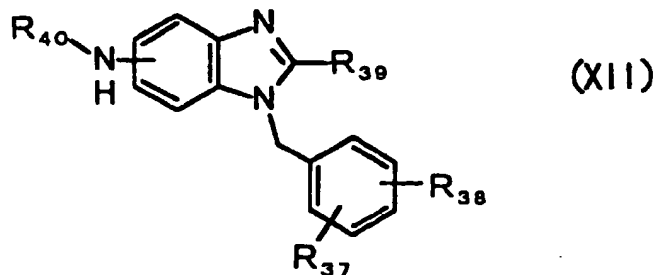
In formula (XI);

35 R_{35} represents a hydrogen atom, an aryl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkyl group, or an aryl-lower alkyl group;

R_{36} represents a carboxyl group, a lower alkoxy-carbonyl group, a heterocyclic lower alkylamino group, or a heterocyclic lower alkylcarbamoyl group;

40 R_{37} and R_{38} each independently represent a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, or an aryl-lower alkoxy group; and

A represents a single bond, or a lower alkylene or alkenylene group; provided that, when R_{35} is a lower alkyl group, A is a lower alkylene group or a lower alkenylene group.

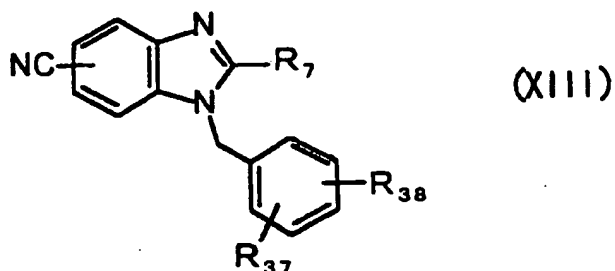


55 In formula (XII);

R_{37} and R_{38} each independently represent a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, or an aryl-lower alkoxy group;

R₃₉ represents a lower alkyl group; and

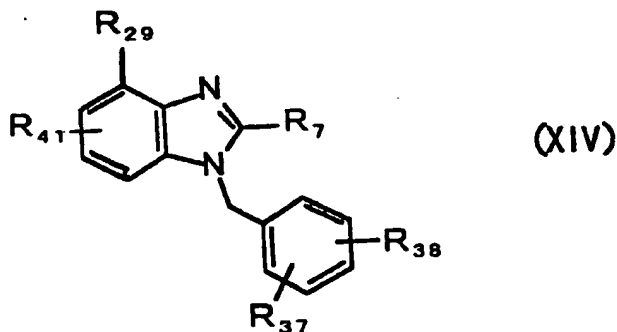
R₄₀ represents a hydrogen atom, a lower alkoxy carbonyl group, a lower alkanoyl group, a lower alkanesulfonyl group, or a carbamoyl group.



In formula (XIII);

R₃₇ and R₃₈ each independently represent a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, or an aryl-lower alkyloxy group; and

R₇ represents a lower alkyl group or a lower cycloalkyl group.



In formula (XIV);

R₃₇ and R₃₈ each independently represent a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, or an aryl-lower alkyloxy group;

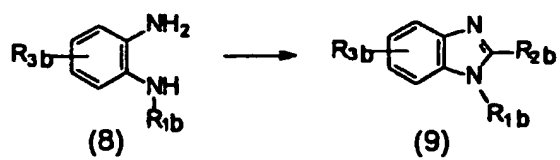
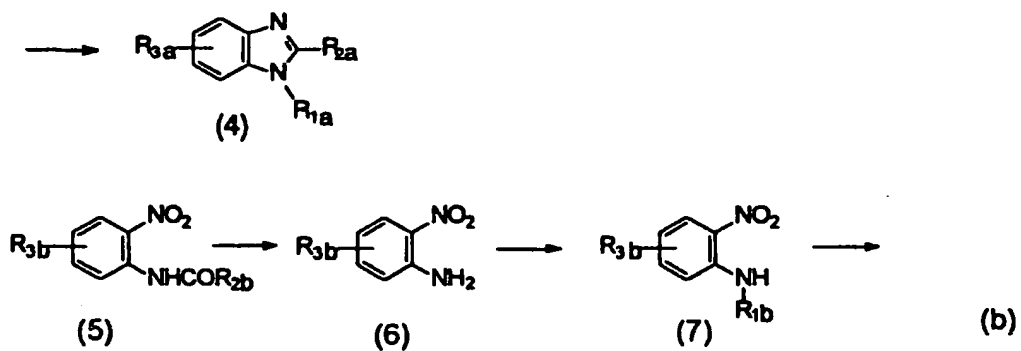
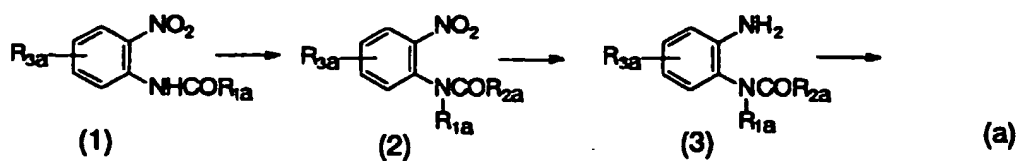
R₇ represents a lower alkyl group or a lower cycloalkyl group;

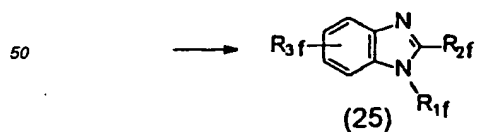
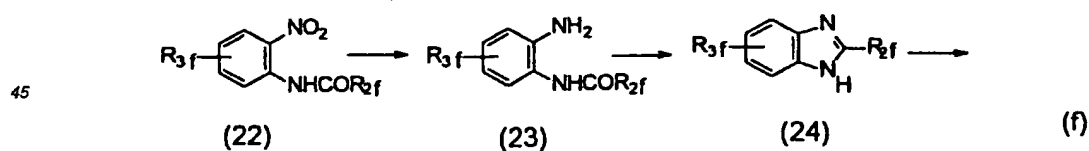
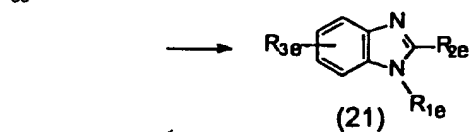
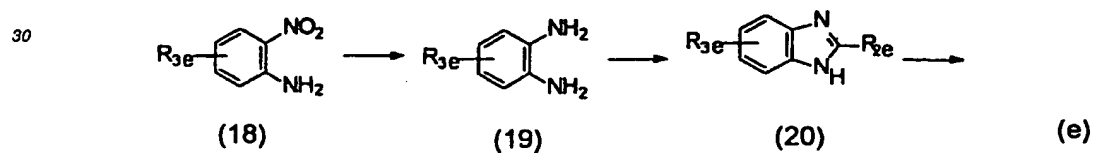
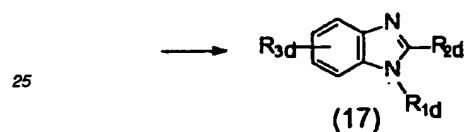
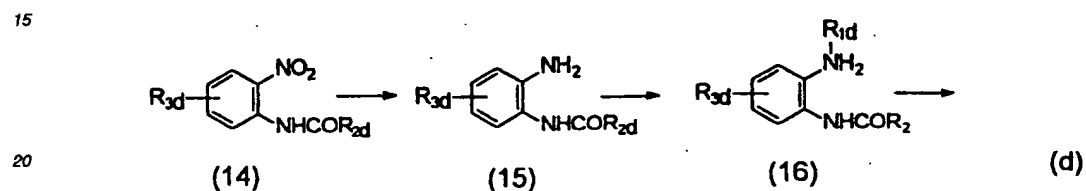
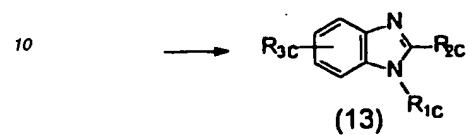
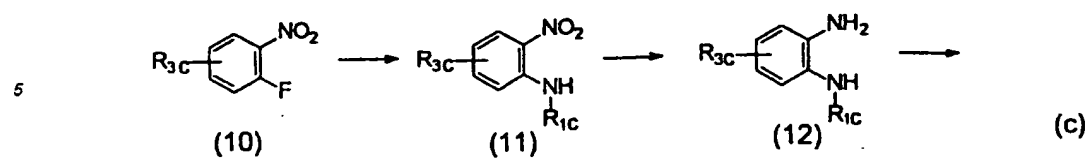
R₄₁ represents a 2-pyridylcarbamoyl group, a 2-carboxy-1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl group, an N-methyl-N-(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl group, a homopiperidinocarbonyl group, a [2-(N-oxo)-pyridylmethyl]carbamoyl group, a 4-(dimethylamino)benzylcarbamoyl group, a piperonylcarbamoyl group, an N-methyl-N-(2-pyridyl)carbamoyl group, a thiomorpholinocarbonyl group, a halosulfonyl group, an aminosulfonyl group, an acylaminosulfonyl group, a lower alkoxy carbonyl group, or a carboxyl group;

R₂₉ represents a hydrogen atom, or a lower alkyl group; provided that, when R₄₁ is a lower alkyl carbonyl group or a carboxyl group, R₂₉ is a lower alkyl group.

The present invention also provides novel benzimidazole derivatives of the above-mentioned (VIII) to (XIV) and their salts.

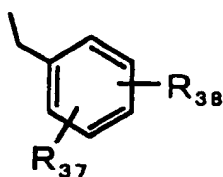
Benzimidazole derivatives to be provided by the present invention can be produced according to the following reaction formulae (a) to (f):



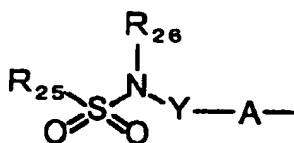


55

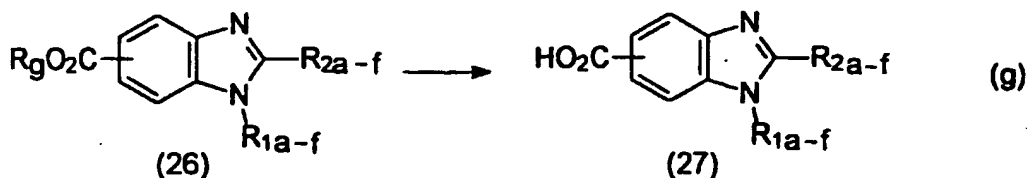
In the above-mentioned reaction formulae, R_{1a} to R_{1f} may be selected from the above-mentioned R₁, R₆, R₁₃, R₁₇, R₂₂, R₂₃, R₂₇, R₃₀, or a substituted benzyl group of a formula:



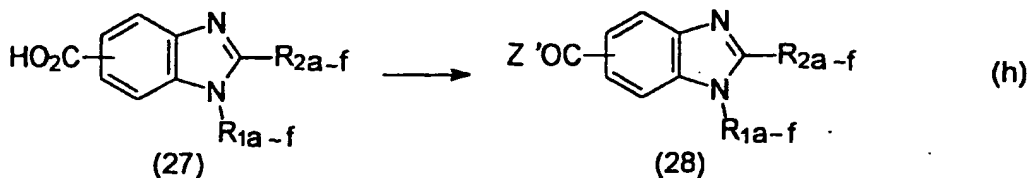
10 wherein R_{37} and R_{38} have the same meanings as those mentioned above. R_{2a} to R_{2f} may be selected from the above-mentioned R_2 , R_7 , R_{14} , R_{18} , R_{28} , R_{32} , R_{35} or R_{39} . The substituents R_{3a} to R_{3f} may be selected from a substituent of a formula:



25 with R_{25} , R_{26} , Y and A having the same meanings as those mentioned above, or from the above-mentioned R_3 , R_8 , R_{11} , R_{15} , R_{19} , R_{24} , AR_{33} , AR_{36} , NHR_{40} , CN or R_{41} . The substituents that define R_{3a} through R_{3f} can be mutually converted to each other. For example, as in the step (g) or (h) mentioned below, the ester (26) can be converted into the corresponding acid (27) or acid halide (28). The desired benzimidazoles can be produced through the reaction of these compounds with amines or sulfonamides. It is further possible to give various derivatives, as in the step (i) or (j) or (k) or (l) or (m) or (n) mentioned below. Such conversion of the groups, R_{3a} through R_{3f} can be effected at any stage in the steps (a) through (f), while depending on the stability of R_{1a} to R_{1f} as well as R_{2a} to R_{2f} in the compounds and even on the easiness in the isolation of the products formed.



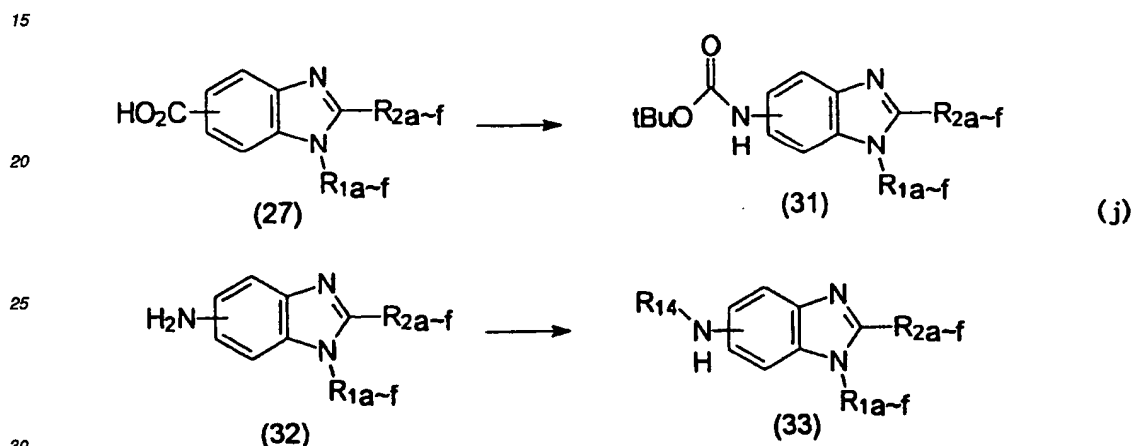
40 In this reaction formula, R_9 represents a lower alkyl group; and R_{1a-f} and R_{2a-f} have the same meanings as those mentioned above.



55 In this reaction formula, Z' represents a chlorine atom or a bromine atom; and R_{1a-f} and R_{2a-f} have the same meanings as those mentioned above.



In this reaction formula, R_{1a-f} and R_{2a-f} have the same meanings as those mentioned above.



In this reaction formula, R_{1a-f} and R_{2a-f} have the same meanings as those mentioned above.

35 In the reaction step (a), a compound of formula (1) may be reacted with a base, such as sodium hydride, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hydrogencarbonate, lithium carbonate, lithium hydroxide, sodium hydrogencarbonate, sodium carbonate, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydrogencarbonate, potassium carbonate, potassium hydroxide or the like, and with a compound to be represented by $R_{1a}Z$ (where Z represents a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, a toluenesulfonyloxy group, or a methanesulfonyloxy group) to give a compound of formula (2). The compound of formula (2) may be 1) reduced with reduced iron or zinc under an acidic condition, or 2) reduced with a transition metal catalyst, such as typically palladium, platinum, ruthenium or nickel, in a hydrogen atmosphere, or 3) reduced with a transition metal catalyst, such as typically palladium, platinum, ruthenium or nickel, in the presence of formic acid, or 4) reduced with sodium hydrosulfite, to be converted into a compound of formula (3). In the process 1), the compound of formula (3) is often cyclized in the reaction system directly into a compound of formula (4). Depending on the compound of formula (2) being reduced, the compound of formula (4) may be partly formed in any of the processes 1) to 4). The compound of formula (3) may be processed with a carboxylic acid, a sulfonic acid or an inorganic acid, such as acetic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid or the like, to give the compound of formula (4).

45 In the step (b), a compound of formula (5) is may be hydrolyzed or solvolyzed with a base, such as lithium hydrogencarbonate, lithium carbonate, lithium hydroxide, sodium hydrogencarbonate, sodium carbonate, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydrogencarbonate, potassium carbonate, potassium hydroxide or the like, or with a carboxylic acid, a sulfonic acid or inorganic acid, such as acetic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid or the like, into a compound of formula (6). The compound of formula (6) may be reacted with a base, such as sodium hydride, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hydrogencarbonate, lithium carbonate, lithium hydroxide, sodium hydrogencarbonate, sodium carbonate, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydrogencarbonate, potassium carbonate, potassium hydroxide or the like, and with a compound to be represented by $R_{1b}Z$ (where Z represents a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, a toluenesulfonyloxy group, or a methanesulfonyloxy group) to give a compound of formula (7). The compound of formula (7) may be 1) reduced with reduced iron or zinc under an acidic condition, or 2) reduced with a transition metal catalyst, such as typically palladium, platinum, ruthenium or nickel, in a hydrogen atmosphere, or 3) reduced with

a transition metal catalyst, such as typically palladium, platinum, ruthenium or nickel, in the presence of formic acid, or 4) reduced with sodium hydrosulfite, to be converted into a compound of formula (8). A compound of formula (9) can be produced from the compound of formula (8) and the corresponding carboxylic acid or acid chloride or acid bromide or acid anhydride.

5 In the step (c), a compound of formula (11) can be produced from a compound of formula (10) and a compound to be represented by $R_{1c}NH_2$. The conversion of the compound of formula (11) to a compound of formula (13) is the same as that of the compound of formula (7) to the compound of formula (9) in the step (b).

10 In the step (d), a compound of formula (14) may be 1) reduced with a transition metal catalyst such as typically palladium, platinum, ruthenium or nickel in a hydrogen atmosphere, or 2) reduced with sodium hydrosulfite to give a compound of formula (15). The compound of formula (15) may be reacted with a base, such as lithium hydrogencarbonate, lithium carbonate, lithium hydroxide, sodium hydrogencarbonate, sodium carbonate, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydrogencarbonate, potassium carbonate, potassium hydroxide or the like, and with a compound to be represented by $R_{1d}Z$ (where Z represents a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, a toluenesulfonyloxy group, or a methanesulfonyloxy group) to give a compound of formula (16). The compound of formula (16) may be treated with a carboxylic acid, a sulfonic acid or an inorganic acid, such as acetic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid or the like, to give a compound of formula (17).

15 In the step (e), a compound of formula (18) may be 1) reduced with reduced iron or zinc under an acidic condition, or 2) reduced with a transition metal catalyst, such as typically palladium, platinum, ruthenium or nickel, in a hydrogen atmosphere, or 3) reduced with a transition metal catalyst, such as typically palladium, platinum, ruthenium or nickel, in the presence of formic acid, or 4) reduced with sodium hydrosulfite, to be converted into a compound of formula (19). A compound of formula (20) can be produced from the compound of formula (19) and the corresponding carboxylic acid or acid anhydride or acid chloride or acid bromide. The compound of formula (20) may be reacted with a base, such as sodium hydride, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hydrogencarbonate, lithium carbonate, lithium hydroxide, sodium hydrogencarbonate, sodium carbonate, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydrogencarbonate, potassium carbonate, potassium hydroxide or the like, and with a compound to be represented by $R_{1e}Z$ (where Z represents a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, a toluenesulfonyloxy group, or a methanesulfonyloxy group) to give a compound of formula (21).

20 In the process comprising the above-mentioned step, in general, the product may be obtained as a mixture comprising the compound of formula (21) where R_{3a} is positioned in the 5-position and that where it is in the 6-position, or a mixture comprising the compound of formula (21) where R_{3a} is positioned in the 4-position and that where it is in the 7-position. Each compound of formula (21) can be purified from the mixture as the single compound, for example, through recrystallization, column chromatography, thin-layer chromatography, high-performance liquid chromatography or the like.

25 In the step (f), a compound of formula (22) may be 1) reduced with reduced iron or zinc under an acidic condition, or 2) reduced with a transition metal catalyst, such as typically palladium, platinum, ruthenium or nickel, in a hydrogen atmosphere, or 3) reduced with a transition metal catalyst, such as typically palladium, platinum, ruthenium or nickel, in the presence of formic acid, or 4) reduced with sodium hydrosulfite, to be converted into a compound of formula (23). In the process 1), the compound of formula (23) is often cyclized in the reaction system directly into a compound of formula (24). Depending on the compound of formula (22) being reduced, the compound of formula (24) may be partly formed in any of the processes 1) to 4). The compound of formula (23) may be processed with a carboxylic acid, a sulfonic acid or an inorganic acid, such as acetic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid or the like, to give the compound of formula (24). The compound of formula (24) may be converted into a benzimidazole compound of formula (25) in the same manner as in the step (e) of converting the compound of formula (20) into the compound of formula (21). In this step, in general, the product may be obtained as a mixture comprising the compound of formula (25) where R_{3f} is positioned in the 5-position and that where it is in the 6-position, or a mixture comprising the compound of formula (25) where R_{3f} is positioned in the 4-position and that where it is in the 7-position. Each compound of formula (25) can be purified from the mixture as the single compound, for example, through recrystallization, column chromatography, thin-layer chromatography, high-performance liquid chromatography or the like.

30 In the step (g), a compound of formula (26) may be hydrolyzed with a base, such as lithium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide or the like, to give a compound of formula (27). The compound of formula (27) may be reacted with a carbonyldiimidazole and then with amines or sulfonamides in the presence of a base to give different benzimidazole derivatives.

35 In the step (h), the compound of formula (27) may be processed with thionyl chloride or thionyl bromide or phosphorus trichloride or phosphorus pentachloride or phosphorus oxychloride to be converted into its acid halide of formula (28). The compound of formula (28) may be reacted with amines or sulfonamides to give different benzimidazole derivatives.

40 In the step (i), a compound of formula (29) may be reacted with titanium tetrachloride to give a compound of formula (30).

45 In the step (j), the compound of formula (27) may be reacted with an azide, such as typically diphenylphosphor-

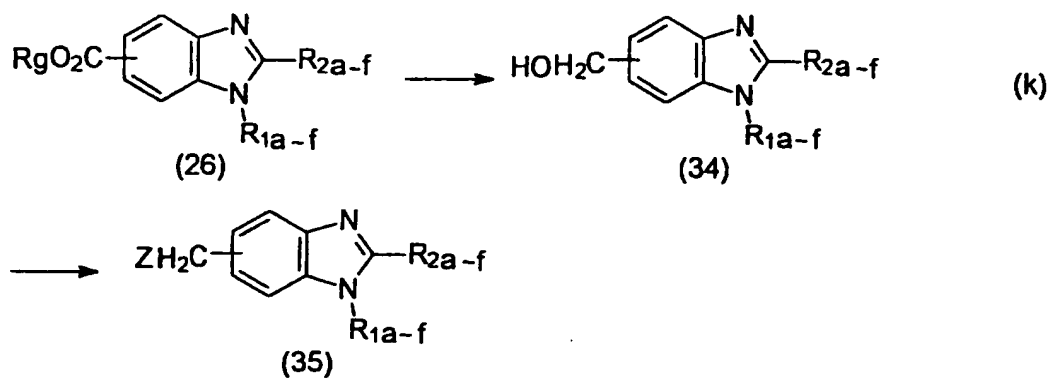
ylazide, in the presence of an alcohol, such as typically t-butanol, to give a compound of formula (31). The compound of formula (31) may be decomposed with an acid to give a compound of formula (32). The compound of formula (32) may be reacted with a compound to be represented by $R_{40}Z$ (where Z represents a chlorine atom or a bromine atom) to give a compound of formula (33).

5

10

15

20

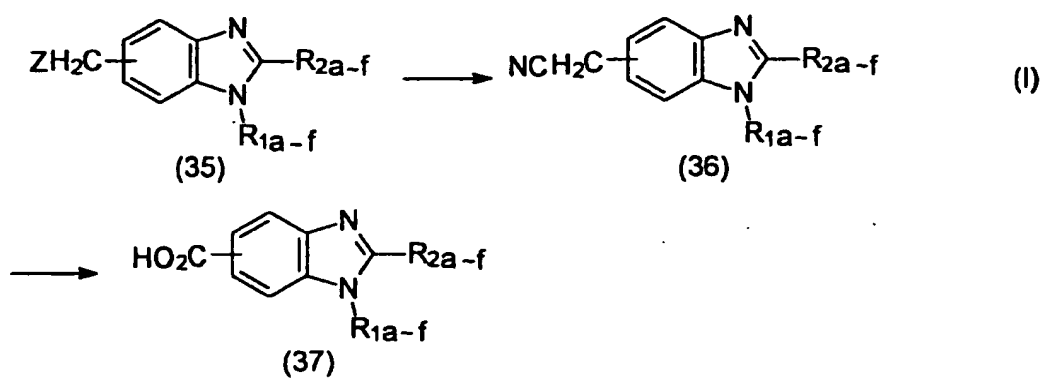


wherein R_g , R_{1a-f} , and R_{2a-f} have the same meanings as those mentioned above; and Z represents a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, a toluenesulfonyloxy group, or a methanesulfonyloxy group.

25

30

35

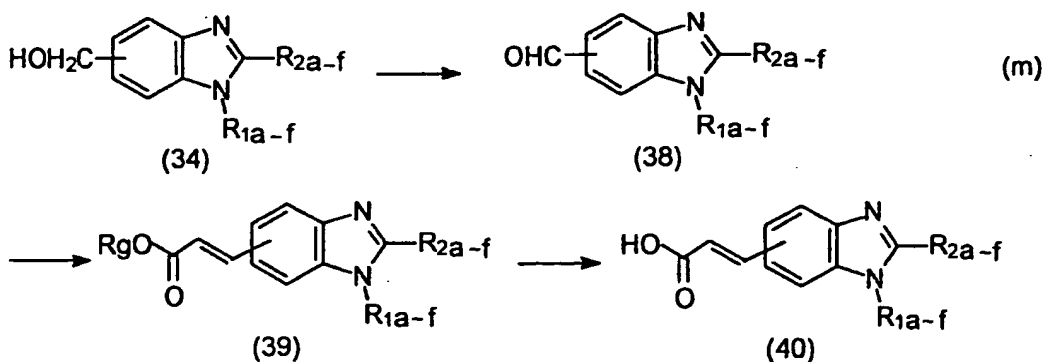


wherein R_{1a-f} , R_{2a-f} and Z have the same meanings as those mentioned above.

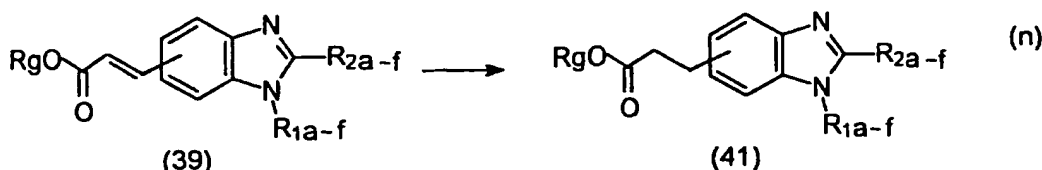
45

50

55



wherein R_{1a-f} , R_{2a-f} and R_g have the same meanings as those mentioned above.



10 wherein R_{1a-f} , R_{2a-f} and R_g have the same meanings as those mentioned above.

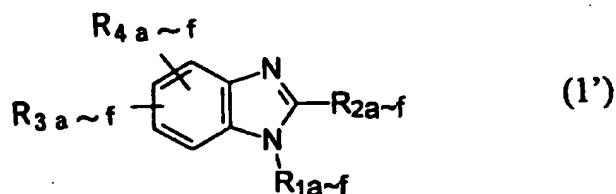
In the step (k), the compound of formula (26) may be reduced into a compound of formula (34), which may be then treated with thionyl chloride, thionyl bromide, phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus oxybromide, phosphorus trichloride, phosphorus pentachloride, methanesulfonyl chloride, toluenesulfonyl chloride or the like to be converted into a compound of formula (35).

15 In the step (l), the compound of formula (35) may be reacted with sodium cyanide or potassium cyanide to give a compound of formula (36), which may be then hydrolyzed with lithium hydroxide or sodium hydroxide or potassium hydroxide to give a carboxylic acid of formula (37).

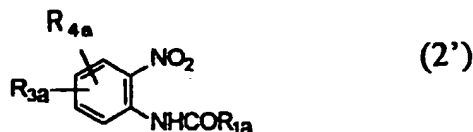
20 In the step (m), a compound of formula (38) to be obtained by oxidizing the compound of formula (34) may be reacted with an alkyl (triphenylphosphoranyliden)acetate to give a compound of formula (39), which may then be hydrolyzed with lithium hydroxide or sodium hydroxide or potassium hydroxide to give a carboxylic acid of formula (40). The compound of formula (35), (37) or (40) may be reacted with amines or sulfonylamides to give different benzimidazole compounds.

25 In the step (n), the compound of formula (39) may be reduced with palladium, platinum, ruthenium or the like transition metal catalyst in a hydrogen atmosphere or in the presence of formic acid to give a compound of formula (41).

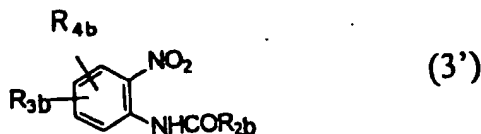
The following compounds of:



35 where R_{1a-f} , R_{2a-f} and R_{3a-f} have the same meanings as those mentioned above; and R_{4a-f} may be selected from the above-mentioned R_4 , R_4' and R_{29} , can be produced according to the steps (a) to (f) while starting from the following compounds of:

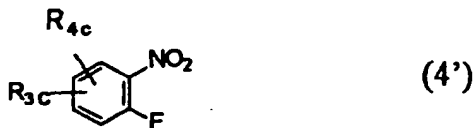


45 where R_{1a} , R_{2a} and R_{3a} have the same meanings as those mentioned above; and R_{4a} may be selected from the above-mentioned R_4 , R_4' and R_{29} ;

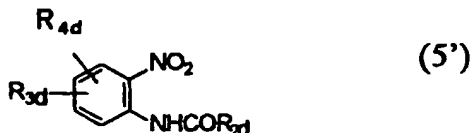


55 where R_{1b} , R_{2b} and R_{3b} have the same meanings as those mentioned above; and R_{4b} may be selected from the

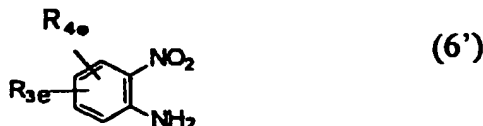
above-mentioned R_4 , R_4' and R_{29} ;



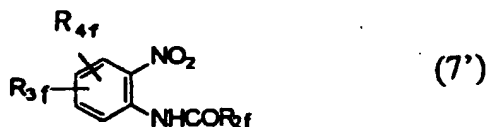
10 where R_{1c} , R_{2c} and R_{3c} have the same meanings as those mentioned above; and R_{4c} may be selected from the above-mentioned R_4 , R_4' and R_{29} ;



20 where R_{1d} , R_{2d} and R_{3d} have the same meanings as those mentioned above; and R_{4d} may be selected from the above-mentioned R_4 , R_4' and R_{29} ;



30 where R_{1e} , R_{2e} and R_{3e} have the same meanings as those mentioned above; and R_{4e} may be selected from the above-mentioned R_4 , R_4' and R_{29} ;



40 where R_{1f} , R_{2f} and R_{3f} have the same meanings as those mentioned above; and R_{4f} may be selected from the above-mentioned R_4 , R_4' and R_{29} .

45 If desired, the intermediates formed in the above-mentioned steps may optionally be purified, prior to being subjected to the next step, through any conventional purification including, for example, recrystallization, column chromatography, thin-layer chromatography, high-performance liquid chromatography and the like. If also desired, the final products of the compounds of the present invention may optionally be purified through any conventional purification which is employed in the art of purifying organic compounds and which includes, for example, recrystallization, column chromatography, thin-layer chromatography, high-performance liquid chromatography and the like. To identify these compounds, employable is any of NMR spectroscopy, mass spectroscopy, IR spectroscopy, elementary analysis, measurement of melting point and others.

50 Preferred embodiments and their details of various definitions as referred to herein to be within the scope of the present invention are described below.

Unless otherwise specifically indicated herein, the terminology "lower" indicates that the group has from 1 to 6 carbon atoms. As preferred examples of the lower alkyl group as referred to herein, mentioned are linear or branched alkyl groups including a methyl group, an ethyl group, an n-propyl group, an i-propyl group, an n-butyl group, an i-butyl group, a sec-butyl group, a t-butyl group, an n-pentyl group, an i-pentyl group, a sec-pentyl group, a t-pentyl group, a 2-methylbutyl group, an n-hexyl group, a 1-methylpentyl group, a 2-methylpentyl group, a 3-methylpentyl group, a 4-methylpentyl group, a 1-ethylbutyl group, a 2-ethylbutyl group, a 1,1-dimethylbutyl group, a 2,2-dimethylbutyl group, a 3,3-dimethylbutyl group, a 1-ethyl-1-methyl propyl groups, etc.

The alkyl group having up to 7 carbon atoms is a linear or branched alkyl group, including a methyl group, an ethyl group, an n-propyl group, an i-propyl group, an n-butyl group, an i-butyl group, a sec-butyl group, a t-butyl group, an n-pentyl group, an i-pentyl group, a sec-pentyl group, a t-pentyl group, a 2-methylbutyl group, an n-hexyl group, a 1-methylpentyl group, a 2-methylpentyl group, a 3-methylpentyl group, a 4-methylpentyl group, a 1-ethylbutyl group, a 2-ethylbutyl group, a 3-ethylbutyl group, a 1,1-dimethylbutyl group, a 2,2-dimethylbutyl group, a 3,3-dimethylbutyl group, a 1-ethyl-1-methylpropyl group, an n-heptyl group, a 1-methylhexyl group, a 2-methylhexyl group, a 3-methylhexyl group, a 4-methylhexyl group, a 5-methylhexyl group, a 1-ethylpentyl group, a 2-ethylpentyl group, a 3-ethylpentyl group, a 4-ethylpentyl group, a 1,1-dimethylpentyl group, a 2,2-dimethylpentyl group, a 3,3-dimethylpentyl group, a 4,4-dimethylpentyl group, a 1-propylbutyl group, etc.

The alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms is a linear or branched alkyl group, including a methyl group, an ethyl group, an n-propyl group, an i-propyl group, an n-butyl group, an i-butyl group, a sec-butyl group, a t-butyl group, an n-pentyl group, an i-pentyl group, a sec-pentyl group, a t-pentyl group, a 2-methylbutyl group, an n-hexyl group, a 1-methylpentyl group, a 2-methylpentyl group, a 3-methylpentyl group, a 4-methylpentyl group, a 1-ethylbutyl group, a 2-ethylbutyl group, a 3-ethylbutyl group, a 1,1-dimethylbutyl group, a 2,2-dimethylbutyl group, a 3,3-dimethylbutyl group, a 1-ethyl-1-methylpropyl group, an n-heptyl group, a 1-methylhexyl group, a 2-methylhexyl group, a 3-methylhexyl group, a 4-methylhexyl group, a 5-methylhexyl group, a 1-ethylpentyl group, a 2-ethylpentyl group, a 3-ethylpentyl group, a 4-ethylpentyl group, a 1,1-dimethylpentyl group, a 2,2-dimethylpentyl group, a 3,3-dimethylpentyl group, a 4,4-dimethylpentyl group, a 1-propylbutyl group, an n-octyl group, a 1-methylheptyl group, a 2-methylheptyl group, a 3-methylheptyl group, a 4-methylheptyl group, a 5-methylheptyl group, a 6-methylheptyl group, a 1-ethylhexyl group, a 2-ethylhexyl group, a 3-ethylhexyl group, a 4-ethylhexyl group, a 5-ethylhexyl group, a 1,1-dimethylhexyl group, a 2,2-dimethylhexyl group, a 3,3-dimethylhexyl group, a 4,4-dimethylhexyl group, a 5,5-dimethylhexyl group, a 1-propylpentyl group, a 2-propylpentyl group, etc.

The lower alkylene group is an alkylene group having 6 or less carbon atoms, including a methylene group, an ethylene group, a propylene group, a butylene group, a pentylene group, a hexylene group, etc. The lower alkenylene group is an alkenylene group having 6 or less carbon atoms, including an ethenylene group, a 1-propenylene group, a 2-propenylene group, a 1-butenylene group, a 2-butenylene group, a 3-butenylene group, a 1-pentenylene group, a 2-pentenylene group, a 3-pentenylene group, a 4-pentenylene group, a 1-hexenylene group, a 2-hexenylene group, a 3-hexenylene group, a 4-hexenylene group, a 5-hexenylene group, etc.

The halogen atom includes a fluorine atom, a chlorine atom, a bromine atom and an iodine atom. Preferred are a fluorine atom, a chlorine atom and a bromine atom.

The halo-lower alkyl group is a linear or branched alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, which is substituted with one or more halogen atoms selected from fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine atoms. Preferred is a linear or branched alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, which is substituted with one or more halogen atoms selected from fluorine, chlorine and bromine atoms. It includes, for example, a fluoromethyl group, a difluoromethyl group, a trifluoromethyl group, a chloromethyl group, a dichloromethyl group, a trichloromethyl group, a bromomethyl group, a dibromomethyl group, a tribromomethyl group, a 1-fluoroethyl group, a 1-chloroethyl group, a 1-bromoethyl group, a 2-fluoroethyl group, a 2-chloroethyl group, a 2-bromoethyl group, a 1,2-difluoroethyl group, a 1,2-dichloroethyl group, a 1,2-dibromoethyl group, a 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl group, a heptafluoroethyl group, a 1-fluoropropyl group, a 1-chloropropyl group, a 1-bromopropyl group, a 2-fluoropropyl group, a 2-chloropropyl group, a 2-bromopropyl group, a 3-fluoropropyl group, a 3-chloropropyl group, a 3-bromopropyl group, a 1,2-difluoropropyl group, a 1,2-dichloropropyl group, a 1,2-dibromopropyl group, a 2,3-difluoropropyl group, a 2,3-dichloropropyl group, a 2,3-dibromopropyl group, a 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl group, a 2,2,3,3,3-pentafluoropropyl group, a 2-fluorobutyl group, a 2-chlorobutyl group, a 2-bromobutyl group, a 4-fluorobutyl group, a 4-chlorobutyl group, a 4-bromobutyl group, a 4,4,4-trifluorobutyl group, a 2,2,3,3,4,4,4-heptafluorobutyl group, a perfluorobutyl group, a 2-fluoropentyl group, a 2-chloropentyl group, a 2-bromopentyl group, a 5-fluoropentyl group, a 5-chloropentyl group, a 5-bromopentyl group, a perfluoropentyl group, a 2-fluorohexyl group, a 2-chlorohexyl group, a 2-bromohexyl group, a 6-fluorohexyl group, a 6-chlorohexyl group, a 6-bromohexyl group, a perfluorohexyl group, a 2-fluoroheptyl group, a 2-chloroheptyl group, a 2-bromoheptyl group, a 7-fluoroheptyl group, a 7-chloroheptyl group, a 7-bromoheptyl group, a perfluoroheptyl group, etc.

The lower alkoxy group is a linear or branched alkoxy group having up to 6 carbon atoms. It includes, for example, a methoxy group, an ethoxy group, an n-propyloxy group, an i-propyloxy group, an n-butyloxy group, an i-butyloxy group, a sec-butyloxy group, a t-butyloxy group, an n-pentyloxy group, an i-pentyloxy group, a sec-pentyloxy group, a t-pentyloxy group, a 2-methylbutoxy group, an n-hexyloxy group, an i-hexyloxy group, a t-hexyloxy group, a sec-hexyloxy group, a 2-methylpentyloxy group, a 3-methylpentyloxy group, a 1-ethylbutoxy group, a 2-ethylbutoxy group, a 1,1-dimethylbutoxy group, a 2,2-dimethylbutoxy group, a 3,3-dimethylbutoxy group, a 1-ethyl-1-methylpropyloxy group, etc. Preferred are a methoxy group, an ethoxy group, an n-propyloxy group, an i-propyloxy group, an n-butyloxy group, an i-butyloxy group, a sec-butyloxy group, a t-butyloxy group, etc.

The lower cycloalkyl group is a cycloalkyl group having from 3 to 7 carbon atoms, and preferably includes a cyclopropyl group, a cyclobutyl group, a cyclopentyl group, a cyclohexyl group, a cycloheptyl group, etc. More preferred are

a cyclopropyl group, a cyclobutyl group, etc.

The lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group is a linear or branched alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, as substituted with a linear or branched alkyloxy group having up to 8 carbon atoms. For example, this includes a methoxymethyl group, a methoxyethyl group, a methoxypropyl group, a methoxybutyl group, a methoxypentyl group, a methoxyhexyl group, a methoxyheptyl group, a methoxyoctyl group, an ethoxymethyl group, an ethoxyethyl group, an ethoxybutyl group, an ethoxypentyl group, an ethoxyhexyl group, an ethoxyheptyl group, an ethoxyoctyl group, a propyloxymethyl group, a propyloxyethyl group, a propyloxypropyl group, a propyloxybutyl group, a propyloxypentyl group, an i-propyloxymethyl group, an i-propyloxyethyl group, an i-propyloxypropyl group, an i-propyloxybutyl group, an i-propyloxypentyl group, a butyloxymethyl group, a butyloxyethyl group, a butyloxypropyl group, a butyloxybutyl group, an i-butyloxymethyl group, an i-butyloxyethyl group, an i-butyloxypropyl group, an i-butyloxybutyl group, a sec-butyloxymethyl group, a sec-butyloxyethyl group, a sec-butyloxypropyl group, a sec-butyloxybutyl group, a t-butyloxymethyl group, a t-butyloxyethyl group, a t-butyloxypropyl group, a t-butyloxybutyl group, a pentyloxymethyl group, a pentyloxyethyl group, a pentyloxypropyl group, a pentyloxybutyl group, a hexyloxymethyl group, a hexyloxyethyl group, a hexyloxypropyl group, etc.

The tri-lower alkylsilyl-lower alkyl group is a lower alkyl group, such as that mentioned hereinabove, to which is bonded a trimethylsilyl group, a triethylsilyl group, a tripropylsilyl group or the like.

The lower alkylamino group is a linear or branched alkylamino group having up to 6 carbon atoms. This includes, for example, a methylamino group, an ethylamino group, an n-propylamino group, an i-propylamino group, an n-butylamino group, an i-butylamino group, a sec-butylamino group, a t-butylamino group, an n-pentylamino group, an i-pentylamino group, a sec-pentylamino group, a t-pentylamino group, a 2-methylbutylamino group, an n-hexylamino group, a 1-methylpentylamino group, a 2-methylpentylamino group, a 3-methylpentylamino group, a 4-methylpentylamino group, a 1-ethylbutylamino group, a 2-ethylbutylamino group, a 3-ethylbutylamino group, a 1,1-dimethylbutylamino group, a 2,2-dimethylbutylamino group, a 3,3-dimethylbutylamino group, a 1-ethyl-1-methylpropylamino group, etc. More preferred are a methylamino group, an ethylamino group, an n-propylamino group, an i-propylamino group, an n-butylamino group, an i-butylamino group, a sec-butylamino group, a t-butylamino group, etc.

The lower alkylthio group is a linear or branched alkylthio group having up to 6 carbon atoms. This includes, for example, a methylthio group, an ethylthio group, an n-propylthio group, an i-propylthio group, an n-butylthio group, an i-butylthio group, a sec-butylthio group, a t-butylthio group, an n-pentylthio group, an i-pentylthio group, a sec-pentylthio group, a t-pentylthio group, a 2-methylbutylthio group, an n-hexylthio group, an i-hexylthio group, a t-hexylthio group, a sec-hexylthio group, a 2-methylpentylthio group, a 3-methylpentylthio group, a 1-ethylbutylthio group, a 2-ethylbutylthio group, a 1,1-dimethylbutylthio group, a 2,2-dimethylbutylthio group, a 3,3-dimethylbutylthio group, a 1-ethyl-1-methylpropylthio group, etc. More preferred are a methylthio group, an ethylthio group, an n-propylthio group, an i-propylthio group, an n-butylthio group, an i-butylthio group, a sec-butylthio group, a t-butylthio group, etc.

The lower alkylthio-lower alkyl group is a linear or branched alkyl group having up to 6 carbon atoms, such as that mentioned hereinabove, as substituted with a linear or branched alkylthio group having up to 6 carbon atoms, such as that mentioned hereinabove.

The lower alkoxy-carbonyl group is a linear or branched alkoxy-carbonyl group with an alkyl moiety having up to 6 carbon atoms. This includes, for example, a methoxycarbonyl group, an ethoxycarbonyl group, an n-propyloxycarbonyl group, an i-propyloxycarbonyl group, an n-butyloxycarbonyl group, an i-butyloxycarbonyl group, a sec-butyloxycarbonyl group, a t-butyloxycarbonyl group, an n-pentyloxycarbonyl group, an i-pentyloxycarbonyl group, a sec-pentyloxycarbonyl group, a t-pentyloxycarbonyl group, a 2-methylbutyloxycarbonyl group, an n-hexyloxycarbonyl group, an i-hexyloxycarbonyl group, a t-hexyloxycarbonyl group, a sec-hexyloxycarbonyl group, a 2-methylpentyloxycarbonyl group, a 3-methylpentyloxycarbonyl group, a 1-ethylbutyloxycarbonyl group, a 2-ethylbutyloxycarbonyl group, a 1,1-dimethylbutyloxycarbonyl group, a 2,2-dimethylbutyloxycarbonyl group, a 3,3-dimethylbutyloxycarbonyl group, a 1-ethyl-1-methylpropyloxycarbonyl group, etc. More preferred are a methoxycarbonyl group, an ethoxycarbonyl group, an n-propyloxycarbonyl group, an i-propyloxycarbonyl group, an n-butyloxycarbonyl group, an i-butyloxycarbonyl group, a sec-butyloxycarbonyl group, a t-butyloxycarbonyl group.

The lower alkanoyl group is a linear or branched alkylcarbonyl group having up to 6 carbon atoms. This includes, for example, a methylcarbonyl group, an ethylcarbonyl group, an n-propylcarbonyl group, an i-propylcarbonyl group, an n-butylcarbonyl group, an i-butylcarbonyl group, a sec-butylcarbonyl group, a t-butylcarbonyl group, an n-pentylcarbonyl group, an i-pentylcarbonyl group, a sec-pentylcarbonyl group, a t-pentylcarbonyl group, a 2-methylbutylcarbonyl group, an n-hexylcarbonyl group, an i-hexylcarbonyl group, a t-hexylcarbonyl group, a sec-hexylcarbonyl group, a 2-methylpentylcarbonyl group, a 3-methylpentylcarbonyl group, a 1-ethylbutylcarbonyl group, a 2-ethylbutylcarbonyl group, an 1,1-dimethylbutylcarbonyl group, a 2,2-dimethylbutylcarbonyl group, a 3,3-dimethylbutylcarbonyl group, a 1-ethyl-1-methylpropylcarbonyl group, etc. More preferred are a methylcarbonyl group, an ethylcarbonyl group, an n-propylcarbonyl group, an i-propylcarbonyl group, an n-butylcarbonyl group, an i-butylcarbonyl group, a sec-butylcarbonyl group, a t-butylcarbonyl group, etc.

The lower alkanesulfonyl group is a linear or branched alkanesulfonyl group having up to 6 carbon atoms. This includes, for example, a methanesulfonyl group, an ethanesulfonyl group, a 1-propanesulfonyl group, a 2-propanesulfo-

nyl group, a 1-butanefulfonyl group, a 2-butanefulfonyl group, a 1,1-dimethylethanesulfonyl group, a 1-(2-methylpropane)sulfonyl group, a 1-pentanesulfonyl group, a 2-pentanesulfonyl group, a 3-pentanesulfonyl group, a 1-(3-methylbutane)sulfonyl group, a 1,1-dimethylpropanesulfonyl group, a 1-hexanesulfonyl group, a 2-hexanesulfonyl group, a 3-hexanesulfonyl group, a 1-(2-methylpentane)sulfonyl group, a 1-(3-methylpentane)sulfonyl group, a 1-(4-methylpentane)sulfonyl group, a 2-ethylbutanesulfonyl group, a 3-ethylbutanesulfonyl group, a 1,1-dimethylbutanesulfonyl group, a 2,2-dimethylbutanesulfonyl group, a 3,3-dimethylbutanesulfonyl group, a 1-ethyl-1-methylpropanesulfonyl group, etc.

The aryl group includes, for example, a phenyl group, a naphthyl group, etc. The terminology "naphthyl" as referred to herein includes 1-naphthyl and 2-naphthyl. The benzene ring or the naphthalene ring in this group may optionally be substituted by one or more substituents selected from a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a cyano group, a nitro group, a trifluoromethyl groups and the like, such as those mentioned hereinabove.

The arylsulfonyl group is a sulfonyl group, to which is bonded an aryl group such as that mentioned hereinabove, and includes, for example, a benzenesulfonyl group, a toluenesulfonyl group, a naphthalenesulfonyl group, etc.

The aryl-lower alkyl group is a lower alkyl group, such as that mentioned hereinabove, to which is bonded an aryl group such as that mentioned hereinabove, and includes, for example, a benzyl group, a 1-phenylethyl group, a 2-phenylethyl group, a phenylpropyl group, a phenylbutyl group, a phenylpentyl group, a phenylhexyl group, a naphthylmethyl group, a naphthylethyl group, a naphthylpropyl group, a naphthylbutyl group, a naphthylpentyl group, a naphthylhexyl group, etc.

The aryl-lower alkyloxy group includes, for example, a benzyloxy group, a 1-phenylethyloxy group, a 2-phenylethyloxy group, a phenylpropyloxy group, a phenylbutyloxy group, a phenylpentyloxy group, a phenylhexyloxy group, a naphthylmethyloxy group, a naphthylethyloxy group, a naphthylpropyloxy group, a naphthylbutyloxy group, a naphthylpentyloxy group, etc., in which the benzene ring or the naphthalene ring may optionally be substituted.

The arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group is a lower alkyl group, such as that mentioned hereinabove, to which is bonded an arylsulfonyl group such as that mentioned hereinabove, and includes, for example, a benzenesulfonylmethyl group, a toluenesulfonylmethyl group, a naphthalenesulfonylmethyl group, etc.

The arylsulfonylamino group is an amino group to which is bonded an arylsulfonyl group such as that mentioned hereinabove, and this includes, for example, a benzenesulfonylamino group, a toluenesulfonylamino group, a naphthalenesulfonylamino group, etc.

The aryloxy group is an aryl group, such as that mentioned hereinabove, to which is bonded an oxygen atom, and this includes, for example, a phenoxy group, a 1-naphthoxy group, a 2-naphthoxy group, etc.

The arylcarbonyl group is a carbonyl group to which is bonded an aryl group such as that mentioned hereinabove, and this includes, for example, a phenylcarbonyl group, a naphthylcarbonyl group, etc.

The arylcarbonylamino group is an amino group to which is bonded an arylcarbonyl group such as that mentioned hereinabove, and this includes, for example, a phenylcarbonylamino group, a naphthylcarbonylamino group, etc.

The aryl-lower alkenyl group is an alkenyl group having 6 or less carbon atoms, which is substituted by an aryl group such as that mentioned hereinabove, and this includes, for example, a phenylethenyl group, a naphthylethenyl group, etc.

The heterocyclic group includes, for example, a pyridyl group, a quinolyl group, an isoquinolyl group, a thiazolyl group, a thiadiazolyl group, a benzofuranyl group, a dibenzofuranyl group, a thianaphthalenyl group, a 1H-1,2,3-triazolyl group, a 1,2,4-triazolyl group, a tetrazolyl group, a furyl group, a thienyl group, a pyrrolyl group, an imidazolyl group, a pyrimidinyl group, an indolyl group, a benzimidazolyl group, etc. The heterocyclic group may optionally be substituted by one or more substituents of halogen atoms and lower alkyl groups, such as those mentioned hereinabove, and the substituted heterocyclic group of that type includes, for example, a haloisoquinolyl group, a methylisoquinolyl group, etc.

The heterocyclic lower alkyl group means a lower alkyl group, such as that mentioned hereinabove, as substituted by a heterocyclic group, such as that mentioned hereinabove. This includes, for example, a pyridylmethyl group. The halo-heterocyclic lower alkyl group is a heterocyclic lower alkyl group, such as that mentioned hereinabove, in which the heterocyclic moiety is substituted with one or more halogens.

The heterocyclic lower alkylamino group is an amino group as substituted with a heterocyclic lower alkyl group, such as that mentioned hereinabove, and this includes, for example, a pyridylmethylamino group, etc. The heterocyclic lower alkylcarbamoyl group is a carbamoyl group as substituted with a heterocyclic lower alkyl group, such as that mentioned hereinabove, and this includes, for example, a pyridylmethylcarbamoyl group, etc.

The terminology "pyridyl" as referred to herein includes 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl and 4-pyridyl, for which the bonding position is not specifically defined. The same shall apply to the other heterocyclic groups as referred to herein, or that is, the bonding positions of the heterocyclic groups as referred to herein are not specifically defined.

The lower alkylenedioxybenzyl group includes, for example, a methylenedioxybenzyl group, an ethylenedioxybenzyl group, a propylenedioxybenzyl group, etc.

A suitable heterocyclic group used herein means a saturated or unsaturated mono- or polycyclic hetero ring containing at least one hetero atom such as an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom, a nitrogen atom, etc.

Preferable examples thereof include the following heterocyclic groups:

- 7- to 12-membered, preferably 9- or 10-membered unsaturated condensed heterocyclic group (preferably bicyclic group) having 1 to 5 nitrogen atoms, such as indolyl, isoindolyl, indolidinyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolyl, isoquinolyl, indazolyl, benzotriazolyl, tetrazolopyridyl, tetrazolopyridazinyl (e.g. tetrazolo[1,5-b]pyridazinyl, etc.), dihydrotriazolopyridazinyl, or the like;
- 7- to 12-membered, preferably 9- or 10-membered unsaturated condensed heterocyclic group (preferably bicyclic group) having 1 to 3 sulfur atoms or S,S-dioxide thereof, such as dithianaphthalenyl (e.g. 4H-1,3-dithianaphthalenyl, 1,4-dithianaphthalenyl, etc.), benzothiophenyl or S,S-dioxide thereof (e.g. benzo[a]thiophenyl or S,S-dioxide thereof, benzo[b]thiophenyl or S,S-dioxide thereof, etc.), or the like;
- 3- to 8-membered, preferably 5- or 6-membered unsaturated hetero monocyclic group having 1 to 4 nitrogen atoms, such as pyrrolyl, pyrrolinyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, pyridyl and its N-oxide, pyrimidyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, triazolyl (e.g. 4H-1,2,3-triazolyl, 1H-1,2,3-triazolyl, 2H-1,2,3-triazolyl, etc.), dihydrotriazinyl (e.g. 4,5-dihydro-1,2,4-triazinyl, 2,5-dihydro-1,2,4-triazinyl, etc.), or the like;
- 3- to 8-membered, preferably 5- or 6-membered saturated hetero monocyclic group having 1 to 4 nitrogen atoms, such as azetydinyl, pyrrolidinyl, imidazolidinyl, piperidinyl, pyrazolidinyl, piperadinyl, or the like;
- 7- to 12-membered, preferably 9- or 10-membered unsaturated condensed heterocyclic group (preferably bicyclic group) having 1 to 2 oxygen atoms and 1 to 3 nitrogen atoms, such as benzooxazolyl, benzooxadiazolyl, or the like;
- 3- to 8-membered, preferably 5- or 6-membered unsaturated hetero monocyclic group having 1 to 2 oxygen atoms and 1 to 3 nitrogen atoms, such as oxazolyl, isooxazolyl, oxadiazolyl (e.g. 1,2,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,3,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,5-oxadiazolyl, etc.), or the like;
- 3- to 8-membered, preferably 5- or 6-membered saturated hetero monocyclic group having 1 to 2 oxygen atoms and 1 to 3 nitrogen atoms, such as morpholinyl or the like;
- 7- to 12-membered, preferably 9- or 10-membered unsaturated condensed heterocyclic group (preferably bicyclic group) having 1 to 2 sulfur atoms and 1 to 3 nitrogen atoms, such as benzothiazolyl, benzothiadiazolyl, or the like;
- 3- to 8-membered, preferably 5- or 6-membered unsaturated hetero monocyclic group having 1 to 2 sulfur atoms and 1 to 3 nitrogen atoms, such as thiazolyl, 1,2-thiazolyl, thiadiazolyl (e.g. 1,2,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,3,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,5-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,3-thiadiazolyl, etc.), or the like;
- 3- to 8-membered, preferably 5- or 6-membered saturated hetero monocyclic group having 1 to 2 sulfur atoms and 1 to 3 nitrogen atoms, such as thiazolidinyl;
- 3- to 8-membered, preferably 5- or 6-membered unsaturated hetero monocyclic group having one sulfur atom, such as thienyl or the like; etc.

Suitable "esterified carboxyl groups" are exemplified below.

- The ester portion of the esterified carboxyl group suitably include a lower alkyl ester, such as methyl ester, ethyl ester, propyl ester, isopropyl ester, butyl ester, isobutyl ester, tertiary butyl ester, pentyl ester, or hexyl ester, which may have at least one appropriate substituent. Examples of the lower alkyl ester include lower alkanoyloxy(lower)alkyl ester, such as acetoxymethyl ester, propionyloxymethyl ester, butyryloxymethyl ester, valeryloxymethyl ester, pivaloyloxymethyl ester, hexanoyloxy methyl ester, 1-(or 2-)acetoxylethyl ester, 1-(2-, or 3-)acetoxypentyl ester, 1-(2-, 3- or 4-)acetoxypentyl ester, 1-(or 2-)propionyloxyethyl ester, 1-(2-, or 3-)propionyloxypropyl ester, 1-(or 2-)butyryloxyethyl ester, 1-(or 2-)isobutyryloxyethyl ester, 1-(or 2-)pivaloyloxyethyl ester, 1-(or 2-)hexanoyloxyethyl ester, isobutyryloxymethyl ester, 2-ethylbutyryloxymethyl ester, 3,3-dimethylbutyryloxymethyl ester, or 1-(or 2-)pentanoyloxyethyl ester, lower alkanesulfonyl(lower)alkyl ester, such as 2-mesylethyl ester, mono(di, or tri)halo(lower)alkyl ester, such as 2-iodoethyl ester, 2,2,2-trichloroethyl ester, lower alkoxycarbonyloxy(lower)alkyl ester, such as methoxycarbonyloxymethyl ester, ethoxycarbonyloxymethyl ester, propoxycarbonyloxymethyl ester, tertiary-butoxycarbonyloxymethyl ester, 1-(or 2-)methoxycarbonyloxyethyl ester, 1-(or 2-)ethoxycarbonyloxyethyl ester, or 1-(or 2-)isopropoxycarbonyloxyethyl ester, phthalizilidene(lower)alkyl ester or (5-lower alkyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxol-4-yl)(lower)alkyl ester, such as (5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxol-4-yl)methyl ester, (5-ethyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxol-4-yl)methyl ester, or (5-propyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxol-4-yl)ethyl ester, lower alkenyl ester, such as vinyl ester or allyl ester, lower alkynyl ester, such as ethynyl ester or propynyl ester, ar(lower)alkyl ester which may have at least one appropriate substituent, such as benzyl ester, 4-methoxybenzyl ester, 4-nitrobenzyl ester, phenethyl ester, trityl ester, benzhydryl ester, bis(methoxyphenyl)methyl ester, 3,4-dimethoxybenzyl ester, or 4-hydroxy-3,5-di-tertiary-butylbenzyl ester, aryl ester which may have at least one appropriate substituent, such as phenyl ester, 4-chlorophenyl ester, tolyl ester, tertiary-butylphenyl ester, xylyl ester, mesityl ester, or cumenyl ester, phthalidyl ester, etc.

- Preferable examples of a carboxyl groups protected by esterification include lower alkoxycarbonyl and phenyl(or nitrophenyl)(C₁-C₄)alkoxycarbonyl. Most preferred are methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, and benzyloxycarbonyl.

Suitable amidated carboxyl groups include the following:

- a carbamoyl group;
- a mono- or di-lower alkyl carbamoyl group (as a lower alkyl group, those as described above can be used), such as methylcarbamoyl, dimethylcarbamoyl, isopropylcarbamoyl, n-butylcarbamoyl, t-butylcarbamoyl, N-methyl-N-(pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl, or the like;
- 5 • an aryl(lower alkyl)carbamoyl (as an aryl group and a lower alkyl group, those as described above can be used), such as benzylcarbamoyl, 3,4-methylenedioxybenzylcarbamoyl, diaminobenzylcarbamoyl, or phenethylcarbamoyl;
- a cyclo(lower alkyl)carbamoyl having 3 to 7 carbon atoms (as a cyclo lower alkyl group, those as described above can be used), such as cyclopropylcarbamoyl, cyclobutylcarbamoyl, cyclopentylcarbamoyl, cyclohexylcarbamoyl or the like;
- 10 • an arylcabamoyl group (as an aryl group, those as described above can be used), such as phenylcarbamoyl, naphthylcarbamoyl, or the like;
- a heterocyclic carbamoyl group (as a heterocyclic group, those as described above can be used), such as thiazolylcarbamoyl, thiadiazolylcarbamoyl, pyridyl-carbamoyl, triazolylcarbamoyl, tetrazolylcarbamoyl, N-methyl-N-pyridinecarbamoyl, morpholinocarbamoyl, or the like;
- 15 • a heterocyclic(lower alkyl)carbamoyl group (as a heterocyclic lower alkyl group, those as described above can be used), such as morpholinoethylcarbamoyl, pyridylmethylcarbamoyl, methylenedioxybenzylcarbamoyl, or the like;
- an N-di-substituted carbamoyl group containing nitrogen as a member of a nitrogen-containing heterocyclic ring, such as morpholinocarbonyl, thiomorpholinocarbonyl, 1-perhydroazepinylcarbonyl, 1,1-dioxothiazolidinecarbonyl, piperidinocarbonyl, 1-piperazinylcarbonyl, 4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazinylcarbonyl, 4-methyl-1-piperazinylcarbo-
- 20 nyl, carboxypyrrolidinocarbonyl, or the like;
- a substituted sulfonylcarbomoyl group, etc.

The substituent for the substituted sulfonyl-carbamoyl group includes the above-described groups such as the alkyl group having carbon atoms up to 8, the halo lower alkyl group, the aryl lower alkyl group, the hydroxy-lower alkyl group, the tri(lower alkyl)silyl(lower alkyl) group, the lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, the lower alkylthio-lower alkyl group, the heterocyclic group, the aryl group, and the like. The aryl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, or the like. Specific examples of the substituted sulfonyl-carbamoyl group include naphthylsulfonylcarbamoyl, benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl, nitrobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl, trihalobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl, lower alkoxybenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl, halobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl, mono- or di-

30 (lower alkyl)benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl, alkanesulfonylcarbamoyl having 1 to 8 carbon atoms, such as t-butylsulfonylcarbamoyl, butylsulfonylcarbamoyl, propylsulfonylcarbamoyl, isopropylsulfonylcarbamoyl, methylsulfonylcarbamoyl, octylsulfonylcarbamoyl, pentylsulfonylcarbamoyl, isopentylsulfonylcarbamoyl, hexylsulfonylcarbamoyl, or the like, trihalo(lower) alkylsulfonylcarbamoyl, phenyl(lower)alkylsulfonylcarbamoyl, tri(lower)alkylsulfonylcarbamoyl, lower alkylthio(lower) alkylsulfonylcarbamoyl, lower alkoxy(lower)alkylsulfonylcarbamoyl, quinolinesulfonylcarbamoyl, or the like.

Suitable acyl groups include aliphatic acyl, aromatic acyl, heterocyclic acyl, and aliphatic acyl substituted with an aromatic group or a heterocyclic group, which are derived from carboxylic acid, carbonic acid, sulfonic acid, carbamic acid, and the like.

Examples of the aliphatic acyl include saturated or unsaturated non-cyclic or cyclic ones, for example, alkanoyl such as lower alkanoyl (e.g. formyl, acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, isobutyryl, valeryl, isovaleryl, pivaloyl, hexanoyl, etc.), alkylsulfonyl such as lower alkyl sulfonyl (e.g. mesyl, ethylsulfonyl, propylsulfonyl, isopropylsulfonyl, butylsulfonyl, isobutylsulfonyl, pentylsulfonyl, hexylsulfonyl, etc.), carbamoyl, N-alkylcarbamoyl (e.g. methylcarbamoyl, ethylcarbamoyl, etc.), alkoxy-carbonyl such as lower alkoxy carbonyl (e.g. methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, butoxy-carbonyl, tertiary-butoxycarbonyl, etc.), alkenyloxycarbonyl such as lower alkenyloxycarbonyl (e.g. vinyloxycarbonyl, allyloxycarbonyl, etc.), alkenoyl such as lower alkenoyl (e.g. acryloyl, methacryloyl, chlotoxoyl, etc.), cycloalkanecarbo-

45 nyl such as cyclo(lower)alkanecarbonyl (e.g. cyclopropanecarbonyl, cyclopentanecarbonyl, cyclohexanecarbonyl, etc.) and the like.

Examples of the aromatic acyl include C₆-C₁₀ aroyl (e.g. benzoyl, toluoyl, xyloyl, etc.), N-(C₆-C₁₀)arylcarbamoyl (e.g. N-phenylcarbamoyl, N-tolylcarbamoyl, N-naphthylcarbamoyl, etc.), C₆-C₁₀ arenesulfonyl (e.g. benzenesulfonyl, tosyl, etc.), and the like.

Examples of the heterocyclic acyl include heterocyclic carbonyl, heterocyclic (lower)alkanoyl (e.g. heterocyclic acetyl, heterocyclic propanoyl, heterocyclic butanoyl, heterocyclic pentanoyl, heterocyclic hexanoyl, etc.), heterocyclic (lower)alkenoyl (e.g. heterocyclic propenoyl, heterocyclic butenoyl, heterocyclic pentenoyl, heterocyclic hexenoyl, etc.) heterocyclic glyoxyloyl, heterocyclic sulfinyl, heterocyclic sulfonyl, etc.

55 The aromatic group-bound aliphatic acyl includes aralkoxy-carbonyl such as phenyl(lower)alkoxy-carbonyl (e.g. benzoyloxycarbonyl, phenethyloxycarbonyl, etc.).

These acyl groups may be substituted with one or more appropriate substituent, such as a nitro group. An example thereof is nitroaralkoxy-carbonyl (e.g. nitrobenzyloxy-carbonyl, etc.).

Preferred salts of the benzimidazole derivatives of the present invention are non-toxic, ordinary pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof. For example, mentioned are salts of the derivatives with bases as well as acid-addition salts of the derivatives, which include, for example, salts thereof with inorganic bases, such as salts with alkali metals (e.g., sodium, potassium); salts with alkaline earth metals (e.g., calcium, magnesium); ammonium salts; salts with organic amines (e.g., triethylamine, pyridine, picoline, ethanolamine, triethanolamine, dicyclohexylamine, N,N'-dibenzylethylenediamine); salts with inorganic acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid); salts with organic carboxylic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, maleic acid, tartaric acid); salts with sulfonic acids (e.g., methanesulfonic acid, benzenesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid); salts with basic or acidic amino acids (e.g., arginine, aspartic acid, glutamic acid), etc.

The compounds of the invention could contain one or more chiral centers, therefore they could be enantiomers or diastereomers. Few of the compounds containing alkenyl group could also be cis- or trans- isomers. In both cases, each of such isomers as well as the mixture thereof are within the scope of this invention.

The compounds of the invention can also exist as tautomers, and individual of such tautomers and the mixture thereof are within the scope of this invention.

The compounds of the invention and their salts can be solvate, which are also within the invention. The solvent for the solvate is preferably water or ethanol.

Specific examples of benzimidazole derivatives of formula (IX) include 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 5-(4-chlorobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-5-(2-naphthalenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-methanesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(1-octanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(2-propanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole, 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-cyclopropyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)benzimidazole, N-benzenesulfonyl-3-[1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazol-6-yl]acrylamide, N-benzenesulfonyl-2-[1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazol-6-yl]acetamide, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(2-naphthalenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(1-naphthalenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 6-(4-chlorobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-(3-chlorobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-benzyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-benzyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-trifluoromethanesulfonylcarbamoylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(4-methoxybenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(α -toluenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(2,5-dimethylbenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(4-nitrobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl]benzimidazole, 6-(2-chlorobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-benzyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-benzyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-hydroxybenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-mercaptopbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methoxybenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-carboxybenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methylaminobenzimidazole, 2-amino-6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)benzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-n-heptylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-chloromethylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-i-propylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methylthiobenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-ethylthiobenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-n-propylthiobenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-n-hexylthiobenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)benzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2,4-difluorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-phenylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-benzylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(4-benzoyloxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylaminomethyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, N-benzenesulfonyl-3-[1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazol-6-yl]propionamide, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(1,2,3-thiadiazol-4-yl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(8-quinolinesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 6-(4-1-butylbenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-

(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(1-propanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 6-ethanesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-(propanesultam-1-ylcarbonyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(1-pentanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(3-methylbutane)sulfonylcarbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(1-hexanesulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 7-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-1-[3-(trimethylsilyl)propane]sulfonylcarbamoyl]benzimidazole, 4-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[(2'-cyanobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-(1-ethanesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[(3-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-[(2-methoxyethane)sulfonylcarbamoyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(1-hexanesulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl(1-pentanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-1-[3-(methylthio)propane]sulfonylcarbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(1-pentanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-1-[3-(methyl)butanesulfonylcarbamoyl]benzimidazole, 5-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-5-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(2-methoxyethanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-ethyl-1-[4-(4-fluorobenzyloxy)benzyl]benzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[4-(3,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)benzyl]-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenethyl)]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[4-(2-pyridyl)benzyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2,4-dimethylbenzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-1-(4-phenoxybenzyl)benzimidazole, 6-(butanesulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)benzimidazole, 1-[(4-benzoylamino)benzyl]-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-[4-(2-phenylethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 1-[(4-benzoyl)benzyl]-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-[4-(2-phenylethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 1-(dibenzofuran-2-ylmethyl)-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-hydroxybenzimidazole, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-1-(2-quinolylmethyl)benzimidazole, and 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-1-[3-(4-bromoisoquinolyl)methyl]benzimidazole, etc.

Specific examples of compounds of formula (X) include 1-(2-cyanobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-N-propyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)benzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-methyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-n-butyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-[2-(benzenesulfonylmethyl)benzyl]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-cyanobenzyl)-6-(2-cyanobenzyloxycarbonyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-naphthylmethyl)benzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propyl-1-i-propylbenzimidazole, 2-benzyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-methyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-n-propyl-1-i-propylbenzimidazole, 1-n-butyl-6-carboxy-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[2-(benzenesulfonylmethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(2-cyanobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-naphthylmethyl)benzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 5-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-5-carboxy-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole, 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 2-benzyl-5-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole, 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole, 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole, 1-methyl-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-n-propyl-1-i-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-n-butyl-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-benzyl-1-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-[2-(benzenesulfonylmethyl)benzyl]-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-cyanobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-1-(2-naphthylmethyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, etc.

moyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-1-(3,4-methylenedioxybenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]-1-(4-(1,2,3-thiadiazol-4-yl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-benzenesulfonyl-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-1-(2-phenylethyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-1-(2-phenylethyl)-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-2-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-[4-(benzenesulfonylamino)benzyl]-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)aminomethyl]benzimidazole, 2-benzyl-6-carboxy-1-methylbenzimidazole, 4-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-[(2'-cyanobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-[(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-[(2'-cyanobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-[(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-[(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-[(3-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-[(3-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-5-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethyl-1-[4-(4-fluorobenzyloxy)benzyl]benzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-ethyl-1-[4-(4-fluorobenzyloxy)benzyl]benzimidazole, 1-[4-(3,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)benzyl]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-[4-(3,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)benzyl]-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-6-(n-butylcarbamoyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(thiazol-2-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(2-pyridylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenethyl)]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenethyl)]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(phenylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(tetrazol-5-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(1,3,4-triazol-3-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(1,3,4-triazol-2-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(3-pyridylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(4-pyridylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2,4-dimethyl-6-methoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2,4-dimethylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(4-phenoxybenzyl)benzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(4-phenoxybenzyl)benzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)benzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)benzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole, 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-[(4-benzoylamino)benzyl]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-[(4-benzoylamino)benzyl]-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(2-phenylethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(2-phenylethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[4-(2-phenylethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 1-[(4-benzoyl)benzyl]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-[(4-benzoyl)benzyl]-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-methyl-[4-(2-phenylethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 1-(dibenzofuran-2-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(dibenzofuran-2-ylmethyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-quinolylmethyl)benzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-methyl-(2-quinolylmethyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-hydroxy-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[3-(4-bromoisoquinolyl)methyl]benzimidazole, and 6-carboxy-2-methyl-[3-(4-bromoisoquinolyl)methyl]benzimidazole, etc.

Specific examples of benzimidazole derivatives of formula (XI) include 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-phenylbenzimidazole, 2-benzyl-5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 2-benzyl-6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 2-benzyl-5-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 2-benzyl-6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 2-benzyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 2-benzyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 2-benzyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 2-benzyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acetic acid, methyl 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acrylate, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acrylic acid, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-[2-(pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole, 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-carboxy-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole, and 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole, etc.

Specific examples of benzimidazole derivatives of formula (XII) include 6-t-butoxycarbonylamino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-mesylamino-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-acetylamino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-amino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-ureidobenzimidazole, 6-t-butoxycarbonylamino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-amino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, and 6-(1-butanefulfonylamino)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, etc.

Specific examples of benzimidazole derivatives of formula (XIII) include 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-cyano-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole, and 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-cyano-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, etc. Specific examples of benzimidazole derivatives of formula (VI) include 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(4-dimethylaminophenylmethylcarbamoyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-thiomorpholinocarbonylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropyl-6-(2-pyridylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 6-(2-carboxy-1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-[N-methyl-N-(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(homopiperidinocarbonyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-[N-methyl-N-(2-pyridyl)carbamoyl]-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 2-n-butyl-1-(2-(fluorobenzyl)-6-[N-methyl-N-(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-cyclopropyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-6-(piperonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 2-[[1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazol-6-yl]carbonylaminomethyl]pyridine-1-oxide, and 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(2-pyridylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, etc.

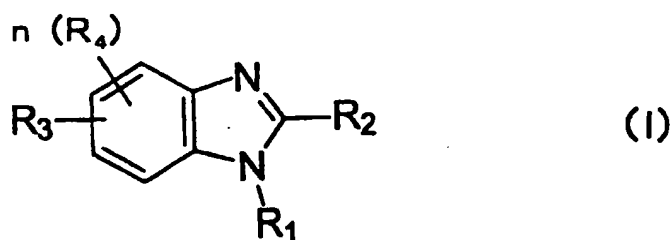
The present invention further includes, within its scope, the following novel benzimidazole derivatives: 1-(2-bromobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(4-fluorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(3-fluorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(3-methylbenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 2-cyclopropyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclobutyl-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-pentylbenzimidazole, 5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(3-methylbenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 2-n-butyl-7-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole, 2-n-butyl-6-carboxy-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-chlorocarbonyl-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-morpholinocarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 2-n-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-n-butyl-5-carbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropyl-6-morpholinocarbonylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclobutyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-phenylcarbamoyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-[(4-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-[(3-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(3-methylbenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-ethyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-n-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-7-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-n-butyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-6-(2-pyridylmethylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-benzyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 1-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-methylbenzyl)benzimidazole, 1-benzyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-t-butylbenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(4-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-benzyl-6-carboxy-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-t-butylbenzyl)-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-methylbenzyl)benzimidazole, 1-benzyl-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-benzyl-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(4-chlorobenzyl)-2-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]-1-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 1-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-1-(2-methylbenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-benzyl-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(4-t-butylbenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 6-carbamoyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,4-difluorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2,4-difluorobenzyl)-2-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-7-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 7-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-4-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 4-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 5-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, and 6-(n-butylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole.

The benzimidazole derivatives and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the present invention that are mentioned hereinabove are effective for preventing and treating various disorders of, for example, impaired glucose toler-

ance, diabetes (type II diabetes), diabetic complications (e.g., diabetic nephropathy, diabetic neuropathy, diabetic retinopathy, etc.), syndrome of insulin resistance (e.g., insulin receptor disorders, Rabson-Mendenhall syndrome, leprechaunism, Kobberling-Dunnigan syndrome, Seip syndrome, Lawrence syndrome, Cushing syndrome, acromegaly, etc.), hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders (e.g., stenocardia, cardiac failure, etc.), hyperglycemia (e.g., abnormal saccharometabolism such as feeding disorders, etc.), and hypertension based on their blood sugar level-depressing activity, as well as stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy (e.g., diabetic glomerulosclerosis, etc.), tubulointerstitial disorders (e.g., renopathy induced by FK506, cyclosporin, etc.), renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis (e.g., after percutaneous arterioplasty), distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions (e.g., bronchitis, asthma (chronic asthma, allergic asthma), etc.), allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders (e.g., hypersensitive enteropathy syndrome, etc.), impotence (e.g., organic impotence, psychic impotence, etc.), and diabetic complications (e.g., diabetic gangrene, diabetic arthropathy, diabetic glomerulosclerosis, diabetic dermatopathy, diabetic neuropathy, diabetic cataract, diabetic retinopathy, etc.), nephritis, cancerous cachexia, and restenosis after PTCA based on their cGMP-PDE (especially PDE-V)-inhibiting activity, smooth muscle relaxing activity, bronchodilating activity, vasodilating activity, smooth muscle cell suppressing activity, and antiallergic activity.

In addition, we, the present inventors, have further found that the benzimidazole derivatives which we have disclosed in Japanese Patent Application Laid-Open No. 5-222000 as c-GMP phosphodiesterase inhibitors also have the above-mentioned activities, and have now confirmed that these benzimidazole derivatives are also effective for preventing and treating the above-mentioned diseases and disorders like the compounds mentioned hereinabove.

Accordingly, the present invention further includes pharmaceutical compositions comprising, as an active ingredient, any of benzimidazole derivatives of the following formula (I) and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts, which are effective for preventing and treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes (type II diabetes), diabetic complications (e.g., diabetic nephropathy, diabetic neuropathy, diabetic retinopathy, etc.), syndrome of insulin resistance (e.g., insulin receptor disorders, Rabson-Mendenhall syndrome, leprechaunism, Kobberling-Dunnigan syndrome, Seip syndrome, Lawrence syndrome, Cushing syndrome, acromegaly, etc.), hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders (e.g., stenocardia, cardiac failure, etc.), hyperglycemia (e.g., abnormal saccharometabolism such as feeding disorders, etc.), or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy (e.g., diabetic glomerulosclerosis, etc.), tubulointerstitial disorders (e.g., renopathy induced by FK506, cyclosporin, etc.), renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis (e.g., after percutaneous arterioplasty), distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions (e.g., bronchitis, asthma (chronic asthma, allergic asthma), etc.), allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders (e.g., hypersensitive enteropathy syndrome, etc.), impotence (e.g., organic impotence, psychic impotence, etc.), and diabetic complications (e.g., diabetic gangrene, diabetic arthropathy, diabetic glomerulosclerosis, diabetic dermatopathy, diabetic neuropathy, diabetic cataract, diabetic retinopathy, etc.), nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA.



In formula (I):

R_1 represents a hydrogen atom, an arylsulfonyl group, or a lower alkyl group; and said lower alkyl group may be substituted by an aryl group or an aryl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a haloaryl group, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkyloxy group, a haloaryl-lower alkyloxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, a cyanoaryl group, and a heterocyclic group, or by a heterocyclic group;

R_2 represents a hydrogen atom, a lower cycloalkyl group, a hydroxyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a mercapto group, a lower alkylthio group, an amino group, a lower alkylamino group, a carboxyl group, an aryl group, or a lower alkyl group; and said lower alkyl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkoxy group, a cyano group, a chlorocarbonyl group, an aryl group, or a heterocyclic group;

R_3 represents a carboxyl group, an esterified carboxyl group, an amidated carboxyl group, an amino group, an amido group, or a sulfonyl group; and said amino group and said amido group may be substituted by an acyl group or a sulfonyl group; and a halogen atom, an amino group, or an acylamino group is bonded to said sulfonyl group; or R_3 may be bonded to the skeleton via a lower alkylene or alkenylene group; and

R_4 represents a neutral substituent. R_4 includes a halogen atom, and a lower alkyl group, an aralkyl group, an alkenyl group, a lower alkoxy group, and halogen-substituted groups of these. Where R_4 is a hydrocarbon group, it may be either saturated or unsaturated, or either linear or cyclic, or may even be branched. For the halogen atom and the halogen-substituted groups, the kind of the halogen is not specifically defined. For the latter, the number of halogens substituted is not specifically defined.

n means an integer from 0 to 3. Thus, one, two or three R_4 s may be bonded to the skeleton, or no R_4 may be bonded thereto. The position of R_4 may be any of the ortho-position, the meta-position and the para-position relative to the other substituent.

Specific examples of benzimidazole derivatives of formula (I) include 2-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-bromo-2-fluorobenzyl)-2-butyl-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 2-butyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 2-butyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(4-methoxycarbonylbenzyl)benzimidazole, 2-butyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 2-butyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(2-trifluoromethylbenzyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropyl-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-isopropylbenzimidazole, 2-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 2-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-7-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-propylbenzimidazole, 2-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-carboxybenzimidazole, 2-butyl-6-carboxy-1-(4-carboxybenzyl)benzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-propylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole, 2-butyl-5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)imidazole, 2-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-dimethylcarbamoylbenzimidazole, 6-(benzylcarbamoyl)-2-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 2-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-morpholinocarbonylbenzimidazole, 2-butyl-6-carbamoyl-(2-chlorobenzyl)-benzimidazole, 2-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(4-methylpiperazinyl)carbamoylbenzimidazole, 2-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(methylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 6-carbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 6-carbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-propylbenzimidazole, 6-carbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole, 2-butyl-5-carbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 2-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(isopropylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-chloroformyl-2-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(methylcarbamoyl)-2-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(ethylcarbamoyl)-2-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(isopropylcarbamoyl)-2-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(piperidinocarbonyl)-2-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(morpholinocarbonyl)-2-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(2-morpholinoethyl)carbamoyl-2-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-[4-(2-hydroxyethyl)piperazinyl]carbamoyl-2-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-propyl-6-(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-propyl-6-[4-(4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridin-1-yl)butyl]carbamoylbenzimidazole, etc.

To use the benzimidazole derivatives of the present invention for treating diseases or disorders such as those mentioned hereinabove, they may be formulated into pharmaceutical compositions of ordinary forms, which comprise, as an active ingredient, any of the derivatives along with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, such as organic or inorganic solid or liquid vehicles, and which are suitable for peroral administration, parenteral administration or external application. The pharmaceutical compositions may be of any solid form of tablets, granules, powders, capsules, etc., or may be of any liquid form of solutions, suspensions, syrups, emulsions, lemonades, etc.

If desired, the pharmaceutical compositions may further contain a pharmaceutical aid, a stabilizer, a wetting agent, and also any ordinary additive of, for example, lactose, citric acid, tartaric acid, stearic acid, magnesium stearate, terra alba, sucrose, corn starch, talc, gelatin, agar, pectin, peanut oil, olive oil, cacao butter, ethylene glycol, etc.

The amount of the above-mentioned derivative of the present invention to be used shall vary, depending on the age and the condition of patients, the type and the condition of diseases or disorders, and the type of the derivative to be used. In general, for peroral administration, the dose of the derivative may be from 1 to 100 mg/kg; and for intramuscular injection or intravenous injection, it may be from 0.1 to 10 mg/kg. Such a unit dose may be applied to a patient once to four times a day.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 shows chemical formulae of compound (42) to compound (47).

Fig. 2 shows chemical formulae of compound (48) to compound (53).

Fig. 3 shows chemical formulae of compound (54) to compound (59).

Fig. 4 shows chemical formulae of compound (60) to compound (65).

Fig. 5 shows chemical formulae of compound (66) to compound (71).

Fig. 6 shows chemical formulae of compound (72) to compound (77).
 Fig. 7 shows chemical formulae of compound (78) to compound (83).
 Fig. 8 shows chemical formulae of compound (84) to compound (89).
 Fig. 9 shows chemical formulae of compound (90) to compound (95).
 5 Fig. 10 shows chemical formulae of compound (96) to compound (101).
 Fig. 11 shows chemical formulae of compound (102) to compound (107).
 Fig. 12 shows chemical formulae of compound (108) to compound (113).
 Fig. 13 shows chemical formulae of compound (114) to compound (119).
 Fig. 14 shows chemical formulae of compound (120) to compound (125).
 10 Fig. 15 shows chemical formulae of compound (126) to compound (131).
 Fig. 16 shows chemical formulae of compound (132) to compound (137).
 Fig. 17 shows chemical formulae of compound (138) to compound (143).
 Fig. 18 shows chemical formulae of compound (144) to compound (149).
 Fig. 19 shows chemical formulae of compound (150) to compound (155).
 15 Fig. 20 shows chemical formulae of compound (156) to compound (161).
 Fig. 21 shows chemical formulae of compound (162) to compound (167).
 Fig. 22 shows chemical formulae of compound (168) to compound (173).
 Fig. 23 shows chemical formulae of compound (174) to compound (179).
 Fig. 24 shows chemical formulae of compound (180) to compound (185).
 20 Fig. 25 shows chemical formulae of compound (186) to compound (191).
 Fig. 26 shows chemical formulae of compound (192) to compound (197).
 Fig. 27 shows chemical formulae of compound (198) to compound (203).
 Fig. 28 shows chemical formulae of compound (204) to compound (209).
 Fig. 29 shows chemical formulae of compound (210) to compound (215).
 25 Fig. 30 shows chemical formulae of compound (216) to compound (221).
 Fig. 31 shows chemical formulae of compound (222) to compound (227).
 Fig. 32 shows chemical formulae of compound (228) to compound (233).
 Fig. 33 shows chemical formulae of compound (234) to compound (239).
 Fig. 34 shows chemical formulae of compound (240) to compound (245).
 30 Fig. 35 shows chemical formulae of compound (246) to compound (251).
 Fig. 36 shows chemical formulae of compound (252) to compound (257).
 Fig. 37 shows chemical formulae of compound (258) to compound (263).
 Fig. 38 shows chemical formulae of compound (264) to compound (269).
 Fig. 39 shows chemical formulae of compound (270) to compound (275).
 35 Fig. 40 shows chemical formulae of compound (276) to compound (281).
 Fig. 41 shows chemical formulae of compound (282) to compound (287).
 Fig. 42 shows chemical formulae of compound (288) to compound (293).
 Fig. 43 shows chemical formulae of compound (294) to compound (299).
 Fig. 44 shows chemical formulae of compound (300) to compound (305).
 40 Fig. 45 shows chemical formulae of compound (306) to compound (311).
 Fig. 46 shows chemical formulae of compound (312) to compound (316).
 Fig. 47 shows chemical formulae of compound (317) to compound (322).
 Fig. 48 shows chemical formulae of compound (323) to compound (328).
 Fig. 49 shows chemical formulae of compound (329) to compound (334).
 45 Fig. 50 shows chemical formulae of compound (335) to compound (340).
 Fig. 51 shows chemical formulae of compound (341) to compound (346).
 Fig. 52 shows chemical formulae of compound (347) to compound (352).
 Fig. 53 shows chemical formulae of compound (353) to compound (358).
 Fig. 54 shows chemical formulae of compound (359) to compound (364).
 50 Fig. 55 shows chemical formulae of compound (365) to compound (370).
 Fig. 56 shows chemical formulae of compound (371) to compound (376).
 Fig. 57 shows chemical formulae of compound (377) to compound (382).
 Fig. 58 shows chemical formulae of compound (383) to compound (386).

55 Best Mode for Carrying Out the Invention

The present invention is illustrated more specifically by referring to the following Examples. However, the present invention is not limited thereto.

Production Example 1

Production of ethyl 3-[N-(2-bromobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate

One-hundred milligrams of sodium hydride (60% water-in-oil suspension) were added to a solution of 247 mg of ethyl 3-butyrylamino-4-nitrobenzoate in 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide in a nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature in some divided portions. The reaction suspension was stirred at the same temperature for 1 hour, and a solution of 244 mg of 2-bromobenzyl bromide in 2 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was gradually added dropwise thereto over a period of 10 minutes. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and was poured in ice water. The oily substance precipitated was extracted with methylene chloride. The organic solvent layer was washed with water, dried, and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was developed through silica-gel flash column chromatography, and was eluted with a mixture of 25% ethyl acetate and n-hexane to give 540 mg of yellow oil of ethyl 3-[N-(2-bromobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 0.87 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.48 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.68 (2H, sextet, J=8Hz), 2.03 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 4.30-4.46 (2H, m), 4.70 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 5.40 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.08-7.34 (2H, m), 7.43 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.58 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.66 (1H, d, J=1Hz), 7.96 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 8.16 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz)

Production Example 2

Production of ethyl 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzoylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate

In the same manner as in Production Example 1, 480 mg of yellow crystals of ethyl 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzoylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate were formed from 450 mg of ethyl 3-benzoylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 243 mg of 2-chlorobenzyl bromide.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.35 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 4.35 (2H, q, J=8Hz), 4.76 (1H, bd, J=15Hz), 5.82 (1H, bd, J=15Hz), 7.10-8.00 (12H, m)
mp : 111-113°C

Production Example 3

Production of ethyl 3-[N-(2-fluorobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate

In the same manner as in Production Example 1, 394 mg of yellow oil of ethyl 3-[N-(2-fluorobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate were formed from 300 mg of ethyl 3-butyrylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 243 mg of 2-fluorobenzyl bromide.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 0.85 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.40 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.65 (2H, sextet, J=8Hz), 1.98 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 4.30-4.45 (2H, m), 4.60 (1H, d, J=10Hz), 5.25 (1H, d, J=10Hz), 6.88 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 7.08 (2H, dd, J=5, 8Hz), 7.24 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.41 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.69 (1H, d, J=1Hz), 7.96 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 8.15 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz)

Production Example 4

Production of ethyl 3-[N-(4-fluorobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate

In the same manner as in Production Example 1, 400 mg of yellow oil of ethyl 3-[N-(4-fluorobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate were formed from 300 mg of ethyl 3-butyrylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 243 mg of 4-fluorobenzyl bromide.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 0.86 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.37 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.56-1.76 (2H, m), 1.96-2.04 (2H, m), 4.32-4.46 (2H, m), 4.40 (1H, d, J=14Hz), 5.23 (1H, d, J=14Hz), 6.95 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 7.10 (2H, dd, J=5, 8Hz), 7.47 (1H, d, J=1Hz), 7.95 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 8.16 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz)

Production Example 5

Production of ethyl 3-[N-(2-cyanobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate

5 Potassium carbonate (296 mg) was added to a solution of 200 mg of ethyl 3-butyrylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 154 mg of 2-cyanobenzyl bromide in N,N-dimethylformamide, and the mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and with water. The organic layer was washed with water and with a sodium chloride aqueous solution, and was then dried over magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to give 330 mg of yellow oil of ethyl 3-[N-(2-cyanobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate.

10 Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 0.86 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.49 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.67 (2H, sextet, J=8Hz), 2.02 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 4.28-4.52 (2H, m), 4.90 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 5.28 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.40 (1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.61 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.70 (1H, d, J=1Hz), 7.74 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 8.02 (1H, d, J=10Hz), 8.22 (1H, dd, J=1, 10Hz)

15

Production Example 6

The following compounds were produced in the same manner as in Production Example 5.

20 Production Example 6-1

Ethyl 3-[N-(3-fluorobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate

Properties of the compound:

25

yellow oil.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 0.86 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.35 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.68 (2H, m), 2.00 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.36 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 4.40 (2H, m), 5.31 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 6.85-7.28 (4H, m), 7.60 (1H, d, J=1.5Hz), 7.97 (1H, d, J=10Hz), 8.16 (1H, dd, J=10, 1.5Hz)

30

Production Example 6-2

Ethyl 4-nitro-3-[N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-n-butyrylamino] benzoate

35 This compound was used in the subsequent step at once. Property of the compound:

yellow oil.

Production Example 6-3

40

Ethyl 3-[N-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate

Properties of the compound:

45 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 0.89 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.38 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.70 (2H, m), 2.03 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.36 (2H, m), 4.96 (1H, d, J=13.5Hz), 5.70 (1H, d, J=13.5Hz), 7.10-7.28 (3H, m), 7.49 (1H, d, J=1.5Hz), 8.03 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 8.14 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 1.5Hz)
mp : 85-89°C

50 Production Example 6-4

Ethyl 3-[N-(3-methylbenzyl)propionylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate

This compound was used in the subsequent step at once. Property of the compound:

55

yellow oil.

Production Example 6-5

Ethyl 3-[N-(2-fluorobenzyl)cyclopropanecarbonylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate

5 Properties of the compound:

yellow oil.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 0.60-0.71 (2H, m), 0.99-1.14 (3H, m), 1.38 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.37 (2H, m), 4.62 (1H, d, J=12Hz), 5.30 (1H, d, J=12Hz), 6.92 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.10 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.26 (1H, m), 7.42 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz),
 10 7.80 (1H, s), 7.99 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 8.14 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 2Hz)

Production Example 6-6

Ethyl 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)cyclobutanecarbonylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate

15

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.37 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.68-1.87 (4H, m), 2.22-2.58 (2H, m), 2.75-2.94 (1H, m), 4.23-4.46 (2H, m), 4.63 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 5.45 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.14-7.24 (3H, m), 7.35-7.45 (1H, m), 7.56 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.97
 20 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 8.13 (1H, dd, J=9, 2Hz)

Production Example 6-7

Ethyl 3-cyclobutanecarbonylamino-4-nitrobenzoate

25

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.43 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.86-2.19 (2H, m), 2.22-2.54 (4H, m), 3.20-3.41 (1H, m), 4.43 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 7.80 (1H, dd, J=10, 2Hz), 8.26 (1H, d, J=10Hz), 9.45 (1H, d, J=2Hz)
 30 mp : 94-96°C

Production Example 7

Production of 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzamide

35

Oxalyl chloride (3.91 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of 7.00 g of 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoic acid in 50 ml of dichloromethane in a nitrogen atmosphere while being cooled with ice, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour while being cooled with ice and then at room temperature for 2.5 hours. The reaction solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was then dissolved in 50 ml of tetrahydrofuran. The solution was added dropwise to 28%
 40 aqueous ammonia in a nitrogen atmosphere while being cooled with ice. The reaction solution was stirred for 1 hour, and water and ethyl acetate were added thereto. Approximately 8 g of the solid material precipitated were collected through filtration. After the filtrate was separated, the organic layer was washed with water, and dried over magnesium sulfate. Then, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the residue. The solid material precipitated and the residue were combined, washed with hot ethyl acetate, and collected through filtration to give 4.94 g of 3-
 45 acetylamino-4-nitrobenzamide.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.08 (3H, s), 7.68 (1H, br s), 7.78 (1H, dd, J=9, 2Hz), 7.94-8.05 (2H, m), 8.23 (1H, brs)
 50 Mass (FAB) : 224

Production Example 8

Production of 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzamide

55 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzamide was produced from the compound in the same manner as in Production Example 7.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.86 (3H, s), 4.64 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 5.06 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.22-7.40 (4H, m), 7.73 (1H, br s), 7.84 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 8.03 (1H, dd, J=9, 2Hz), 8.14 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 8.22 (1H, br s)

Production Example 9

Production of 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzitrile

Thirty milliliters of 1,4-dioxane were added dropwise to a solution of 1.70 ml of titanium tetrachloride in 4 ml of dichloromethane in a nitrogen atmosphere while being cooled with ice. Then, a solution of 2.70 g of 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzamide in 65 ml of 1,4-dioxane was added dropwise thereto. After the mixture was stirred for 15 minutes, 3.14 g of triethylamine were added thereto, and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours while being cooled with ice. After the completion of the reaction, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was extracted with ethyl acetate and with water. The organic layer was washed with water, and was dried over magnesium sulfate. Subsequently, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified through column chromatography [200 ml, a mixture of n-hexane and ethyl acetate at a ratio of 4:1] to give 1.21 g of 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzitrile.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.92 (3H, s), 4.61 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 5.40 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.18-7.50 (5H, m), 7.80 (1H, dd, J=9, 2Hz), 8.01 (1H, d, J=9Hz) Mass (FAB) : 300
IR (Nujol) : 2250cm⁻¹

Production Example 10

Production of 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)amino]-4-nitrobenzitrile

One milliliter of 35% hydrochloric acid was added to a solution of 850 mg of 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzamide in 10 ml of 1,4-dioxane, and the mixture was heat-refluxed for 4 days. After the solvent was distilled off from the reaction solution under reduced pressure, the residue was separated by being poured in a mixture solution of water and chloroform. The organic layer was washed with water, and was dried over magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified through column chromatography [50 ml, chloroform] to give 230 mg of 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)amino]-4-nitrobenzitrile.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 4.65 (2H, d, J=6Hz), 6.93 (1H, dd, J=9, 2Hz), 7.10 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.25-7.40 (3H, m), 7.40-7.54 (1H, m), 8.30 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 8.45 (1H, br s)
Mass (FAB) : 258
IR (Nujol) : 2220cm⁻¹

Production Example 11

Production of 4-amino-3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)amino]-benzitrile

Fifty milligrams of 10% palladium on carbon were added to a mixed solution of 261 mg of 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)amino]-4-nitrobenzitrile, 15 ml of methanol and 3 ml of 1,4-dioxane to conduct the catalytic reduction in a hydrogen atmosphere at 3 atm. After the completion of the reaction, the reaction solution was filtered through celite, and the filtrate was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting solid material was washed with ether, and was collected through filtration to give 196 mg of 4-amino-3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)amino]benzitrile.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 4.39 (2H, d, J=5Hz), 5.57 (1H, t, J=5Hz), 5.69 (2H, s), 6.46 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 6.61 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 6.88 (1H, dd, J=9, 2Hz), 7.25- 7.41 (3H, m), 7.44-7.54 (1H, m)

Example 1

Synthesis of 1-(2-bromobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (42)

A suspension obtained by adding 390 mg of ethyl 3-[N-(2-bromobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate and 210 mg

of reduced iron to a mixed solution of 1 ml of acetic acid and 2 ml of ethanol was refluxed for 1 hour while being vigorously stirred. After the completion of the reaction, the reaction solution was cooled down and filtered through celite, and the filtrate was then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was separated with the addition of ethyl acetate and a sodium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution. After the organic solvent layer was dried, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the brown residue was obtained. This residue was purified through flash column chromatography to give 160 mg of yellow crystals of 1-(2-bromobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (42).

Properties of Compound (42):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3 , δ) : 1.04 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.40 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.78-1.98 (2H, m), 2.34 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 4.38 (2H, q, J=8Hz), 5.45 (2H, s), 6.65 (1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.00 (1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.13 (1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.28 (1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.78 (1H, d, J=10Hz), 7.99 (1H, d, J=10Hz), 8.02 (1H, s)
mp : 134-135°C

Example 2

Synthesis of 1-(2-cyanobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (43)

In the same manner as in Example 1, 160 mg of colorless crystals of 1-(2-cyanobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (43) were formed from 390 mg of ethyl 3-[N-(2-cyanobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate.

Properties of Compound (43):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3 , δ) : 1.04 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.40 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.88 (2H, sextet, J=8Hz), 2.80 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 4.38 (2H, q, J=8Hz), 5.62 (2H, s), 6.57-6.63 (1H, m), 7.38-7.50 (2H, m), 7.78 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.79 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.94 (1H, d, J=1Hz), 8.03 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz)
mp : 132-134°C

Example 3

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-phenylbenzimidazole (44)

In the same manner as in Example 1, 220 mg of yellow crystals of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-phenylbenzimidazole (44) were obtained from 460 mg of ethyl 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzoylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate.

Properties of Compound (44):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3 , δ) : 1.40 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 4.38 (2H, q, J=8Hz), 5.56 (2H, s), 6.72 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.18 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.30 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.45-7.55 (4H, m), 7.64 (1H, d, J=1Hz), 7.68 (1H, d, J=1Hz), 7.90 (1H, d, J=10Hz), 7.95 (1H, s), 8.08 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz)
mp : 140-142°C

Example 4

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (45)

In the same manner as in Example 1, 160 mg of colorless crystals of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (45) were formed from 390 mg of ethyl 3-[N-(2-fluorobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate.

Properties of Compound (45):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3 , δ) : 1.04 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.40 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.78-1.98 (2H, m), 2.34 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 4.38 (2H, q, J=8Hz), 5.45 (2H, s), 6.65 (1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.00 (1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.13 (1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.28 (1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.78 (1H, d, J=10Hz), 7.99 (1H, d, J=10Hz), 8.02 (1H, s)
mp : 134-135°C

Example 5

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(4-fluorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (46)

In the same manner as in Example 1, 160 mg of colorless crystals of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(4-fluorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (46) were formed from 400 mg of ethyl 3-[N-(4-fluorobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate.

Properties of Compound (46):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.04 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.40 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.88 (2H, sextet, J=8Hz), 2.82 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 4.38 (2H, q, J=8Hz), 5.38 (2H, s), 7.00 (4H, d, J=7Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=1Hz), 8.00 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz)
mp : 134-135°C

Example 6

The following compounds were formed in the same manner as in Example 1.

Example 6-1

6-Ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)benzimidazole (47)

Properties of Compound (47)

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.03 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.39 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.89 (2H, m), 2.86 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.38 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 5.50 (2H, s), 6.72 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.24 (1H, m), 7.58 (1H, dt, J=7.5, 1.5Hz), 7.79 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.96-8.02 (2H, m), 8.60 (1H, d, J=4Hz)
mp : 84-85°C

Example 6-2

6-Ethoxycarbonyl-1-(3-fluorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (48)

Properties of Compound (48)

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.04 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.39 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.90 (2H, m), 2.81 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.39 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 5.39 (2H, s), 6.70-6.84 (2H, m), 7.00 (1H, dt, J=8.5 and 1.5Hz), 7.78 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.96 (1H, s), 8.00 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz)
mp : 142-146°C

Example 6-3

1-(2,6-Dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (49)

Properties of Compound (49)

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.03 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.38 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.88 (2H, m), 2.93 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.34 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 5.61 (2H, s), 7.26 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.39 (2H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.68 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.84 (1H, d, J=1.5Hz), 7.91 (2H, d, J=7.5Hz)
mp : 153-156°C

Example 6-4

1-(3-Methylbenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (50)

Properties of Compound (50):

colorless solid.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.02 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.41 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.89 (2H, m), 2.29 (3H, s), 2.82 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.38 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 5.35 (2H, s), 6.79-6.86 (2H, m), 7.09 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.20 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.95-8.02 (2H, m)

Example 6-5

2-Cyclopropyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)benzimidazole (51)

5 Properties of Compound (51):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.10 (2H, m), 1.27 (2H, m), 1.40 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.95 (1H, m), 4.37 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 5.56 (2H, s), 6.77 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.03 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.13 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.29 (1H, m), 7.69 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.96 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 8.02 (1H, d, J=2Hz)

10 mp : 122-126°C

Example 6-6

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-6-cyano-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole (52)

15

Properties of Compound (52):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.04-1.24 (2H, m), 1.24-1.39 (2H, m), 1.83-2.01 (1H, m), 5.58 (2H, s), 6.54 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.16 (1H, td, J=9, 2Hz), 7.22-7.38 (1H, m), 7.43-7.56 (3H, m), 7.74 (1H, dd, J=9, 2Hz)

20 Mass (FAB) : 308 (M+1)

IR (Nujol) : 2210cm⁻¹

Example 6-7

25 1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclobutyl-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole (53)

Properties of Compound (53):

30 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.38 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.90-2.21 (2H, m), 2.21-2.24 (2H, m), 2.46-2.70 (2H, m), 3.52-3.73 (1H, m), 4.37 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 5.39 (2H, s), 6.34 (1H, dd, J=9, 2Hz), 7.06 (1H, td, J=9, 2Hz), 7.23 (1H, td, J=9, 2Hz), 7.46 (1H, dd, J=9, 2Hz), 7.83 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.92 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 8.01 (1H, dd, J=9, 2Hz)

mp : 111-113°C

Example 6-8

35

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-pentylbenzimidazole (54)

Properties of Compound (54):

40 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 0.87 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.22-1.47 (7H, m), 1.74-1.93 (2H, m), 2.80 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.37 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 5.47 (2H, s), 6.39 (1H, dd, J=9, 2Hz), 7.08 (1H, td, J=9, 2Hz), 7.19-7.33 (1H, m), 7.48 (1H, dd, J=9, 2Hz), 7.79 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.94 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 8.00 (1H, dd, J=9, 2Hz)

Example 7

45

5-Carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (55)

Twenty milliliters of ethanol and 10.4 g of a 10% sodium hydroxide aqueous solution were added to 2.8 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, and the mixture was heat-refluxed for 4 hours. The reaction solution was cooled, and was then adjusted to a pH of 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The crystals were collected, washed with water, and dried under reduced pressure to give 2.46 g of a colorless solid of 5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (55).

Properties of Compound (55):

55 ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.93 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.75 (2H, m), 2.79 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 5.61 (2H, s), 6.49 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.21 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.33 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.46 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.56 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.80 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 8.20 (1H, s)

Example 8

The following compounds were formed in the same manner as in Example 7.

5 Example 8-1

6-Carboxy-1-(3-methylbenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (56)

Properties of Compound (56):

10

colorless solid.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.97 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.78 (2H, m), 2.23 (3H, s), 3.86 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 5.53 (2H, s), 6.80 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 6.91 (1H, s), 7.07 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.21 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.65 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.79 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 8.04 (1H, s)

15

Example 8-2

2-n-Butyl-7-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (57)

Properties of Compound (57):

20

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.84 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.34 (2H, m), 1.71 (2H, m), 2.80 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 5.89 (2H, s), 6.03 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.13 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.27 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.48 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.63 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.87 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz)

25

Example 8-3

6-Carboxy-2-cyclopropyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)benzimidazole (58)

Properties of Compound (58):

30

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.04-1.19 (4H, m), 2.37 (1H, m), 5.79 (2H, s), 7.00 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.15 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.27 (1H, t, J=10.5Hz), 7.37 (1H, m), 7.60 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.82 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 8.11 (1H, s)
mp : 224-229°C

35

Example 8-4

2-n-Butyl-6-carboxy-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)benzimidazole (59)

Properties of Compound (59):

40

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.87 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.26-1.48 (2H, m), 1.60-1.80 (2H, m), 2.90 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 5.63 (2H, s), 6.89 (1H, td, J=9, 2Hz), 7.13 (1H, td, J=9, 2Hz), 7.20-7.44 (2H, m), 7.64 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.80 (1H, dd, J=9, 2Hz), 8.08 (1H, d, J=2Hz)
mp : 216-219°C

45

Example 9

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-chlorocarbonyl-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole hydrochloride (60)

50

Oxalyl chloride (0.208 ml) was added dropwise to a suspension prepared by adding 390 mg of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole to 10 ml of methylene chloride containing 1 drop of N,N-dimethylformamide at room temperature over a period of several minutes. The mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 2 hours, and was then concentrated under reduced pressure. Isopropyl ether was added to the residue, and the mixture was pulverized to give 450 mg of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-chlorocarbonyl-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole hydrochloride (60) as a white powder. Since this product was unstable, it was used as a starting material in the subsequent step without being purified.

55

Example 10

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(4-dimethylaminophenylmethylcarbamoyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (61)

Four-hundred milligrams of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole were dissolved in 3 ml of methylene chloride containing 1 drop of N,N-dimethylformamide. Oxalyl chloride (28 mg) was added to this solution at 5°C. The thus-obtained solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and was then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in 3 ml of methylene chloride, and the mixture was added to a mixed solution prepared by adding 271 mg of 4-dimethylaminobenzylamine hydrochloride and 1 ml of triethylamine to 10 ml of methylene chloride at room temperature. The resulting reaction mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 1 hour, washed with water, dried and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was developed and purified through thin-layer chromatography to give 215 mg of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(4-dimethylaminophenylmethylcarbamoyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (61).

Properties of Compound (61):

colorless crystal.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.01 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.88 (2H, sextet, J=7Hz), 2.76 (2H, t, J=7Hz), 2.95 (6H, s), 4.50 (2H, d, J=5Hz), 5.45 (2H, s), 6.32 (1H, d, J=5Hz), 6.36 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 6.72 (2H, d, J=10Hz), 7.07 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.20-7.25 (3H, m), 7.46 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.58 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.82 (1H, d, J=1Hz)

mp : 155-156°C

Example 11

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-morpholino-carbamoyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (62)

In the same manner as in Example 10, 205 mg of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-morpholinocarbamoyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (62) were formed from 200 mg of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole and 124 mg of 4-aminomorpholine.

Properties of Compound (62):

colorless crystal.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.03 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.88 (2H, sextet, J=8Hz), 2.62 (4H, bs), 2.72 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 3.85 (4H, bs), 5.42 (2H, s), 6.42 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.08 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.20-7.28 (3H, m), 7.47 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.78 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz)

mp : 195-197°C

Example 12

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-thiomorpholinocarbonylbenzimidazole (63)

In the same manner as in Example 10, 160 mg of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-thiomorpholinocarbonylbenzimidazole (63) were formed from 200 mg of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole and 125 mg of thiomorpholine.

Properties of Compound (63):

colorless crystal.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.03 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.88 (2H, sextet, J=8Hz), 2.78 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 2.96 (4H, bt, J=5Hz), 3.88 (4H, bt, J=5Hz), 5.46 (2H, s), 6.34 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.08 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.26 (2H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.47 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.58 (1H, bd, J=8Hz), 7.76 (1H, s), 7.78 (1H, d, J=8Hz)

mp : 160-162°C

Example 13

Synthesis of 2-n-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (64)

In the same manner as in Example 10, 230 mg of 2-n-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (64) were formed from 200 mg of 6-carboxy-2-n-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-benzimidazole and 126 mg of 2-aminomethylpyridine.

Properties of Compound (64):

colorless crystal.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 0.92 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.42 (2H, sextet, J=8Hz), 1.82 (2H, quintet, J=8Hz), 2.82 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 4.76 (1H, d, J=5Hz), 5.46 (2H, s), 6.38 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.08 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.18-7.26 (2H, m), 7.32 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.46 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.62 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.72 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.82 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.88 (1H, d, J=1Hz), 8.56 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz)

mp : 175-176°C

10 Example 14 Synthesis of 2-n-butyl-5-carbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (65)

In the same manner as in Example 10, 170 mg of 2-n-butyl-5-carbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (65) were formed from 100 mg of 2-n-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-5-carboxybenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (65):

colorless crystal.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.84 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.35 (2H, sextet, J=8Hz), 1.68 (2H, quintet, J=8Hz), 2.78 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 5.58 (2H, s), 6.50 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.25 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.28 (1H, bs), 7.35 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.42 (1H, d, J=10Hz), 7.56 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.74 (1H, dd, J=1, 10Hz), 7.96 (1H, bs), 8.20 (1H, d, J=1Hz)

mp : 195-198°C

Example 15

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropyl-6-morpholinocarbonylbenzimidazole (66)

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-6-chlorocarbonyl-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole hydrochloride (140 mg) was added to a solution prepared by adding 298 mg of morpholine (30% methanol solution) to 10 ml of methylene chloride at room temperature. The reaction mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 1 hour, then washed with water, dried, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was recrystallized with ether to give 20 mg of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropyl-6-morpholinocarbonylbenzimidazole (66).

Properties of Compound (66):

colorless crystal.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.04-1.12 (2H, m), 1.25-1.32 (2H, m), 1.82-1.96 (1H, m), 3.68 (8H, bs), 5.56 (2H, s), 6.55 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.13 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.22-7.29 (2H, m), 7.30 (1H, d, J=1Hz), 7.46 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=8Hz)

mp : 193-195°C

Example 16

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (67)

In the same manner as in Example 15, 95 mg of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (67) were formed from 150 mg of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-chlorocarbonyl-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole hydrochloride and 85 mg of 2-aminomethylpyridine.

Properties of Compound (67):

colorless crystal.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.02-1.13 (2H, m), 1.24-1.32 (2H, m), 1.82-1.95 (1H, m), 4.76 (2H, d, J=5Hz), 5.59 (2H, s), 7.11 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.20-7.26 (2H, m), 7.34 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.46 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.60 (1H, t, J=5Hz), 7.66 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.73 (1H, s), 7.88 (1H, s)

mp : 134-135°C

Example 17

The following compounds were formed in the same manner as in Example 15.

Example 17-1

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropyl-6-(2-pyridylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (68)

5 Properties of Compound (68):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.16 (2H, m), 1.32 (2H, m), 1.92 (1H, m), 5.61 (2H, s), 6.57 (1H, d, J=7.5 and 1.5Hz), 7.15 (1H, dt, J=7.5 and 1.5Hz), 7.22-7.31 (2H, m), 7.48 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 1.5Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 8.05 (2H, m).
mp : 206-209°C

10

Example 17-2

6-(2-Carboxy-1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (69)

15 Properties of Compound (69):

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.92 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.65-1.99 (5H, m), 2.25 (1H, m), 2.77 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.50 (2H, m), 4.40 (1H, m), 5.52 (2H, s), 6.53 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.21-7.71 (6H, m).
mp : 96°C

20

Example 17-3

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclobutyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (70)

25 Properties of Compound (70):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.90-2.21 (2H, m), 2.25-2.37 (2H, m), 2.40-2.65 (2H, m), 3.64 (1H, m), 4.76 (2H, d, J=5Hz), 5.39 (2H, s), 6.33 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.05 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.16-7.26 (2H, m), 7.33 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.46 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.69-7.76 (3H, m), 7.73 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.86 (1H, s), 8.55 (1H, d, J=5Hz).

30

mp : 183-185°C.

Example 17-4

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (71)

35

Properties of Compound (71)

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.03 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.90 (2H, m), 2.80 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.80 (2H, d, J=5Hz), 5.44 (2H, s), 6.40 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.09 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.21-7.27 (3H, m), 7.34 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.47 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.64-7.72 (2H, m), 7.83 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 2Hz), 8.30 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 8.56 (1H, d, J=5Hz).
mp : 115-116°C

40

Example 17-5

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-6-[N-methyl-N-(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (72)

45

Properties of Compound (72):

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.03 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.87 (2H, m), 2.79 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.05 (3H, brs), 4.60 (1H, brs), 4.87 (1H, brs), 5.40 (2H, d, J=unknown), 6.38 (1H, d, J=unknown), 7.05 (1H, brs), 7.20 (3H, m), 7.35-7.49 (3H, m), 7.60-7.81 (2H, m), 8.54 (1H, brs).
mp : 99°C.

50

Example 17-6

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-6-piperonylcarbamoyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (73)

55

Properties of Compound (73):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.01 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.88 (2H, m), 2.78 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.54 (2H, d, J=5Hz), 5.45 (2H, s), 5.95 (2H, s), 6.36 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 6.44 (1H, t, J=5Hz), 6.75-6.85 (3H, m), 7.08 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.23 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.45 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.67 (1H, dd, J=7.5, 2Hz), 7.78 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.83 (1H, s).
mp : 131-134°C.

5

Example 17-7

1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-phenylcarbamoyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (74)

10 Properties of Compound (74):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.03 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.90 (2H, m), 2.81 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 5.47 (2H, s), 6.40 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.06-7.18 (2H, m), 7.26 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.35 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.48 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.64 (2H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.72 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 2Hz), 7.85-7.95 (3H, m).
mp : 168°C.

15

Example 17-8

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-[(4-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (75)

20

Properties of Compound (75):

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.93 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.76 (2H, m), 2.78 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.49 (2H, d, J=5Hz), 6.42 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.22 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.27 (2H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.34 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.57 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.69 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.80 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.97 (1H, s), 8.48 (2H, d, J=7.5Hz), 9.03 (1H, t, J=5Hz).
mp : 170-173°C.

25

Example 17-9

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-[(3-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (76)

30

Properties of Compound (76):

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.95 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.76 (2H, m), 2.80 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.50 (2H, d, J=5Hz), 5.60 (2H, s), 6.42 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.23 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.30-7.58 (2H, m), 7.57 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.67-7.74 (2H, m), 7.75 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.97 (1H, s), 8.46 (1H, d, J=5Hz), 8.56 (1H, s), 9.0 (1H, t, J=5Hz).
mp : 193-195°C.

35

Example 17-10

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-6-[N-methyl-N-(2-pyridyl)carbamoyl]-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (77)

40

Properties of Compound (77):

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.90 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.70 (2H, m), 2.73 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.40 (3H, s), 5.42 (2H, s), 6.23 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 6.91 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 6.98 (1H, m), 7.15-7.25 (3H, m), 7.36 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.46-7.57 (3H, m), 8.23 (1H, m).
mp : 143-146°C.

45

50 Example 17-11

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-6-(homopiperidinocarbonyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (78)

Properties of Compound (78):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.03 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.46-1.94 (10H, m), 2.80 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.32 (2H, brs), 3.64 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 5.41 (2H, s), 6.42 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.07 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.19-7.29 (3H, m), 7.45 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz).

55

mp : 136-137°C.

Example 17-12

1-(3-Methylbenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (79)

Properties of Compound (79):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.02 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.88 (2H, m), 2.26 (3H, s), 2.81 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.76 (2H, d, J=5Hz), 5.36 (2H, s), 6.78-6.84 (2H, m), 7.07 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.13-7.22 (2H, m), 7.33 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.57-7.72 (2H, m), 7.78 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.94 (1H, s), 8.55 (1H, d, J=5Hz).

mp : 129-131°C.

Example 17-13

2-n-Butyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-6-[N-methyl-N-(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (80)

Properties of Compound (80):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 0.92 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.45 (2H, m), 1.83 (2H, m), 2.86 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.06 (3H, brs), 4.61 (1H, brs), 4.86 (1H, brs), 5.37 (2H, brd), 6.62 (1H, brd), 6.97 (1H, brs), 7.07-7.85 (8H, m), 8.57 (1H, d, J=5Hz).

mp : 97-100°C.

Example 17-14

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-2-ethyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (81)

Properties of Compound (81):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.43 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.84 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 4.76 (2H, d, J=5Hz), 5.45 (2H, s), 6.37 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.07 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.19-7.28 (2H, m), 7.33 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.45 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 2Hz), 7.62-7.75 (3H, m), 7.82 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.89 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 8.55 (1H, d, J=5Hz).

mp : 167-168°C.

Example 17-15

2-n-Butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-7-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (82)

Properties of Compound (82):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 0.93 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.42 (2H, m), 1.83 (2H, m), 2.81 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.44 (2H, d, J=5Hz), 5.70 (2H, s), 6.13 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 2Hz), 6.85-6.97 (3H, m), 7.12-7.28 (4H, m), 7.34 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.62 (1H, dt, J=7.5 and 2Hz), 7.88 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 8.40 (1H, d, J=5Hz).

mp : 112-114°C.

Example 17-16

2-Cyclopropyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-6-(piperonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (83)

Properties of Compound (83):

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.05 (4H, m), 2.27 (1H, m), 4.38 (2H, d, J=5Hz), 5.71 (2H, s), 5.98 (2H, s), 6.73-6.91 (4H, m), 7.14 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.27 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.36 (1H, m), 7.55 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.73 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 2Hz), 8.04 (1H, s), 8.87 (1H, t, J=5Hz).

mp : 170-173°C.

Example 17-17 2-[[1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazol-6-yl]carbonylaminoethyl]-pyridine-1-oxide (84)

Properties of Compound (84):

- 5 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.42 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.82 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 4.81 (2H, d, J=7.5Hz), 5.43 (2H, s), 6.31 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.06 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.20-7.31 (3H, m), 7.44 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.52 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 2Hz), 7.65 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 2Hz), 7.77-7.83 (2H, m), 7.96 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 8.23 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 2Hz).
mp : 204-207°C

10 Example 17-18

2-n-Butyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-6-(2-pyridylmethylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (85)

Properties of Compound (85):

- 15 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 0.92 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.38-1.49 (2H, m), 1.77-1.88 (2H, m), 2.86 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.78 (2H, d, J=5Hz), 5.46 (2H, s), 6.67 (1H, t, J=9Hz), 7.00 (1H, t, J=9Hz), 7.13 (1H, t, J=9Hz), 7.19-7.31 (2H, m), 7.33 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.60 (1H, br peak), 7.65-7.74 (2H, m), 7.79 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.97 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 8.58 (1H, d, J=5Hz).
mp : 154-155°C

20 Example 18

Synthesis of 6-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (86)

- 25 Two-hundred milligrams of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole were suspended in 5 ml of tert-butyl alcohol, and 0.19 ml of diphenylphosphorylazide and 0.21 ml of diisopropylethylamine were added thereto at room temperature. The reaction mixture was refluxed for 4 hours, and was then separated with ethyl acetate and with water. The organic layer was washed with water, dried, and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was developed and purified through column chromatography using a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (at a ratio of from
30 1:10 to 1:3), and was further recrystallized from a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane to give 165 mg of 6-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (86).

Properties of Compound (86):

- colorless crystal.
35 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 0.98 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.50 (9H, s), 1.86 (2H, sextet, J=8Hz), 2.72 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 5.38 (2H, s), 6.40 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 6.95 (1H, dd, J=1, 10Hz), 7.08 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.24 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.28 (1H, d, J=1Hz), 7.45 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.66 (1H, d, J=10Hz).
mp : 166-168°C.

40 Example 19

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-cyano-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (87)

- 45 A solution of 1 mol of titanium tetrachloride in 0.14 ml of dichloromethane and 0.36 ml of triethylamine were added to a solution of 200 mg of 6-carbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole in 4 ml of tetrahydrofuran at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred at 20°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was separated with ethyl acetate and with water. The organic layer was washed with water, dried, and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was developed and purified through column chromatography using a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (at a ratio of from 1:10 to 1:3), and was further recrystallized from a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane to give 140 mg of 1-(2-chloroben-
50 zyl)-6-cyano-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (87).

Properties of Compound (87):

- colorless crystal.
55 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.05 (3H, t, J=8Hz), 1.90 (2H, sextet, J=8Hz), 2.85 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 5.45 (2H, s), 6.42 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.15 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.28 (1H, dt, J=1, 8Hz), 7.48 (1H, s), 7.50 (1H, d, J=10Hz), 7.54 (1H, dd, J=1, 8Hz), 7.85 (1H, d, J=10Hz).
mp : 124-126°C.

Example 20

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-mesylamino-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (88)

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (150 mg) and 61 mg of triethylamine were dissolved in 3 ml of methylene chloride, and 70 mg of methanesulfonyl chloride were added thereto at room temperature. The mixture was stirred for 1 hour, then washed with dilute hydrochloric acid, washed with water, and dried. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residual solid was collected with ether through filtration to give 124 mg of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-mesylamino-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (88).

Properties of Compound (88):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃-CD₃OD, δ) : 0.94 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.76 (2H, m), 2.71 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.81 (3H, s), 5.36 (2H, s), 6.40 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 6.98-7.22 (4H, m), 7.40 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.59 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz).
mp : 191-193°C.

Example 21 Synthesis of 6-acetylamino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (89)

Acetic anhydride (62 mg) was added to a solution of 150 mg of 6-amino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole and 61 mg of triethylamine in 3 ml of methylene chloride at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was washed with water, and was then dried. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized with ether to give 143 mg of 6-acetylamino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (89).

Properties of Compound (89):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.00 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.86 (2H, m), 2.17 (3H, s), 2.73 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 5.39 (2H, s), 6.43 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 6.98-7.11 (2H, m), 7.22 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.45 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.59 (1H, brs), 7.68 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.84 (1H, d, J=1.5Hz).
mp : 180-182°C.

Example 22

Synthesis of 6-amino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (90)

Seven-hundred milligrams of 6-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole were dissolved in a mixed solvent of 10 ml of methylene chloride and 1 ml of trifluoroacetic acid, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hours. A small amount of methylene chloride was added to the reaction solution. The mixture was washed with a sodium carbonate aqueous solution, and was dried. The solvent was then distilled off. The residue was crystallized from a mixed solvent of n-hexane and ether to give 455 mg of 6-amino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (90).

Properties of Compound (90):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃, δ) : 1.01 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.86 (2H, m), 2.73 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 5.30 (2H, s), 6.41 (1H, d, J=1.5Hz), 6.48 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 6.66 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 1.5Hz), 7.10 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.25 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.46 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.57 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz).
mp : 121-122°C.

Example 23

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-ureidobenzimidazole (91)

1-(2-Chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-ureidobenzimidazole (91) was formed in the same manner as in Example 21.

Properties of Compound (91):

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.93 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.72 (2H, m), 2.73 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 5.43 (2H, s), 5.73 (2H, s), 6.42 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 1.5Hz), 7.05 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 1.5Hz), 7.22 (1H, dt, J=7.5 and 1.5Hz), 7.33 (1H, dt, J=7.5 and 1.5Hz), 7.45 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.50 (1H, s), 7.57 (1H, dd, J=7.5 and 1.5Hz), 8.50 (1H, s).
mp : 198°C

Production Example 12

Production of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate

5 Nine milliliters of acetyl chloride were added to a mixture of 18.4 g of ethyl 3-amino-4-nitrobenzoate and 200 ml of N,N-dimethylaniline while being cooled with ice. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and then at 50°C for 2 hours. The reaction solution was poured into cold 1-N hydrochloric acid, and the mixture was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with 1-N hydrochloric acid and then with water, and was dried. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane at a ratio of from 1:10 to 1:4) to give 19.6 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate.

Properties of the compound:

15 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.42(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.32(3H, s), 4.43(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 7.82(1H, dd, J=1.8 and 8.7Hz), 8.25(1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 9.35(1H, d, J=1.8Hz), 10.19(1H, s).

Production Example 13

Production of ethyl 4-nitro-3-phenylacetylaminobenzoate

20 In the same manner as in Production Example 12, 3.30 g of ethyl 4-nitro-3-phenylacetylaminobenzoate were formed from 2.02 g of ethyl 3-amino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.87 g of phenylacetyl chloride.

Properties of the compound:

25 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.41(3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 3.85(2H, s), 4.42(2H, q, J=7.2Hz), 7.34-7.49(5H, m), 7.79(1H, m), 8.19(1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 9.39(1H, d, J=1.6Hz), 10.15(1H, s).

Production Example 14

30 Production of ethyl 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate

A solution of 1.706 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate in 12 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide were added 0.406 g of 60% sodium hydride while being cooled with ice, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 40 minutes. A solution of 1.806 g of 2-chlorobenzyl bromide in 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into cold 1-N hydrochloric acid, and the mixed solution was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with 1-N hydrochloric acid and then with water, and was dried. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane at a ratio of from 1:10 to 1:4) to give 2.08 g of oily ethyl 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate.

40 Properties of the compound:

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.38(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.92(3H, s), 4.28-4.45(2H, m), 4.72(1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 5.34(1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 7.16-7.44(4H, m), 7.69(1H, d, J=1.7Hz), 7.94(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.13(1H, dd, J=1.7 and 8.4Hz).

45 Production Example 15

Production of ethyl 4-nitro-3-[N-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]acetylamino]benzoate

50 In the same manner as in Production Example 14, 1.82 g of ethyl 4-nitro-3-[N-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]acetylamino] benzoate were formed from 1.49 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.69 g of 2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide.

Properties of the compound:

55 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.37(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.96(3H, s), 4.29-4.42(2H, m), 4.78(1H, d, J=15.4Hz), 5.40(1H, d, J=15.4Hz), 7.38(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.51-7.58(2H, m), 7.61(1H, d, J=1.7Hz), 7.67(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.92(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.13(1H, dd, J=1.7 and 8.4Hz).
mp : 153.5-158.0°C.

Production Example 16

Production of ethyl 4-nitro-3-[N-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]acetylaminobenzoate

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, 1.52 g of ethyl 4-nitro-3-[N-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]acetylaminobenzoate were formed from 1.50 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.71 g of 4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide.

Properties of the compound:

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.36(3H, t, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 1.91(3H, s), 4.32-4.43(2H, m), 4.42(1H, d, $J=14.6\text{Hz}$), 5.33(1H, d, $J=14.6\text{Hz}$), 7.30(2H, d, $J=8.1\text{Hz}$), 7.54(2H, d, $J=8.1\text{Hz}$), 7.61(1H, d, $J=1.8\text{Hz}$), 7.96(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 8.12(1H, dd, $J=1.8$ and 8.4Hz).

Production Example 17

Production of 2-cyanobenzyl 3-[N-(2-cyanobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate

A solution of 1.50 g of 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoic acid in 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was added dropwise to a slurry of 0.802 g of 60 % sodium hydride and 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. Subsequently, a solution of 3.93 g of 2-cyanobenzyl bromide in 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was added dropwise thereto, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. Ethyl acetate was poured into the reaction solution, and the crystals precipitated were separated through filtration. The crystals obtained were washed with ethyl acetate, and were further dissolved in chloroform. The filtrate from which the solid component was removed was concentrated to give 1.96 g of yellow crystals of 2-cyanobenzyl 3-[N-(2-cyanobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate.

Properties of the compound:

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.92(3H, s), 4.92(1H, d, $J=4.8\text{Hz}$), 5.24(2H, d, $J=4.9\text{Hz}$), 5.44(2H, dd, $J=7.9$ and 2.9Hz), 7.36(1H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.47(1H, d, $J=7.7\text{Hz}$), 7.52(1H, t, $J=7.7\text{Hz}$), 7.56-7.62(2H, m), 7.63-7.71(2H, m), 7.76(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.80(1H, d, $J=1.7\text{Hz}$), 7.99(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 8.25(1H, dd, $J=8.4$ and 1.8Hz).

Production Example 18

Production of ethyl 4-amino-3-(N-i-propylbutyrylamino)benzoate

A solution of 2.00 g of ethyl 3-butyrylamino-4-nitrobenzoate in 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was added dropwise to a slurry of 0.428 g of 60% sodium hydride and 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. A solution of 1.46 g of isopropyl iodide in 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was then added dropwise thereto, and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 5 days. The reaction solution was poured into a mixed solution of 80 g of dilute hydrochloric acid and 80 g of ethyl acetate for separation. The resulting organic layer was washed with 50 g of water, and was then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate at a ratio of 4:1) to obtain 0.260 g of crude ethyl 4-nitro-3-(N-i-propylbutyrylamino)benzoate. Subsequently, 3 ml of ethanol and 2 ml of acetic acid were added to 0.260 g of ethyl 4-nitro-3-(N-i-propylbutyrylamino)benzoate at room temperature, and 0.519 g of reduced iron were further added thereto. The mixture was heat-refluxed for 4 hours. The solid material was removed using a filtration aid, and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was added 30 ml of ethyl acetate and 30 ml of dilute hydrochloric acid for separation. The organic layer was washed with 30 ml of water, and was then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified through preparative thin-layer silica-gel chromatography (developing eluent: a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate at a ratio of 1:1) to give 0.06 g of ethyl 4-amino-3-(N-i-propylbutyrylamino)benzoate.

Properties of the compound:

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 0.82(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 1.01(3H, d, $J=6.9\text{Hz}$), 1.24(3H, d, $J=6.6\text{Hz}$), 1.38(3H, t, $J=7.0\text{Hz}$), 1.54-1.62(2H, m), 1.87-2.04(2H, m), 4.34(2H, q, $J=7.0\text{Hz}$), 4.45(2H, s), 4.88-4.96(1H, m), 6.78(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.64(1H, d, $J=1.9\text{Hz}$), 7.87(1H, dd, $J=8.4$ and 1.9Hz).

Production example 19

Production of ethyl 3-nitro-4-phenylacetaminobenzoate

- 5 In the same manner as in Production example 12, 6.00 g of ethyl 3-nitro-4-phenylacetaminobenzoate were formed from 4.04 g of ethyl 4-amino-3-nitrobenzoate and 3.74 g of phenylacetyl chloride.

Production Example 20

- 10 Production of N-benzenesulfonyl-3-amino-4-nitrobenzamide

- N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole (28.9 g) was added to a solution of 20.0 g of 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoic acid in 300 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Further, 28.00 g of benzenesulfonamide and 27.16 g of diazabicycloundecene were added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at 100 °C for 4 days.
- 15 The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Chloroform and a 10% sodium hydroxide aqueous solution were added to the residue, and the mixture was vigorously stirred. The aqueous layer was neutralized with 10% hydrochloric acid, and the mixture was vigorously stirred with the addition of chloroform. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to 14.4 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-3-amino-4-nitrobenzamide.

Properties of the compound:

- 20 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 6.93(1H, dd, J=1.8 and 9.0Hz), 7.43(1H, d, J=1.8Hz), 7.52(2H, br s), 7.65(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.74(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.98-7.82(3H, m), 12.74(1H, s).

Production Example 21

- 25 Production of N-benzenesulfonyl-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)-4-nitrobenzamide potassium salt

- A solution of 10.0 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-3-amino-4-nitrobenzamide in 150 ml of methanol were added 56.5 g of a 20% potassium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution and 11.5 g of 4-bromomethylbiphenyl, and the mixture was stirred at 70°C for 3 hours. The mixture was cooled, and the crystals precipitated were collected through filtration, and were dried to give 4.27 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)-4-nitrobenzamide potassium salt.
- 30

Properties of the compound:

- 35 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 4.65(2H, d, J=5.8Hz), 7.19(1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.33-7.42(4H, m), 7.57-7.71(4H, m), 7.75-7.81(2H, m), 8.02(1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 8.61(1H, br t).
IR(Nujol) : 1598cm⁻¹.

Production Example 22

- 40 Production of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide potassium salt

- Five-percent palladium on carbon (0.64 g) was added to a mixture containing 4.27 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)-4-nitrobenzamide potassium salt, 10.7 g of a 20% potassium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution and 200 ml of methanol, and the mixture was stirred in a hydrogen atmosphere at 35°C for 14 hours. The crystals precipitated were dissolved in 400 ml of a mixed solution of acetone and water (at a ratio of 5:2). The solid material was separated through filtration. The filtrate was concentrated, and the crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 3.15 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide potassium salt.
- 45

Properties of the compound:

- 50 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 4.31(2H, d, J=5.7Hz), 4.85(2H, s), 4.91(1H, br t, J=5.7Hz), 6.45(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.07(1H, s), 7.13(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.29-7.36(4H, m), 7.43-7.47(4H, m), 7.60(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.65(2H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.73-7.76(2H, m).
IR(Nujol) : 1574cm⁻¹.
- 55

Production Example 23

Production of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-nitrobenzamide

5 Oxalyl chloride (1.25 g) was added dropwise to a solution of 1.00 g of 4-acetylamino-3-nitrobenzoic acid and 0.20 g of N,N-dimethylformamide in 15 ml of methylene chloride while being cooled with ice. The mixture was further stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction solution was concentrated, and diisopropyl ether was added thereto for crystallization. The crystals were added to a solution of 0.483 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.35 g of triethylamine in 15 ml of methylene chloride. After the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, the organic layer was washed
 10 twice with water (100 ml x 2) and then with 100 ml of a sodium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution. The organic layer was concentrated to give 0.99 g of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-nitrobenzamide.

Properties of the compound:

1H-NMR(CDC₃, δ) : 2.33(3H, s), 4.76(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 7.25(1H, dd, J=5.0 and 7.2Hz), 7.34(1H, d, J=7.9Hz),
 15 7.71(1H, dt, J=1.8 and 7.8Hz), 7.84(1H, s), 8.14(1H, dd, J=2.1 and 8.8Hz), 8.58(1H, d, J=4.9Hz), 8.77(1H, d, J=2.1Hz), 8.90(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 10.47(1H, s).

Production Example 24

20 Production of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzamide

Five-percent palladium on carbon (2.53 g) was added to a solution of 10.0 g of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-nitrobenzamide in 150 ml of methanol, and the mixture was stirred in a hydrogen atmosphere at 60°C for 15 hours. The solid material was separated through filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated. The resulting residue was purified
 25 through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 7:3) to give 8.02 g of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzamide.

Properties of the compound:

1H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.06(3H, s), 4.52(2H, d, J=5.9Hz), 5.09(2H, s), 7.10(1H, dd, J=1.9 and 8.2Hz), 7.22-
 30 7.30(3H, m), 7.38(1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.75(1H, dt, J=1.7 and 7.6Hz), 8.50(1H, d, J=4.6Hz), 8.84(1H, t, J=5.8Hz), 9.19(1H, s).

Production Example 25

35 Production of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-(4-benzyloxybenzylamino)benzamide

A solution of 0.80 g of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzamide in 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide were added 1.31 g of 4-benzyloxybenzyl chloride and 1.18 g of sodium hydrogencarbonate, and the mixture was stirred at 90 °C for 2 hours. Chloroform and water were added to the reaction solution, and the chloroform extraction was conducted. The organic layer was washed with water, concentrated, and purified through silica-gel column chromatography
 40 to give 0.434 g of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-(4-benzyloxybenzylamino)benzamide.

Properties of the compound:

1H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.07(3H, s), 4.30(2H, d, J=5.6Hz), 4.51(2H, d, J=5.9Hz), 5.07(2H, s), 5.68(1H, t, J=5.6Hz),
 45 6.97(2H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.14(2H, m), 7.25(2H, dd, J=3.4 and 7.4Hz), 7.32(4H, t, 7.5Hz), 7.38(2H, t, J=7.1Hz), 7.44(2H, d, J=7.2Hz), 7.72(1H, dt, J=1.8 and 7.7Hz), 8.49(1H, dd, J=1.9 and 5.3Hz), 8.89(1H, t, J=5.9Hz), 9.28(1H, s).

Production Example 26

50 Production of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-(3,4-methylenedioxybenzylamino)benzamide

A solution of 0.80 g of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzamide in 10ml of N,N-dimethylformamide were added 0.962 g of 3,4-methylenedioxybenzyl chloride and 0.710 g of sodium hydrogencarbonate, and the mixture
 55 was stirred at 80°C for 4 hours. Chloroform and water were added to the reaction solution, and the chloroform extraction was conducted. The organic layer was washed with water, concentrated, and purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 9:1) to give 0.49 g of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-(3,4-methylenedioxybenzylamino)benzamide.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.08(3H, s), 4.29(2H, s), 4.52(2H, d, J=5.9Hz), 5.27(1H, s), 5.97(2H, s), 6.84-6.88(2H, m), 6.96(1H, s), 7.10(1H, d, J=1.3Hz), 7.13(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.2Hz), 7.25-7.32(3H, m), 7.76(1H, dt, J=1.2 and 7.6Hz), 8.51(1H, d, J=4.8Hz), 8.90(1H, t, J=5.8Hz), 9.28(1H, s).

Production Example 27

Production of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-[4-(1,2,3-thiadiazol-4-yl)benzylamino]benzamide

A solution of 0.800 g of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzamide in 10 ml of methanol were added 1.08 g of 4-(4-bromomethylphenyl)-1,2,3-thiadiazole and 0.710 g of sodium hydrogencarbonate, and the mixture was stirred at 70°C for 1 hour. The reaction solution was concentrated, and was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 9:1) to give 0.830 g of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-[4-(1,2,3-thiadiazol-4-yl)benzylamino]benzamide

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.11(3H, s), 4.43-5.56(2H, m), 5.92(1H, t, J=5.9Hz), 7.51(1H, d, J=1.4Hz), 7.15(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.1Hz), 7.22(2H, dd, J=1.9 and 8.1Hz), 7.33(1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.57(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.69(1H, dt, J=1.8 and 7.7Hz), 8.09(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 8.47(1H, dd, J=1.9 and 5.2Hz), 8.89(1H, t, J=5.9Hz), 9.34(1H, s), 9.58(1H, s).

Production Example 28

Production of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-nitrobenzamide

N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole (14.45 g) was added to a solution of 10.00 g of 4-acetylamino-3-nitrobenzoic acid in 300 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Subsequently, 14.03 g of benzenesulfonamide and 13.58 g of diazabicycloundecene were added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 72 hours. The reaction mixture was separated with the addition of chloroform and water. The organic layer was then concentrated, and the resulting residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 4:1) to give 12.67 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-nitrobenzamide.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.08(3H, s), 7.39-7.47(3H, m), 7.65(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.84(2H, dd, J=1.4 and 7.7Hz), 8.11(1H, dd, J=1.9 and 8.4Hz), 8.38(1H, d, J=1.9Hz), 10.34(1H, s).

Production Example 29

Production of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzamide

N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-nitrobenzamide (12.67 g) was dissolved in 200 ml of methanol and 30 ml of water, and 7.59 g of potassium hydrogencarbonate were further added thereto. The mixture was hydrogenated in a hydrogen atmosphere using 2.53 g of 5% palladium on carbon as catalyst at 40°C for 24 hours. The solid material was separated through filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated. The resulting residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 4:1) to give 6.72 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzamide.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.06(3H, s), 7.07(1H, dd, J=1.8 and 8.3Hz), 7.17(1H, d, J=1.8Hz), 7.44(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.61(2H, t), 7.68(1H, t), 7.96(2H, d, J=7.5Hz), 9.19(1H, s).
IR(Nujol) : 1682cm⁻¹.

Production Example 30

Production of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-(2-nitrobenzylamino)benzamide

In the same manner as in Production Example 32, 0.79 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-(2-nitrobenzylamino)benzamide were formed from 0.60 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzamide and 0.52 g of

2-nitrobenzyl bromide.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.08(3H, s), 4.72(2H, d, J=5.0Hz), 5.92(1H, s), 6.86(1H, s), 7.13(1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.31(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.49-7.58(3H, m), 7.60(2H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.66(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.86(2H, d, J=7.7Hz), 8.11(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 9.37(1H, s).

Production Example 31

10 Production of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-benzylaminobenzamide

In the same manner as in Production Example 32, 0.38 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-benzylaminobenzamide were formed from 0.60 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzamide and 0.47 g of benzyl bromide.

15 Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.07 (3H, s), 4.35(2H, d, J=5.5Hz), 5.73(1H, s), 7.06(1H, s), 7.14(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.21-7.28(2H, m), 7.32(2H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.37(2H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.53(2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.59(1H, t, J=7.0Hz), 7.88(2H, d, J=7.7Hz), 9.29(1H, s), 12.34(1H, s)

Production Example 32

Production of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-(2,4-difluorobenzylamino)benzamide

25 A solution of 7ml of methanol containing 0.60 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzamide, 0.656 g of 2,4-difluorobenzyl bromide and 0.423 g of potassium hydrogencarbonate was stirred at 60°C for 1 hour. The reaction solution was concentrated, and the residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 9:1) to give 0.370 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-(2,4-difluorobenzylamino)benzamide.

30 Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.05(3H, s), 4.34(2H, d, J=5.5Hz), 5.60(1H, s), 7.02(1H, t, J=8.0Hz), 7.06(1H, s), 7.16-7.27(3H, m), 7.38-7.51(4H, m), 7.82(2H, d, J=7.2Hz), 9.27(1H, s), 12.35(1H, s)

Production Example 33

Production of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-(4-nitrobenzylamino)benzamide

40 In the same manner as in Production Example 32, 0.52 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-(4-nitrobenzylamino)benzamide were formed from 0.50 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzamide and 0.436 g of 4-nitrobenzyl bromide.

Properties of the compound:

45 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.09(3H, s), 4.54(2H, d, J=5.0Hz), 6.10(1H, s), 6.89(1H, d, J=1.8Hz), 7.14(1H, dd, J=1.8 and 8.2Hz), 7.39(1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.58-7.65(4H, m), 7.68(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.92(2H, dd, J=1.4 and 7.4Hz), 8.20(2H, d, J=8.7Hz), 9.36(1H, s), 12.28(1H, s)

Production Example 34

50 Production of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-[4-(1,2,3-thiadiazol-4-yl)benzylamino]benzamide

In the same manner as in Production Example 32, 0.38 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-[4-(1,2,3-thiadiazol-4-yl)benzylamino]benzamide were formed from 0.50 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzamide and 0.45 g of 4-(4-bromomethylphenyl)-1,2,3-thiadiazole.

55 Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.10(3H, s), 4.46(2H, d, J=5.3Hz), 5.96(1H, s), 7.03(1H, s), 7.14(1H, dd, J=1.7 and 8.2Hz), 7.40(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.52-7.61(4H, m), 7.65(1H, t, J=7.1Hz), 7.93(2H, d, J=7.6Hz), 8.10(2H, d, J=8.2Hz),

9.35(1H, s), 9.58(1H, s), 12.31(1H, s)

Production Example 35

5 Production of ethyl 3-amino-2-nitrobenzoate

A mixture of 20.2 g of 3-acetylamino-2-nitrobenzoic acid, 11.4 g of 97% sulfuric acid and 300 ml of ethanol was stirred for 23 hours while being heat-refluxed. One-hundred milliliters of ethanol were distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was cooled to room temperature. Subsequently, the reaction solution was poured into 200 ml of ice water containing 19.5 g of sodium hydrogencarbonate. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were washed with water. Further, these crystals were dispersed in 30 ml of a mixed solution of ethyl acetate and hexane at a ratio of 1:2. The crystals were separated through filtration, washed with hexane, and then dried to give 18.0 g of ethyl 3-amino-2-nitrobenzoate.

Properties of the compound:

15 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.39(3H, t, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 4.37(2H, q, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 6.41(2H, br s), 6.83(1H, d, $J=8.7\text{Hz}$), 8.00(1H, dd, $J=1.8$ and 8.7Hz), 8.85(1H, d, $J=1.8\text{Hz}$)

Production Example 36

20 Production of ethyl 3-acetylamino-2-nitrobenzoate

Acetyl chloride (13 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of 2.98 g of ethyl 3-amino-2-nitrobenzoate and 20 ml of N,N-dimethylaniline in an ice bath. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 48 hours. The reaction solution was acidified with 10% hydrochloric acid, and was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed three times with water. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was crystallized with hexane. The crystals were separated through filtration, washed with hexane, and dried to give 3.30 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-2-nitrobenzoate.

Properties of the compound:

30 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.42(3H, t), 2.33(3H, s), 4.42(2H, q), 8.27(1H, dd, $J=1.9$ and 8.9Hz), 8.89(1H, d, $J=1.9\text{Hz}$), 8.91(1H, d, $J=8.9\text{Hz}$), 10.54(1H, br s)

Production Example 37

35 Production of ethyl 4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzoate

A mixture of 149.4 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-2-nitrobenzoate, 14.9g of 5% palladium on carbon and 1,500 ml of ethanol was stirred in a hydrogen atmosphere for 15 hours. The solid material was separated through filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated. The resulting residue was dissolved in a small amount of ethanol, and diisopropyl ether was added thereto. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 114.4 g of ethyl 4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzoate.

Properties of the compound:

45 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{DMSO}-d_6, \delta)$: 1.27(3H, t), 2.05(3H, s), 4.23(2H, q), 5.19(2H, s), 7.13(1H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$), 7.35(1H, s), 7.47(1H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$), 9.19(1H, s)

Example 24

50 Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (92)

Twenty milliliters of ethanol, 11 ml of acetic acid and 3.07 g of reduced iron were added to 2.07 g of ethyl 3-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate, and the mixture was refluxed for 4 hours. The solid material was separated through filtration, and was washed with ethanol. The filtrate was concentrated, and a sodium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution was added to the residue. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was dried, and the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate at a ratio of from 100/0 to 70:30) to give 1.46 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (92).

Properties of Compound (92):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.39(3H, t, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 2.57(3H, s), 4.37(2H, q, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 5.46(2H, s), 6.41(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.10(1H, t, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.25(1H, t), 7.47(1H, d, $J=8.0\text{Hz}$), 7.75(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.94(1H, s), 8.00(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 8.4Hz)

Example 25

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-methyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (93)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, 1.00 g of crude ethyl 3-(N-methylbutyrylamino)-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 1.00 g of ethyl 3-butyrylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 0.843 g of methyl iodide. Subsequently, 0.56 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-methyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (93) were formed in the same manner as in Example 24.

Properties of Compound (93):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.08(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 1.43(3H, t, $J=7.0\text{Hz}$), 1.89-1.97(2H, m), 2.89(2H, t, $J=7.7\text{Hz}$), 3.79(3H, s), 4.38-4.44(2H, m), 7.71(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.96(1H, dd, $J=8.4$ and 1.5Hz), 8.05(1H, d, $J=1.4\text{Hz}$)

Example 26

Synthesis of 1-n-butyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (94)

A solution of 1.86 g of ethyl 3-butyrylamino-4-nitrobenzoate in 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was added dropwise to a slurry of 0.428 g of 60% sodium hydride and 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Subsequently, a solution of 1.97 g of n-butyl iodide in 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was added dropwise thereto, and the mixture was heated at 50°C for 13 hours. The reaction solution was poured into a mixed solution of 70 g of dilute hydrochloric acid and 70 g of ethyl acetate for extraction. The resulting organic layer was washed twice with water, dried, and then concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain 2.59 g of crude ethyl 3-(N-n-butylbutyrylamino)-4-nitrobenzoate. Then, 0.81 g of 1-n-butyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (94) were formed in the same manner as in Example 24.

Properties of Compound (94):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 0.98(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 1.08(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 1.43(3H, t, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 1.75-1.83(2H, m), 1.91-1.98(2H, m), 2.88(2H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 4.15(2H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 4.42(2H, q, $J=7.2\text{Hz}$), 7.73(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.96(1H, dd, $J=8.5$ and 1.5Hz), 8.06(1H, d, $J=1.4\text{Hz}$)

Example 27

Synthesis of 1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (95)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, crude ethyl 3-[N-(3-chlorobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 1.86 g of ethyl 3-butyrylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.64 g of 3-chlorobenzyl bromide. This compound was converted to 1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole [(95), 0.57 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Properties of Compound (95):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.02(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 1.39(3H, t, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 1.85-1.92(2H, m), 2.80(2H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 4.38(2H, q, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 5.37(2H, s), 6.86(1H, d, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.04(1H, s), 7.21-7.29(2H, m), 7.77(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.96(1H, d, $J=1.2\text{Hz}$), 7.99(1H, dd, $J=8.5$ and 1.5Hz)

Example 28

Synthesis of 1-benzyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (96)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, ethyl 3-[N-benzylbutyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 1.86 g of ethyl 3-butyrylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.36 g of benzyl bromide. This compound was converted to 1-benzyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole [(96), 0.97 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Properties of Compound (96):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.01(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.39(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.83-1.91(2H, m), 2.81(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.37(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.40(2H, s), 7.03(1H, d, J=6.4Hz), 7.28-7.33(3H, m), 7.76(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.98(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.2Hz), 8.00(1H, s)

Example 29

Synthesis of 1-(4-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (97)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, ethyl 3-[N-(4-chlorobenzyl)butyrylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 1.86 g of ethyl 3-butyrylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.64 g of 4-chlorobenzyl bromide. This compound was converted to 1-(4-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole [(97), 1.06 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Properties of Compound (97):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.02(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.39(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.83-1.92(2H, m), 2.80(2H, t, J=7.8Hz), 4.38(2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 5.36(2H, s), 6.96(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.29(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.76(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.96(1H, d, J=1.2Hz), 7.99(1H, dd, J=8.3 and 1.2Hz)

Example 30

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (98)

In the same manner as in Example 24, 1.32 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (98) were formed from 1.82 g of ethyl 4-nitro-3-[N-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]acetylamino]benzoate.

Properties of Compound (98):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.38(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.53(3H, s), 4.37(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.58(2H, s), 6.47(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.36(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.41(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.75-7.97(2H, m), 7.94(1H, d, J=1.0Hz), 8.02(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.6Hz).

Example 31

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (99)

In the same manner as in Example 24, 1.22 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (99) were formed from 1.52 g of ethyl 4-nitro-3-[N-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]acetylamino]benzoate.

Properties of Compound (99):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.39(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.58(3H, s), 4.38(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.44(2H, s), 7.15(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.59(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.75(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.97(1H, s), 8.00(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.5Hz)

Example 32

Synthesis of 1-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (100)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, ethyl 3-[N-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 1.50 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.74 g of 3,4-dichlorobenzyl bromide. This compound was converted to 1-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole [(100), 0.76 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Properties of Compound (100):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.40(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.58(3H, s), 4.39(2H, q, J=7.2Hz), 5.33(2H, s), 6.84(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 2.3Hz), 7.16(2H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.39(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.74(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.96(1H, d, J=1.2Hz), 8.00(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.5Hz)

Example 33

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (101)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, 1.44 g of crude ethyl 3-[N-biphenyl-4-ylmethyl]acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate were obtained from 1.51 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.46 g of 4-chloromethylbiphenyl. Subsequently, 1.13 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (101) were formed in the same manner as in Example 24.

Properties of Compound (101):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.39(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.62(3H, s), 4.38(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.42(2H, s), 7.11(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.34(1H, m), 7.42(2H, m), 7.54(4H, m), 7.74(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.99(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 8.06(1H, d, J=1.5Hz)

Example 34

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-methylbenzyl)benzimidazole (102)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, ethyl 3-[N-(2-methylbenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 1.50 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.65 g of 2-methylbenzyl bromide. This compound was converted to 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-methylbenzyl)benzimidazole [(102), 0.81 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Properties of Compound (102):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.38(3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 2.43(3H, s), 2.54(3H, s), 4.36(2H, q, J=7.2Hz), 5.33(2H, s), 6.35(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.03(1H, t, J=8.2Hz), 7.18-7.25(2H, m), 7.75(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.91(1H, d, J=1.2Hz), 7.98(1H, dd, J=8.5 and 1.5Hz)

Example 35

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (103)

In the same manner as in Production example 14, crude ethyl 3-[N-(2-methoxybenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 1.16 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.44 g of 2-methoxybenzyl chloride. Subsequently, 1.18 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (103) were formed in the same manner as in Example 24.

Properties of Compound (103):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.39(3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 2.60(3H, s), 3.90(3H, s), 4.37(2H, q, J=7.2Hz), 5.36(2H, s), 6.61(1H, d, J=7.4Hz), 6.82(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 6.92(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.27(1H, m), 7.71(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.96(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 8.03(1H, d, J=1.3Hz).

Example 36 Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (104)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, crude ethyl 3-[N-(4-methoxybenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 1.60 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.49 g of 4-methoxybenzyl chloride. Subsequently, 1.27 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (104) were formed in the same manner as in Example 24.

Properties of Compound (104):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.40(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.59(3H, s), 3.77(3H, s), 4.38(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.31(2H, s), 6.84(2H, m), 7.00(2H, m), 7.71(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.97(1H, dd, J=1.4 and 8.4Hz), 8.03(1H, d, J=1.3Hz)

Example 37

Synthesis of 1-[2-(benzenesulfonylmethyl)benzyl]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (105)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, ethyl 3-[N-[2-(benzenesulfonylmethyl)benzyl]acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 1.00 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.93 g of 2-(benzenesulfonylme-

thyl)benzyl bromide. This compound was converted to 1-[2-benzenesulfonylmethyl)benzyl]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole [(105), 0.89 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Properties of Compound (105):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.37(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.57(3H, s), 4.36(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.50(2H, s), 5.60(2H, s), 6.38(1H, d, J=6.7Hz), 6.88(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 7.3Hz), 7.10-7.18(2H, m), 7.57(2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.69-7.78(2H, m), 7.79(1H, dd, J=0.8 and 8.1Hz), 7.92(1H, d, J=1.2Hz), 7.99(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz)

Example 38

Synthesis of 1-(2-cyanobenzyl)-6-(2-cyanobenzyloxycarbonyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (106)

In the same manner as in Example 24, 1.75 g of 1-(2-cyanobenzyl)-6-(2-cyanobenzyloxycarbonyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (106) were formed from 3.33 g of 2-cyanobenzyl 3-[N-(2-cyanobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate.

Properties of Compound (106):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.60(3H, s), 5.55(2H, s), 5.60(2H, s), 6.68(1H, d, J=7.3Hz), 7.41-7.48(3H, m), 7.61(2H, m), 7.72(1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.76(1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.77(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 8.02(1H, s), 8.05(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.5Hz).

Example 39

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (107)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, ethyl 3-[N-(biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 1.00 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.47 g of 2-bromomethylbiphenyl. This compound was converted to 1-(biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole [(107), 1.31 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Properties of Compound (107):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.41(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 2.39(3H, s), 4.38(2H, q, J=7.3Hz), 5.27(2H, s), 6.68(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.21(1H, dt, J=9.0 and 2.1Hz), 7.32-7.39(4H, m), 7.43(1H, dd, J=7.3 and 1.9Hz), 7.46-7.51(2H, m), 7.68(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.87(1H, d, J=1.3Hz), 7.95(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.5H)

Example 40

Synthesis of 1-benzyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (108)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, ethyl 3-(N-benzylacetylamino)-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 1.00 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.02 g of benzyl bromide. This compound was converted to 1-benzyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole [(108), 0.71 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Properties of Compound (108):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.39(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.58(3H, s), 4.38(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.38(2H, s), 7.05(2H, dd, J=8.3 and 1.8Hz), 7.28-7.33(3H, m), 7.72(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.98(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.5Hz), 8.02(1H, d, J=1.2Hz)

Example 41

Synthesis of 1-(4-tert-butylbenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (109)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, ethyl 3-[N-(4-tert-butylbenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 1.00 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.35 g of 4-tert-butylbenzyl bromide. This compound was converted to crude 1-(4-tert-butylbenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole [(109), 1.60 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Example 42

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-naphthylmethyl)benzimidazole (110)

In the same manner as in Production example 14, ethyl 3-[N-(2-naphthylmethyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 1.00 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.32 g of 2-naphthylmethyl bromide. This compound was converted to crude 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-naphthylmethyl)benzimidazole [(110), 1.28 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Example 43

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole (111)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, ethyl 3-[N-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)propionylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 2.00 g of ethyl 4-nitro-3-propionylaminobenzoate and 2.28 g of 4-chloromethylbiphenyl. This compound was converted to 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole [(111), 2.07 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Properties of Compound (111):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.39(3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 1.45(3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.90(2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 4.38(2H, q, J=7.2Hz), 5.43(2H, s), 7.10(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.33-7.36(1H, m), 7.43(2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.51-7.56(4H, m), 7.79(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.80(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 8.05(1H, d, J=1.3Hz)

Example 44

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (112)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, ethyl 4-[N-(2-chlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-3-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 3.15 g of ethyl 4-acetylamino-3-nitrobenzoate and 3.85 g of 2-chlorobenzyl bromide. This compound was converted to 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole [(112), 2.54 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Properties of Compound (112):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.41(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.59(3H, s), 4.40(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.43(1H, s), 6.43(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.10(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.19(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.25(1H, m), 7.46(1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.95(1H, dd, J=1.4 and 8.4Hz), 8.47(1H, s).

Example 45

Synthesis of 1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (113)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, ethyl 3-[N-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 1.50 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 2.14 g of 2,6-dichlorobenzyl bromide. This compound was converted to 1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole [(113), 0.91 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Properties of Compound (113):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.38(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.64(3H, s), 4.34(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.61(2H, s), 7.30(1H, dd, J=7.6 and 8.5Hz), 7.40(2H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.66(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.87(1H, d, J=1.1Hz), 7.91(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.5Hz).

Example 46

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propyl-1-i-propylbenzimidazole (114)

Two milliliters of acetic acid were added to 0.06 g of ethyl 4-amino-3-(N-i-propylbutyrylamino)benzoate, and the mixture was stirred at 90°C for 14 hours. The reaction solution was concentrated under reduced pressure to give 0.05 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propyl-1-i-propylbenzimidazole (114).

Properties of Compound (114)

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.07(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.43(3H, t, J=7.0Hz), 1.69(6H, d, J=6.9Hz), 1.85-1.92(2H, m), 2.91(2H, t, J=7.7Hz), 4.41(2H, q, J=7.3Hz), 4.67-4.76(1H, m), 7.72(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.94(1H, dd, J=8.7 and 1.5Hz), 8.25(1H, d, J=1.2Hz)

5 Example 47

Synthesis of 2-benzyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-methylbenzimidazole (115)

A solution of 0.924 g of ethyl 4-nitro-3-phenylacetaminobenzoate in 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide were added
 10 0.166 g of 60% sodium hydride while being cooled with ice, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Methyl iodide (0.50 ml) was added thereto, and the resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction solution was poured into cold 1-N hydrochloric acid, and the mixture was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with 1-N hydrochloric acid and then with water, and was dried. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (developing eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane at a ratio of from 1:10 to 1:4) to obtain 0.510 g of ethyl 4-nitro-3-[N-(methyl)phenylacetamino] benzoate. To 0.148 g of this compound were added 2 ml of ethanol, 1 ml of acetic acid and 0.240 g of reduced iron, and the mixture was refluxed for 2 hours. The solid material was separated through filtration. The filtrate was concentrated, and was then purified through preparative thin-layer silica-gel chromatography (eluent: a mixture of chloroform and ethyl acetate at a ratio of 2:1) to give 0.090 g of 2-benzyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-methylbenzimidazole
 15 (115).

Properties of Compound (115):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.41(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 3.63(3H, s), 4.32(2H, s), 4.40(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 7.21-7.26(3H, m), 7.27-7.32(2H, m), 7.72(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.98(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 8.03(1H, d, J=1.3Hz).

25

Example 48

Synthesis of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (116)

A solution of 1.50 g of ethyl 3-acetylamido-4-nitrobenzoate in 8 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was added dropwise to a slurry of 0.357 g of 60% sodium hydride and 8 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. Subsequently, a solution of 1.74 g of 2,4-dichlorobenzyl chloride in 8 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was added dropwise thereto, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. The reaction solution was poured into a mixed solution of 50 g of dilute hydrochloric acid and 60 g of ethyl acetate for separation. The resulting organic layer
 35 was washed twice with 50g of water. This organic layer was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain 3.5 g of crude ethyl 3-[N-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate. This compound without being purified was dissolved in 23 ml of ethanol and 12 ml of acetic acid, and then 3.32 g of reduced iron were added thereto. The mixture was heat-refluxed for 6 hours. The solid material was removed using a filtration aid, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was separated with the addition of 60 ml of ethyl acetate and 50 ml of dilute hydrochloric acid. The organic layer was washed with 50 g of a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen-carbonate and then twice with 50 g of water, and was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate at a ratio of from 4:1 to 1:1) to give 0.94 g of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (116).

Properties of Compound (116):

45

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.40(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.56(3H, s), 4.38(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.41(2H, s), 6.34(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.09(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 2.0Hz), 7.49(1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.75(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.92(1H, s), 8.00(1H, dd, J=8.5 and 1.4Hz)

50 Example 49

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(4-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (117)

1.06 g of 1-(4-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole were added 3.57 g of a 10% sodium hydroxide aqueous solution, 5 ml of ethanol and 3.57 g of water, and the mixture was heat-refluxed for 1 hour. The reaction solution was adjusted to a pH of 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid, and was concentrated under reduced pressure. Ethanol was added to the resulting residue, and the inorganic salt was separated through filtration. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain 0.80 g of the residue. This residue was purified through silica-gel col-

umn chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 4:1) to give 0.63 g of 6-carboxy-1-(4-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (117).

Properties of Compound (117)

- 5 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 0.96(3H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 1.76-1.88(2H, m), 3.10-3.23(2H, m), 5.83(2H, s), 7.27(2H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.44(2H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.89(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.89(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 8.28(1H, s)

Example 50

- 10 Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-methyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (118)

In the same manner as in Example 49, 0.46 g of 6-carboxy-1-methyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (118) were formed from 0.56 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-methyl-2-n-propylcarbonylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (118):

- 15 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 1.00(3H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 1.79-1.93(2H, m), 3.06(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 3.92(3H, s), 7.76(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.97(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 8.31(1H, s).

Example 51

- 20 Synthesis of 6-carboxy-2-n-propyl-1-i-propylbenzimidazole (119)

In the same manner as in Example 49, 0.045 g of 6-carboxy-2-n-propyl-1-i-propylbenzimidazole (119) were formed from 0.045 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propyl-1-i-propylbenzimidazole.

- 25 Properties of Compound (119):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CD $_3\text{OD}$, δ) : 0.98(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 1.61(6H, d, $J=6.9\text{Hz}$), 1.74-1.82(2H, m), 2.89(2H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 3.21-3.24(2H, m), 4.78-4.83(1H, m), 7.51(1H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 7.84(1H, dd, $J=8.4$ and 1.5Hz), 8.26(1H, s).

30 Example 52

Synthesis of 1-n-butyl-6-carboxy-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (120)

- 35 In the same manner as in Example 49, 0.60 g of 1-n-butyl-6-carboxy-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (120) were formed from 0.81 g of 1-n-butyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (120):

- 40 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 1.02(3H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 1.17(3H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 1.33-1.41(2H, m), 1.70-1.77(2H, m), 1.85-1.93(2H, m), 3.07(2H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 4.42(2H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.78(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.99(1H, dd, $J=8.5$ and 1.0Hz), 8.35(1H, s), 13.13(1H, s)

Example 53

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (121)

- 45 Eighty milliliters of ethanol and 37 g of a 10% sodium hydroxide aqueous solution were added to 10.0 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, and the mixture was refluxed for 4 hours. The reaction solution was cooled, and was then adjusted to a pH of 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The precipitate was collected, washed with water, and dried under reduced pressure to give 8.30 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (121).

50 Example 54

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (122)

- 55 In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.72 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (122) were formed from 0.90 g of 1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (122):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.60(3H, s), 5.71(2H, s), 7.46(1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.57(3H, t, J=8.2Hz), 7.73(2H, m), 12.57(1H, s).

Example 55

synthesis of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (123)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.98 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (123) were formed from 1.17 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (123):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.49(3H, s), 5.70(2H, s), 6.46-6.51(1H, m), 7.51(2H, m), 7.65(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.81(1H, dd, J=1.4 and 8.4Hz), 7.82-7.87(1H, m), 7.91(1H, s).

Example 56

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (124)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 1.07 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (124) were formed from 1.22 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (124):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.85(3H, s), 5.92(2H, s), 7.50(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.74(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.88(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 8.07(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 8.31(1H, s), 13.3(1H, br s).

Example 57

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (125)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.55 g of 6-carboxy-1-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (125) were formed from 0.76 g of 1-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (125):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.56(3H, s), 5.61(2H, s), 6.98(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.9Hz), 7.46(1H, d, J=1.9Hz), 7.59(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.63(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.81(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.4Hz), 8.07(1H, s), 12.76(1H, s)

Example 58

Synthesis of 1-benzyl-6-carboxy-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (126)

A 10% sodium hydroxide aqueous solution (3.61 g), 5 ml of ethanol and 3 ml of water were added to 0.97 g of 1-benzyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, and the mixture was heat-refluxed for 1 hour. The reaction solution was adjusted to a pH of 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid, and was concentrated under reduced pressure. Ethanol was added to the residue, and the inorganic salt was separated through filtration. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give 0.85 g of 1-benzyl-6-carboxy-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (126).

Properties of Compound (126):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.94(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.73-1.81(2H, m), 2.85(2H, t, J=7.3Hz), 5.59(2H, s), 7.07(2H, dd, J=1.1 and 8.3Hz), 7.27(1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.33(2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.65(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.79(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 8.04(1H, s)

Example 59

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (127)

In the same manner as in Example 58, 0.35 g of 6-carboxy-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole (127) were formed from 0.57 g of 1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (127):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.94(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.70-1.79(2H, m), 2.83(2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 5.59(2H, s), 6.94(1H, s), 7.15(1H, s), 7.34(2H, d, J=4.4Hz), 7.59(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.81(1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 8.02(1H, s)

Example 60

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole (128)

In the same manner as in Example 58, 0.35 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole (128) were formed from 0.61 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (128):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.51(3H, s), 5.96(2H, s), 6.33(1H, d, J=7.0Hz), 7.55-7.62(2H, m), 7.66(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.81(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.06(1H, s), 8.24(1H, d, J=7.0Hz), 12.66(1H, s)

Example 61

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (121)

Ethanol (15 ml) and 10.6 g of a 5% sodium hydroxide aqueous solution were added to 1.456 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, and the mixture was refluxed for 1 hour. The reaction solution was cooled, and was then adjusted to a pH of 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The precipitate was collected, washed with water, and dried under reduced pressure to give 0.645 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (121).

Example 62

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (129)

A 10% sodium hydroxide aqueous solution (3.10 g) and 10 ml of ethanol were added to 0.94 g of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, and the mixture was heat-refluxed for 1 hour. The reaction solution was adjusted to a pH of 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.68 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (129).

Properties of Compound (129):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.52(3H, s), 5.61(2H, s), 6.54(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.33(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 2.1Hz), 7.64(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.74(1H, d, J=2.1Hz), 7.81(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.5Hz), 7.98(1H, s), 12.72(1H, s).

Example 63

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole (130)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.83 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole (130) were formed from 1.10 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (130):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.53(3H, s), 5.61(2H, s), 7.18(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.34(1H, m), 7.43(2H, m), 7.62(5H, m), 7.79(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.5Hz), 8.09(1H, d, J=1.0Hz), 12.72(1H, br s)

Example 64

Synthesis of 1-(4-tert-butylbenzyl)-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole (131)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.55 g of 1-(4-tert-butylbenzyl)-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole (131) were formed from 1.34 g of 1-(4-tert-butylbenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (131):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.22(9H, s), 2.57(3H, s), 5.52(2H, s), 7.03(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.35(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.60(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.78(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.5Hz), 8.06(1H, s), 12.71(1H, s)

Example 65

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-methylbenzyl)benzimidazole (132)

5 In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.49 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-methylbenzyl)benzimidazole (132) were formed from 0.81 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-methylbenzyl)benzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (132):

10 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.41(3H, s), 2.48(3H, s), 5.55(2H, s), 6.14(1H, d, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.02(1H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.17(1H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 7.26(1H, d, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.65(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.81(1H, dd, $J=8.4$ and 1.4Hz), 7.97(1H, d, $J=1.1\text{Hz}$), 12.71(1H, s)

Example 66

15 Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (133)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 1.00 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (133) was formed from 1.63 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (133):

20 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.55(3H, s), 3.81(3H, s), 5.42(2H, s), 6.77(1H, m), 6.85(1H, m), 7.05(1H, m), 7.28(1H, m), 7.58(1H, m), 7.76(1H, m), 7.99(1H, s), 12.65(1H, br s).

Example 67

25 Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (134)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.99 g of 6-carboxy-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (134) were formed from 1.27 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole.

30 Properties of Compound (134):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.86(3H, s), 3.71(3H, s), 5.69(2H, s), 6.92(2H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.27(2H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.84(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 8.04(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 8.33(1H, s), 13.25(1H, br t)

35 Example 68

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[2-(benzenesulfonylmethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (135)

40 In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.74 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[2-(benzenesulfonylmethyl)benzyl]-benzimidazole (135) were formed from 0.89 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[2-(benzenesulfonylmethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (135):

45 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.44(3H, s), 4.99(2H, s), 5.71(2H, s), 6.08(1H, d, $J=6.5\text{Hz}$), 7.12-7.20(3H, m), 7.64-7.70(3H, m), 7.77-7.83(2H, m), 7.89(2H, s), 7.90(1H, s), 12.71(1H, s)

Example 69

50 Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(2-cyanobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (136)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 1.14 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-cyanobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (136) were formed from 2.04 g of 1-(2-cyanobenzyl)-6-(2-cyanobenzoyloxycarbonyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (136):

55 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.54(3H, s), 5.80(2H, s), 6.78(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.51(1H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.61(1H, dt, $J=7.8$ and 1.2Hz), 7.64(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.80(1H, dd, $J=8.4$ and 1.5Hz), 7.94(1H, d, $J=6.7\text{Hz}$), 8.00(1H, d, $J=1.1\text{Hz}$), 12.70(1H, s)

Example 70

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (137)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 1.07 g of 6-carboxy-1-(biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (137) were formed from 1.31 g of 1-(biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (137):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.32(3H, s), 5.45(2H, s), 6.61(1H, d, $J=7.7\text{Hz}$), 7.26(1H, dt, $J=7.7$ and 1.4Hz), 7.31(1H, dd, $J=7.5$ and 1.3Hz), 7.36(1H, dt, $J=7.5$ and 0.7Hz), 7.40-7.46(1H, m), 7.46-7.52(4H, m), 7.57(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.76(1H, dd, $J=7.9$ and 1.5Hz), 7.86(1H, d, $J=1.2\text{Hz}$), 12.72(1H, s)

Example 71

Synthesis of 1-benzyl-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole (138)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.59 g of 1-benzyl-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole(138) were formed from 0.71 g of 1-benzyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (138):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.56(3H, s), 5.57(2H, s), 7.11(1H, d, $J=8.0\text{Hz}$), 7.27(1H, t, $J=7.2\text{Hz}$), 7.32-7.35(2H, m), 7.61(1H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 7.79(1H, dd, $J=8.4$ and 1.3Hz), 8.06(1H, s), 12.75(1H, s)

Example 72

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-naphthylmethyl)benzimidazole (139)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.80 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-naphthylmethyl)benzimidazole (139) were formed from 1.28 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-naphthylmethyl)benzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (139):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.61(3H, s), 5.74(2H, s), 7.29(1H, d, $J=8.6\text{Hz}$), 7.46-7.52(2H, m), 7.59(1H, s), 7.63(1H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 7.78-7.92(4H, m), 8.09(1H, s), 12.68(1H, s).

Example 73

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole (140)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 1.70 g of 1-(Diphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole (140) were formed from 2.07 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (140):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 1.32(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 2.94(2H, q, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 5.63(2H, s), 7.16(2H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$), 7.34(1H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.44(2H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.60-7.78(5H, m), 7.81(1H, dd, $J=1.4$ and 8.4Hz), 8.10(1H, d, $J=1.2\text{Hz}$), 12.73(1H, s).

Example 74

Synthesis of 5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (141)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 2.48 g of 5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (141) were formed from 3.70 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (141):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.49(3H, s), 5.57(2H, s), 6.53(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.22(1H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.33(1H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.44(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.54(1H, d, $J=8.0\text{Hz}$), 7.77(1H, dd, $J=1.6$ and 8.5Hz), 8.16(1H, d, $J=1.3\text{Hz}$), 12.71(1H, br s).

Example 75

Synthesis of 5-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole (142)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.15 g of 5-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole (142) were formed from 0.26 g of 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (142):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.49(3H, s), 5.91(2H, s), 6.36(1H, dd, $J=7.2$ and 1.8Hz), 7.52(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.55-7.62(2H, m), 7.77(1H, dd, $J=8.5$ and 1.5Hz), 8.18(1H, d, $J=1.3\text{Hz}$), 8.24(1H, dd, $J=7.4$ and 1.6Hz), 12.69(1H, s).

Example 76

Synthesis of 2-benzyl-5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (143)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.488 g of 2-benzyl-5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (143) were formed from 0.635 g of 2-benzyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (143):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 4.27(2H, s), 5.57(2H, s), 6.27(1H, d, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 7.06(1H, t), 7.10-7.29(6H, m), 7.39(1H, d, $J=8.6\text{Hz}$), 7.47(1H, d, $J=7.9\text{Hz}$), 7.78(1H, dd, $J=1.4$ and 8.6Hz), 8.21(1H, d, $J=1.2\text{Hz}$), 12.71(1H, br s).

Example 77

Synthesis of 2-benzyl-6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (144)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.780 g of 2-benzyl-6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (144) were formed from 1.00 g of 2-benzyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (144):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 4.29(2H, s), 5.63(2H, s), 6.28(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.07(1H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.15(1H, m), 7.19-7.29(5H, m), 7.49(1H, d, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.70(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.81(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.91(1H, s), 12.73(1H, br s).

Example 78

Synthesis of 2-benzyl-5-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (145)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.40 g of 2-benzyl-5-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (145) were formed from 0.50 g of 2-benzyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (145):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 4.28(2H, s), 5.55(2H, s), 6.19(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.08-7.22(6H, m), 7.41(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.62(1H, d, $J=2.2\text{Hz}$), 7.79(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 8.6Hz), 8.22(1H, s), 12.72(1H, br s)

Example 79

Synthesis of 2-benzyl-6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (146)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.35 g of 2-benzyl-6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (146) were formed from 0.48 g of 2-benzyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (146):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 4.30(2H, s), 5.61(2H, s), 6.19(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.09-7.22(6H, m), 7.64(1H, d, $J=2.1\text{Hz}$), 7.71(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.82(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 8.4Hz), 7.94(1H, d, $J=1.2\text{Hz}$), 12.78(1H, br s)

Example 80

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (147)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.483 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (147) were formed from 0.690 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (147):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 5.87(2H, s), 7.18(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.60-7.67(4H, m), 7.98(2H, d, J=0.7Hz), 8.32(1H, s), 13.15(1H, s).

Example 81

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-5-carboxy-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (148)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.270 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-5-carboxy-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (148) were formed from 0.38 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (148):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 5.80(2H, s), 7.19(2H, d, J=6.3Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.2Hz), 7.43(2H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.82(1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 8.04(1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 8.45(1H, s)

Example 82

Synthesis of 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (149)

Reduced iron (6.46 g), 48 ml of ethanol and 24 ml of acetic acid were added to 3.00 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate, and the mixture was heat-refluxed for 12 hours. The solid material was removed using a filtration aid, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. To the residue were added 100 ml of ethanol and 5.2 g of 35% hydrochloric acid, and the mixture was heat-refluxed for 5 hours. The reaction solution was neutralized with 6.3 g of sodium hydrogencarbonate, and was filtrated. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was separated with the addition of 70 ml of ethyl acetate and 70 ml of water. The organic layer was washed three times with water, and the aqueous layer was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The resulting organic layer was concentrated under reduced pressure to give 1.53 g of a powder of 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (149).

Properties of Compound (149):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.41(3H, t, J=6.9Hz), 2.67(3H, s), 4.40(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 7.55(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.96(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.5Hz), 8.27(1H, d, J=1.4Hz)

Example 83

Synthesis of 2-benzyl-5-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole (150)

A mixture of 3.60 g of ethyl 3-nitro-4-phenylacetaminobenzoate, 47 ml of ethanol, 23 ml of acetic acid and 6.4 g of reduced iron was heat-refluxed for 4 hours. The solid material was separated through filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated. To the residue were added 50 ml of ethanol and 5 g of 35% hydrochloric acid. The mixture was stirred for 40 hours while being heat-refluxed. The reaction solution was neutralized with sodium hydrogencarbonate, and was extracted with chloroform. The organic layer was concentrated under reduced pressure, and was purified through silica-gel column chromatography to give 2.30 g of 2-benzyl-5-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole (150).

Properties of Compound (150):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.39(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 4.26(2H, s), 4.37(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 7.22-7.36(5H, m), 7.50(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.94(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.6Hz), 8.23(1H, d, J=1.3Hz)

Examples 84 and 85

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole (151) and 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole (152)

5

To 1.00 g of 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole were added 15 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, 1.59 g of 2-nitrobenzyl bromide and 1.23 g of sodium hydrogencarbonate, and the mixture was heated at 60 °C for 1 hour. The reaction solution was separated with the addition of 70 ml of ethyl acetate and 70 ml of water. The organic layer was then washed three times with water, and the aqueous layer was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The resulting organic layer was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain a mixture of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole and 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole. The mixture was purified through medium-pressure silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate at a ratio of from 1:4 to 0:100) to give 0.614 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole (151) and 0.259 g of 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole (152).

15

Properties of Compound (151):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.38(3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 2.56(3H, s), 4.37(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.84(2H, s); 6.41(1H, d, J=6.8Hz), 7.44-7.53(2H, m), 7.78(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.88(1H, s), 8.02(1H, dd, J=8.3 and 1.5Hz), 8.30(1H, dd, J=7.9 and 1.5Hz)

20

Properties of Compound (152):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.42(3H, t, J=7.0Hz), 2.56(3H, s), 4.40(2H, q, J=7.0Hz), 5.80(2H, s), 6.43(1H, dd, J=7.6 and 1.0Hz), 7.14(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.45-7.53(2H, m), 7.95(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.5Hz), 8.27(1H, dd, J=8.0 and 1.7Hz), 8.48(1H, d, J=1.2Hz)

25

Examples 86 and 87

Synthesis of 2-benzyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-benzimidazole (153) and 2-benzyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole (154)

30

In the same manner as in Examples 84 and 85, 1.06 g of 2-benzyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole (153) and 0.640 g of 2-benzyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole (154) were formed from 2.37 g of 2-benzyl-5-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole and 3.94 g of 2-chlorobenzyl bromide.

35

Properties of Compound (153):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.83(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 4.23(2H, s), 4.35(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.36(2H, s), 6.23(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 6.97(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.11-7.45(7H, m), 7.85(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.91(1H, s), 8.02(1H, dd, J=1.2 and 8.6Hz).

40

Properties of Compound (154):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.41(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 4.25(2H, s), 4.41(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.33(2H, s), 6.22(1H, d, J=6.9Hz), 6.97(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.12-7.28(7H, m), 7.40(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.95(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.6Hz), 8.60(1H, d, J=1.4Hz)

Examples 88 and 89

45

Synthesis of 2-benzyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-benzimidazole (155) and 2-benzyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole (156)

In the same manner as in Examples 84 and 85, 0.49 g of 2-benzyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole and 0.52 g of 2-benzyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole (156) were formed from 2.37 g of 2-benzyl-5-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole and 4.45 g of 2,4-dichlorobenzyl bromide.

50

Properties of Compound (155):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.39(3H, t), 4.24(2H, s), 4.37(2H, q), 5.32(2H, s), 6.08(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 6.90(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.12-7.24(5H, m), 7.41(1H, s), 7.84(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.88(1H, s), 8.03(1H, d, J=8.4Hz)

55

Properties of Compound (156):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.42(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 4.25(2H, s), 4.41(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.28(2H, s), 6.07(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 6.90(1H, dd, J=1.9 and 8.4Hz), 7.08-7.28(6H, m), 7.40(1H, d, J=2.1Hz), 7.96(1H, dd, J=1.3 and 8.3Hz), 8.56(1H, d, J=0.9Hz)

5 Example 90

Synthesis of 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (157)

Five-percent palladium on carbon (0.50 g) was added to a solution of 4.00 g of ethyl 3-amino-4-nitro-benzoate in 100 ml of methanol, and the mixture was stirred in a hydrogen atmosphere at 50 °C for 16 hours. The solid material was separated through filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated to obtain ethyl 3,4-diaminobenzoate. Twenty milliliters of trifluoroacetic acid were added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 2 hours. The reaction solution was concentrated, and chloroform was added thereto. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 4.46 g of 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (157).

15 Properties of Compound (157):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.36(3H, t, J=7.0Hz), 4.36(2H, q, J=7.0Hz), 7.82(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.99(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.7Hz), 8.33(1H, s)

20 Examples 91 and 92

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (158) and 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (159)

25 In the same manner as in Examples 84 and 85, 0.69 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-trifluoromethyl benzimidazole (158) and 0.38 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (159) were formed from 2.00 g of 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole and 10.08 g of 4-bromomethylbiphenyl.

Properties of Compound (158):

30 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.39(3H, t), 4.38(2H, q), 5.64(2H, s), 7.18(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.34(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.42(2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.52-7.57(4H, m), 7.95(1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 8.09(2H, dd, J=1.4 and 8.8Hz), 8.14(1H, d, J=1.1Hz)

Properties of Compound (159):

35 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.40(3H, t), 4.40(2H, q), 5.59(2H, s), 7.16(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.34(2H, t, J=6.2Hz), 7.41(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.53(4H, m), 8.08(1H, dd, J=1.3 and 9.1Hz), 8.65(1H, s)

Production Example 38

40 Production of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-hydroxymethyl-2-methylbenzimidazole

A solution of 2.66 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole in 20 ml of tetrahydrofuran was slowly added to a solution of 1.54 g of lithium aluminum hydride in 20 ml of tetrahydrofuran at a temperature of from 20 to 25°C. Further, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Thirty milliliters of tetrahydrofuran were added thereto to dilute the reaction solution. Lithium ammonium hydride was decomposed and solidified with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium sulfate, and the tetrahydrofuran layer was separated. The solvent was distilled off, and the residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of chloroform and methanol at a ratio of 9:1) to give 1.45 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-hydroxymethyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of the compound:

50 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.53(3H, s), 4.77(2H, s), 5.39(2H, s), 6.40(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.08(1H, t, J=7.7Hz), 7.20-7.28(3H, m), 7.45(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.70(1H, d, JH=8.2Hz)

Production Example 39

55 Production of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-hydroxymethyl-2-methylbenzimidazole

In the same manner as in Production Example 38, 3.72 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-hydroxymethyl-2-methylben-

imidazole were formed from 5.30 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole and 2.17 g of lithium aluminum hydride.

Properties of the compound:

- 5 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 2.59(3H, s), 4.78(2H, s), 5.37(2H, s), 7.11(2H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 7.24(1H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 7.30-7.37(2H, m), 7.42(2H, t), 7.51-7.56(4H, m), 7.70(1H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$).

Production Example 40

- 10 Production of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-chloromethyl-2-methylbenzimidazole hydrochloride

Five milliliters of thionyl chloride were added to 3.56 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-hydroxymethyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 minutes and then at 80°C for 20 minutes. After excess thionyl chloride was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was dissolved in 10 ml of chloroform, and the solution
15 was crystallized from hexane. The crystals were separated through filtration, washed with hexane, and dried to give 4.07 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-chloromethyl-2-methylbenzimidazole hydrochloride.

Properties of the compound:

- 20 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 3.01(3H, s), 4.68(2H, s), 5.61(2H, s), 6.71(1H, d, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.24-7.29(1H, m), 7.38(1H, t, $J=7.7\text{Hz}$), 7.44(1H, s), 7.52(2H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$), 7.92(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$).

Production Example 41

- 25 Production of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-chloromethyl-2-methylbenzimidazole

Two milliliters of thionyl chloride were added to a solution of 3.62 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-hydroxymethyl-2-methylbenzimidazole in 30 ml of chloroform at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 1 hour. A sodium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution was added thereto to stop the reaction. The chloroform layer was washed with water, and was dried. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was crystallized from
30 ethyl acetate. The crystals were separated through filtration, washed with ethyl acetate, and then dried to give 2.04 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-chloromethyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of the compound:

- 35 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 2.67(3H, s), 4.71(2H, s), 5.40(2H, s), 7.12(2H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$), 7.31-7.38(3H, m), 7.43(2H, t), 7.52-7.58(4H, m), 7.75(1H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$).

Production example 42

- 40 Production of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-formyl-2-methylbenzimidazole

Manganese dioxide (3.46 g) was added to a solution of 3.46 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-hydroxymethyl-2-methylbenzimidazole in 100 ml of toluene, and toluene was heat-refluxed for 3.5 hours while the mixture was dehydrated using a molecular sieve 4A. The solid material was separated through filtration, and was washed with chloroform. The filtrate
45 was concentrated to give 3.35 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-formyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

- Properties of the compound:

50 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 2.61(3H, s), 5.48(2H, s), 6.42(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.11(1H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.27(1H, t), 7.48(1H, d, $J=8.0\text{Hz}$), 7.76(1H, s), 7.81(1H, dd, $J=1.4$ and 8.3Hz), 7.86(1H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 10.02(1H, s). IR(KBr) : 1676 cm^{-1} .
mp : 124.1-125.2°C

Production Example 43

- 55 Production of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acetonitrile

Potassium cyanate (0.450 g) and 0.450 g of 18-crown-6 were added to a solution of 1.20 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-chloromethyl-2-methylbenzimidazole in 10 ml of dimethylsulfoxide, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was extracted with the addition of chloroform, water and a small amount of aqueous ammonia. The organic layer was concentrated, and the residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography

EP 0 882 718 A1

(eluent: a mixture of chloroform and methanol at a ratio of 20:1) to give 0.500 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acetonitrile.

Properties of the compound:

- 5 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 2.52(3H, s), 3.80(2H, s), 5.37(2H, s), 6.40(1H, d, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.09(1H, t), 7.10-7.19(2H, m), 7.23(1H, t), 7.44(1H, d, $J=7.9\text{Hz}$), 7.70(1H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$).

Production Example 44

- 10 Production of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole

To 0.490 g of 4-amino-3-(2-chlorobenzyl)aminobenzoic acid formed by the method described in U. S. Patent No. 5,294,631 were added 0.5 ml of 98% formic acid, and the mixture was refluxed for 1 hour. The solid material precipitated was collected, washed with water, and dried to give 0.468 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole.

- 15 Properties of the compound:

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{DMSO-d}_6, \delta)$: 5.69(2H, s), 7.02(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 7.7Hz), 7.30(1H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.36(1H, dt, $J=1.7$ and 7.5Hz), 7.53(1H, dd, $J=1.3$ and 7.9Hz), 7.75(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.83(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 8.4Hz), 8.09(1H, s), 8.54(1H, s), 12.8(1H, br s)

20

Example 93

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (92)

- 25 One-hundred grams of 2-chlorobenzyl bromide were added to a solution of 86.0 g of ethyl 4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzoate and 37.3 g of potassium carbonate in 750 ml of ethanol, and the mixture was stirred at 60°C for 14 hours. The solid material was separated through filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated to 500 ml under reduced pressure. Then, 38.7 g of 35 % hydrochloric acid were added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at 60°C for 2 hours. The solid material was separated through filtration, and the residue was neutralized with sodium hydrogencarbonate. Ethanol was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was extracted three times with ethyl acetate and with water. The organic layer was washed with water, and was dried. The solvent was distilled off until the amount of the organic layer reached 300 ml. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were recrystallized from ethanol to obtain 54.3 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole(92). The filtrate was also all collected, and was concentrated. The resulting crystals were recrystallized from ethanol to give 18.1 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (92).

35

Properties of Compound (92):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.39(3H, t, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 2.57(3H, s), 4.37(2H, q, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 5.46(2H, s), 6.41(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.10(1H, t, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.25(1H, t), 7.47(1H, d, $J=8.0\text{Hz}$), 7.75(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.94(1H, s), 8.00(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 8.4Hz)
mp : $126.0-127.0^\circ\text{C}$.

40

Example 94

- 45 Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (121)

To 60.0 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole were added 240 g of a 10% sodium hydroxide aqueous solution and 200 ml of ethanol, and the mixture was heat-refluxed for 2 hours. The reaction solution was cooled, and was then adjusted to a pH of 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 54.7 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (121).

50

Properties of Compound (121):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{DMSO-d}_6, \delta)$: 2.51(3H, s), 5.62(2H, s), 6.54(1H, d, $J=7.7\text{Hz}$), 7.23(1H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.33(1H, t, $J=7.7\text{Hz}$), 7.55(1H, d, $J=8.0\text{Hz}$), 7.63(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.79(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.95(1H, s).

55

mp : $300.8-303.0^\circ\text{C}$.

Example 95

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acetic acid (160)

To 0.500 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acetonitrile was added 10% hydrochloric acid, and the mixture was heat-refluxed for 15 hours. The reaction mixture was neutralized with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate, and was extracted with chloroform. The organic layer was concentrated, and was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of chloroform and methanol at a ratio of 9:1 to 4:1) to give 0.170 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acetic acid (160).

Properties of Compound (160):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.42(3H, s), 3.56(2H, s), 5.15(2H, s), 6.33(1H, d), 6.96(1H, t), 7.03(1H, s), 7.13(2H, m), 7.35(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.62(1H, d), 8.90(1H, br s)

Example 96

Synthesis of methyl 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acrylate

Methyl trifluorophosphoranilacetate (4.49 g) was added to a solution of 2.73 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-formyl-2-methylbenzimidazole in 50 ml of 1,4-dioxane, and the mixture was stirred for 6 hours while being heat-refluxed. After the reaction solution was cooled, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified through silica-gel chromatography (eluent: a mixture of chloroform and methanol at a ratio of 9:1) to obtain 7.43 g of crude methyl 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acrylate (161). This crude product was used in the subsequent reaction at once.

Example 97

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acrylic acid

The above-mentioned crude methyl 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acrylate (3.29 g) was dissolved in 20 ml of ethanol, and 10.1 g of a 5% sodium hydroxide aqueous solution were added thereto. The mixture was refluxed for 2 hours. The reaction solution was neutralized with a hydrochloric acid aqueous solution. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified through silica-gel chromatography (eluent: a mixture of chloroform and methanol at a ratio of from 9:1 to 6:1) to give 1.10 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acrylic acid.

Properties of Compound (162):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.56(3H, s), 5.65(2H, s), 6.54(1H, d, J=15.9Hz), 6.62(1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.25(1H, t), 7.35(1H, t), 7.56(1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.60-7.70(3H, m), 7.99(1H, s), 12.35(1H, br s)

Example 98

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (163)

N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole (45.8 g) was added at a time to a solution of 45.0 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole in 950 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Subsequently, 47.1 g of benzenesulfonamide and 35.0 g of diazabicycloundecene were added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 70 hours. The reaction solution was cooled, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. To the residue were added 300 ml of water and 200 ml of methanol. Further, 60.7 g of 35% hydrochloric acid were added thereto to adjust the solution to a pH of 5.5. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, washed with 200 ml of a mixed solution of methanol and water (at a ratio of 1:1), and dried to obtain 38.4 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole. Water was added to the filtrate. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, washed with water, and dried. The amount of the crystals was 13.3 g. The crystals were combined, and were dissolved by being heated with the addition of 3300 ml of acetone and 900 ml of water. From this solution, 200 ml of the solvent were distilled off while being heated, and the residue was cooled. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 33.8 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (163).

Properties of Compound (163):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.53(3H, s), 5.46(2H, s), 6.34(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.11(1H, m), 7.27(1H, m), 7.48(1H, m), 7.52(2H, m), 7.60(1H, m), 7.69(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.90(1H, m), 8.09(2H, m), 8.11(1H, s), 11.84(1H, br s).

IR(KBr) : 1684, 1448cm⁻¹.

Mass(FAB) : m/e 440(M+1).

mp : 273.5-274.3°C.

Example 99

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole (164)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.473 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole (164) were formed from 0.600 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-carboxybenzimidazole, 0.546 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.529 g of benzenesulfonamide and 0.512 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (164):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.29(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.88(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 5.59(2H, s), 7.16(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.33-7.37(1H, m), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.59-7.71(8H, m), 7.74(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.4Hz), 7.98-8.02(2H, m), 8.21(1H, s), 12.43(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1684cm⁻¹.

mp : 149.5-157.0°C

Example 100

Synthesis of 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (165)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.480 g of 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (165) were formed from 0.450 g of 5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.485 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.470 g of benzenesulfonamide and 0.456 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (165):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.53(3H, s), 5.61(2H, s), 6.57(1H, d, J=7.4Hz), 7.22(1H, t), 7.33(1H, t), 7.50(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.54(1H, dd, J=7.9 and 0.9Hz), 7.63(2H, t), 7.71(2H, m), 8.00(2H, d, J=7.3Hz), 8.21(1H, d, J=1.4Hz), 12.50(1H, br s).

IR(KBr) : 1685cm⁻¹.

mp : 137.0-138.5°C.

Example 101

Synthesis of 5-(4-chlorobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (166)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.520 g of 5-(4-chlorobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (166) were formed from 0.450 g of 5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.485 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.573 g of 4-chlorobenzenesulfonamide and 0.456 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (166):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.49(3H, s), 5.58(2H, s), 6.51(1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.21(1H, t), 7.32(1H, t), 7.45(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.53(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.69(3H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.99(2H, d, J=8.6Hz), 8.18(1H, s), 12.58(1H, br s).

IR(KBr) : 1619cm⁻¹.

mp : 261.5-263.0°C

Example 102

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-5-(2-naphthalenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (167)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.352 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-5-(2-naphthalenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (167) were formed from 0.450 g of 5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.485 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.620 g of 2-naphthalenesulfonamide and 0.456 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (167):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.48(3H, s), 5.56(2H, s), 6.49(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.20(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.31(1H, t, J=7.7Hz), 7.44(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.52(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.66-7.75(3H, m), 7.97(1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 8.04(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 8.14(1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 8.19(1H, s), 8.23(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 8.68(1H, s), 12.55(1H, br s).

IR(KBr) : 1685cm⁻¹.

mp : 236.5-238.0°C

Example 103

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-methanesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (168)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.564 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-methanesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (168) were formed from 0.500 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.539 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.316 g of methanesulfonamide and 0.506 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (168):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.49(3H, s), 3.35(3H, s), 5.60(2H, s), 6.43(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.23(1H, t), 7.34(1H, t, J=7.7Hz), 7.57(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.68(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.81(1H, dd, J=1.7 and 8.5Hz), 8.13(1H, d, J=1.5Hz), 11.94(1H, br s).

IR(KBr) : 1670cm⁻¹.

mp : 302.0-303.0°C

Example 104

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (169)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.595 g of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (169) were formed from 0.500 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.539 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.456 g of 1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl and 0.506 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (169):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.84(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.38(2H, m), 1.65(2H, m), 2.49(3H, s), 3.49(2H, m), 5.60(2H, s), 6.44(1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.23(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.35(1H, t), 7.56(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.68(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.80(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.4Hz), 8.11(1H, d, J=1.4Hz), 11.86(1H, br s).

IR(KBr) : 1684cm⁻¹.

mp : 214.0-217.0°C

Example 105

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(1-octanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (170)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.309 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(1-octanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (170) were formed from 0.400 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.431 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 406 g of 1-octanesulfonylcarbamoyl and 0.404 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (170):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.82(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.13-1.28(8H, m), 1.32-1.41(2H, m), 1.62-1.71(2H, m), 2.50(3H, s), 3.50(2H, t, J=8.5Hz), 5.61(2H, s), 6.45(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.24(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.58(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.69(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.81(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 8.12(1H, s), 11.86(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1674cm⁻¹.

mp : 180.0-183.0°C

Example 106

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(2-propanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (171)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.417 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(2-propanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (171) were formed from 0.400 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.431 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.328 g of 2-propanesulfonylcarbamoyl and 0.404 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (171):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.30(6H, d, J=6.9Hz), 2.50(3H, s), 3.81-3.87(1H, m), 5.62(2H, s), 6.46(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.25(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.62(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.69(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.81(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 8.12(1H, s), 11.83(1H, s).
IR(KBr) : 1670cm⁻¹.
mp : 215.0-217.5°C.

Example 107

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-(1-butanefonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (172)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.349 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-(1-butanefonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (172) were formed from 0.300 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.323 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.273 g of 1-butanefonylcarbamoyl and 0.303 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (172)

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.85(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.36-1.43(2H, m), 1.63-1.72(2H, m), 2.57(3H, s), 3.52(2H, t, J=7.7Hz), 5.60(2H, s), 7.21(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.60-7.68(5H, m), 7.81(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.4Hz), 8.26(1H, d, J=1.4Hz), 11.97(1H, s).
IR(KBr) : 1676cm⁻¹.
mp : 219.5-222.5°C

Example 108

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (173)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.459 g of 6-(1-butanefonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (173) were formed from 0.400 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.431 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.364 g of 1-butanefonylcarbamoyl and 0.404 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (173):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.85(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.36-1.42(2H, m), 1.63-1.70(2H, m), 2.50(3H, s), 3.51(2H, t, J=7.7Hz), 5.59(2H, s), 6.45(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.33(1H, dd, J=2.1 and 8.4Hz), 7.69(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.76(1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.81(1H, dd, J=1.7 and 8.5Hz), 8.11(1H, d, J=1.3Hz), 11.90(1H, s).
IR(KBr) : 1670cm⁻¹.
mp : 222.0-223.0°C

Example 109

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-(1-butanefonylcarbamoyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole (174)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.300 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-(1-butanefonylcarbamoyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole (174) were formed from 0.300 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.340 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.300 g of butanefonylcarbamoyl and 0.320 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (174):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.85(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.30(3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.35-1.44(2H, m), 1.64-1.72(2H, m), 2.90(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 3.52(2H, t, J=7.7Hz), 5.61(2H, s), 7.19(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.61-7.67(4H, m), 7.71(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.82(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.5Hz), 8.27(1H, d, J=1.3Hz), 12.01(1H, s). IR(Nujol) : 1687, 1682cm⁻¹.
mp : 171.8-173.0°C

Example 110

Synthesis of 6-benzenefonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (175)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.508 g of 6-benzenefonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (175) were formed from 0.508 g of 6-benzenefonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole, 0.508 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.508 g of 6-benzenefonylcarbamoyl and 0.508 g of diazabicycloundecene.

omethylbenzimidazole (175) were formed from 0.483 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole, 0.396 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.383 g of benzenesulfonamide and 0.371 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (175):

- 5 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 5.81(2H, s), 7.15(2H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 7.35(1H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.44(2H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.60-7.66(6H, m), 7.70(1H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.91(1H, dd, $J=8.7$ and 1.4Hz), 7.96-8.01(3H, m), 8.42(1H, s), 12.65(1H, s).
IR(KBr) : 1685cm^{-1} .
mp : $164.5-167.0^\circ\text{C}$

10 Example 111

Synthesis of 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (176)

- 15 In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.286 g of 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole (176) were formed from 0.270 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-5-carboxy-2-trifluoromethylbenzimidazole, 0.221 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.214 g of benzenesulfonamide and 0.207 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (176):

- 20 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 5.79(2H, s), 7.15(2H, d, $J=8.1\text{Hz}$), 7.35(1H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.43(2H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.59-7.67(6H, m), 7.72(1H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.83(1H, d, $J=8.8\text{Hz}$), 7.94(1H, d, $J=8.9\text{Hz}$), 8.02(2H, d, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 8.49(1H, s), 12.69(1H, s).
IR(KBr) : 1699cm^{-1}
mp : $248.5-251.0^\circ\text{C}$

25 Example 112

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-cyclopropyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)benzimidazole (177)

- 30 In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.730 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-cyclopropyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)benzimidazole (177) were formed from 0.930 g of 6-carboxy-2-cyclopropyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 0.972 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.942 g of benzenesulfonamide and 0.906 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (177):

- 35 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 1.04 (4H, m), 2.15 (1H, m), 5.70 (2H, s), 6.85 (1H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.12 (1H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.22-7.38 (2H, m), 7.54-7.70 (5H, m), 7.99 (2H, d, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 8.11 (1H, s) white powder.

Example 113

Synthesis of N-benzenesulfonyl-3-[1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazol-6-yl]acrylamide (178)

- 40 In the same manner as in Example 98, 1.05 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-3-[1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazol-6-yl]acrylamide (178) were formed from 1.10 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acrylic acid, 1.09 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 1.06 g of benzenesulfonamide and 1.02 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (178):

- 45 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.47(3H, s), 5.55(2H, s), 6.46-6.55(2H, m), 7.22(1H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.32(1H, t, $J=7.7\text{Hz}$), 7.40(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.52-7.66(6H, m), 7.69(1H, t), 7.93(2H, d, $J=7.9\text{Hz}$), 12.17(1H, br s).
IR(KBr) : 1687cm^{-1} .
Mass(FAB) : m/e 466(M+1).
50 mp : $243.1-244.3^\circ\text{C}$

Example 114

Synthesis of N-benzenesulfonyl-2-[1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazol-6-yl]acetamide (179)

- 55 In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.09 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-2-[1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazol-6-yl]acetamide (179) were formed from 0.170 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acetic acid, 0.175 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.170 g of benzenesulfonamide and 0.164 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (179):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.44(3H, s), 3.57(2H, s), 5.46(2H, s), 6.41(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 6.96(1H, d, J=7.0Hz), 7.16(1H, s), 7.20(1H, t), 7.32(1H, t), 7.47(1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.52-7.59(3H, m), 7.67(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.84(2H, d, J=7.4Hz), 12.28(1H, br s).
IR(KBr) 1719cm⁻¹.
mp : 236.2-237.8°C

Example 115

Synthesis of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (180)

Dichloromethane (150 ml) and some drops of N,N-dimethylformamide were added to 9.00 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, and the mixture was cooled with ice. Oxalyl chloride (6.84 g) were added dropwise thereto, and the mixed solution was stirred for some minutes. Further, this solution was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours, and was then concentrated to a volume of approximately 1/3 of the original volume under reduced pressure. The solid material precipitated was collected, and was added to a solution of 2.69 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 7.34 g of triethylamine in 200 ml of dichloromethane in some divided portions. After the mixture was stirred for 15 hours, the reaction solution was washed three times with water and then with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate. The organic layer was concentrated under reduced pressure, and was crystallized from ethyl acetate. The crystals were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 4.35 g of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (180).

Properties of Compound (180):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.56(3H, s), 4.76(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.40(2H, s), 6.33(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.07(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 2.0Hz), 7.22(1H, dd, J=7.4 and 4.9Hz), 7.33(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.48(1H, d, J=2.1Hz), 7.62-7.79(4H, m), 7.86(1H, d, J=1.1Hz)8.57, (1H, d, J=4.9Hz).
IR(KBr) : 1645cm⁻¹
mp : 204.5-206.5°C

Example 116

Synthesis of 1-methyl-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (181)

In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.213 g of 1-methyl-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (181) were formed from 0.402 g of 6-carboxy-1-methyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 0.468 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.199 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.559 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (181):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.08(3H, t, J=7.4Hz) 1.92(2H, m) 2.88(2H, m) 3.76(3H, s) 4.80(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 7.22(1H, dd, J=2.5 and 7.5Hz), 7.35(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.67-7.77(4H, m), 7.80(1H, s), 8.58(1H, dd, J=4.9 and 0.9Hz).
IR(KBr) : 1647cm⁻¹.
mp : 140.5-141.5°C

Example 117

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (182)

In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.164 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (182) were formed from 0.300 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.253 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.108 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.302 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (182):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.56(3H, s), 4.76(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.45(2H, s), 6.40(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.08(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.20-7.27(2H, m), 7.33(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.45(1H, dd, J=0.9 and 8.1Hz), 7.64(1H, s), 7.65-7.69(1H, m), 7.72(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 7.77(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.88(1H, d, J=1.2Hz), 8.56(1H, d, J=4.7Hz).
IR(KBr) : 1646cm⁻¹.
mp : 156.5-157.5°C

Example 118

Synthesis of 2-n-propyl-1-i-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (183)

- 5 In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.020 g of 2-n-propyl-1-i-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (183) were formed from 0.095 g of 6-carboxy-2-n-propyl-1-i-propylbenzimidazole, 0.100 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.039 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.097 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (183):

- 10 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.08(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.69(6H, d, J=7.1Hz), 1.87-1.93(2H, m), 2.90(2H, t, J=7.8Hz), 4.69-4.75(1H, m), 4.80(2H, d, J=4.9Hz), 7.23(1H, dd, J=7.3 and 2.1Hz), 7.37(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.62-7.77(4H, m), 8.21(1H, s), 8.58(1H, d, J=4.5Hz).
 IR(KBr) : 1631cm^{-1} .
 mp : 155.0-156.9°C

Example 119

Synthesis of 1-n-butyl-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (184)

- 20 In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.283 g of 1-n-butyl-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (184) were formed from 0.500 g of 1-n-butyl-6-carboxy-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 0.487 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.208 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.582 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (184):

- 25 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 0.97(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.08(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.37-1.46(2H, m), 1.76-1.83(2H, m), 1.92-2.00(2H, m), 2.86(2H, t, J=7.8Hz), 4.15(2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 4.81(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 7.23(1H, dd, J=7.3 and 2.4Hz), 7.36(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.63-7.76(4H, m), 8.02(1H, s), 8.58(1H, d, J=4.7Hz).
 IR(KBr) : 1631cm^{-1} .
 mp : 105.8-107.2°C

Example 120

Synthesis of 1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-[2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (185)

- 35 In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.311 g of 1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-[2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (185) were formed from 0.580 g of 6-carboxy-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 0.407 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.173 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.486 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (185):

- 40 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.03(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.85-1.93(2H, m), 2.80(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.77(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.36(2H, s), 6.86(1H, d, J=7.4Hz), 7.02(1H, s), 7.20-7.28(3H, m), 7.33(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.63-7.73(3H, m), 7.79(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.91(1H, d, J=1.3Hz), 8.57(1H, d, J=4.7Hz).
 IR(KBr) : 1643cm^{-1} .
 mp : 157.7-158.8°C

Example 121

Synthesis of 1-benzyl-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (186)

- 50 In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.350 g of 1-benzyl-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (186) were formed from 0.850 g of 1-benzyl-6-carboxy-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 0.949 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.404 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 1.132 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (186):

- 55 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.01(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.83-1.92(2H, m), 2.82(2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 4.77(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.40(2H, s), 7.03(2H, d, J=6.5Hz), 7.21(1H, dd, J=7.1 and 2.1Hz), 7.18-7.34(4H, m), 7.60(1H, s), 7.65-7.72(2H, m), 7.78(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.94(1H, d, J=1.2Hz), 8.56(1H, d, J=4.2Hz).
 IR(KBr) : 1642cm^{-1}

mp : 121.9-123.1°C

Example 122

5 Synthesis of 1-(4-chlorobenzyl)-2-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (187)

In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.089 g of 1-(4-chlorobenzyl)-2-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (187) were formed from 0.547 g of 6-carboxy-1-(4-chlorobenzyl)-2-propylbenzimidazole, 0.384 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.163 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.458 g of triethylamine.

10 Properties of Compound (187):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.02(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.84-1.92(2H, m), 2.77-2.83(2H, m), 4.76(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.36(2H, s), 6.96(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.22(1H, dd, J=6.4 and 0.4Hz), 7.27(2H, dd, J=8.3 and 1.3Hz), 7.33(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.62-7.73(3H, m), 7.78(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.91(1H, d, J=0.9Hz), 8.56(1H, dd, J=4.9 and 0.8Hz).

15 IR(KBr) : 1643cm⁻¹.

mp : 158.8-161.0°C

Example 123

20 Synthesis of 2-benzyl-1-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (188)

In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.171 g of 2-benzyl-1-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (188) were formed from 0.310 g of 2-benzyl-6-carboxy-1-methylbenzimidazole, 0.295 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.108 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.303 g of triethylamine.

25 Properties of Compound (188):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 3.66(3H, s), 4.35(2H, s), 4.80(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 7.21-7.37(7H, m), 7.66(1H, br t), 7.67-7.73(2H, m), 7.78(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.98(1H, s), 8.58(1H, d, J=4.9Hz)

IR(KBr) : 1632cm⁻¹.

30 mp : 168.5-169.5°C.

Example 124

35 Synthesis of 1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (189)

In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.040 g of 1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (189) were formed from 0.600 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.472 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.201 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.188 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (189):

40 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.62(3H, s), 4.76(2H, d, J=4.7Hz), 5.62(2H, s), 7.23(1H, dd, J=7.1 and 2.2Hz), 7.28(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.32(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.39(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.54(1H, s), 7.66-7.71(3H, m), 7.78(1H, s), 8.60(1H, d, J=4.6Hz).

IR(KBr) : 1635cm⁻¹.

45 mp : 225.7-226.9°C.

Example 125

50 Synthesis of 2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]-1-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (190)

In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.713 g of 2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]-1-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (190) were formed from 0.970 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 0.736 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.261 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.726 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (190):

55 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.54(3H, s), 4.76(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.59(2H, s), 6.45(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.22(1H, t, J=5.8Hz), 7.34(2H, t, J=8.8Hz), 7.40(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.62(1H, br s), 7.68(1H, dt, J=1.7 and 7.7Hz), 7.72-7.82(3H, m), 7.87(1H, s), 8.56(1H, d, J=4.9Hz).

IR(KBr) : 1648cm⁻¹

mp : 172-174°C

Example 126

Synthesis of 2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (191)

In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.194 g of 2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (191) were formed from 0.970 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 0.736 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.261 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.726 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (191):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.59(3H, s), 4.77(2H, d, J=4.7Hz), 5.45(2H, s), 7.15(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.23(1H, m), 7.33(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.58(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.63(1H, br s), 7.67-7.74(2H, m), 7.77(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.93(1H, s), 8.57(1H, d, J=4.9Hz).

IR(KBr) : 1637cm⁻¹

mp : 188.5-190.0°C

Example 127

Synthesis of 1-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (192)

In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.264 g of 1-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (192) were formed from 0.500 g of 6-carboxy-1-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.393 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.167 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.469 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (192):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.58(3H, s), 4.77(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.33(2H, s), 6.85(1H, dd, J=8.3 and 2.2Hz), 7.14(1H, d, J=2.1Hz), 7.22(1H, dd, J=7.3 and 5.6Hz), 7.33(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.38(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.65-7.77(4H, m), 7.92(1H, d, J=1.2Hz), 8.57(1H, d, J=4.8Hz).

IR(KBr) : 1638cm⁻¹.

mp : 219.0-220.7°C

Example 128

Synthesis of 2-methyl-1-(2-methylbenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (193)

In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.100 g of 2-methyl-1-(2-methylbenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (193) were formed from 0.453 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-methylbenzyl)benzimidazole, 0.411 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.175 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.490 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (193):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.42(3H, s), 2.54(3H, s), 4.75(2H, d, J=4.9Hz), 5.32(2H, s), 6.33(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.01(1H, t, J=7.8Hz), 7.17-7.24(3H, m), 7.33(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.60(1H, s), 7.63-7.73(2H, m), 7.76(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.84(1H, d, J=1.4Hz), 8.56(1H, d, J=4.9Hz).

IR(KBr) : 1635cm⁻¹.

mp : 154.0-157.0°C

Example 129

Synthesis of 1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (194)

In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.918 g of 1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (194) were formed from 0.997 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.858 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.309 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 1.02 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (194):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.60(3H, s), 3.89(3H, s), 4.77(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.36(2H, s), 6.60(1H, d, J=7.4Hz), 6.79(1H, dt,

J=0.8 and 7.4Hz), 6.91(1H, d, J=7.4Hz), 7.20-7.28(2H, m), 7.34(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.56(1H, br t), 7.66-7.75(3H, m), 7.95(1H, m), 8.57(1H, d, J=4.9Hz).

IR(KBr) : 1652cm⁻¹.

mp : 136-138.5°C

5

Example 130

Synthesis of 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (195)

10 In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.697 g of 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (195) were formed from 0.985 g of 6-carboxy-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.858 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.309 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 1.02 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (195):

15 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.59(3H, s), 3.76(3H, s), 4.78(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.32(2H, s), 6.83(2H, m), 7.00(2H, m), 7.22(1H, dd, J=5.1 and 6.8Hz), 7.34(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.60(1H, br t), 7.67-7.76(3H, m), 7.97(1H, d, J=1.2Hz), 8.57(1H, d, J=4.9Hz).

IR(KBr) : 1652cm⁻¹.

mp : 191.5-192.2°C

20

Example 131

Synthesis of 1-[2-(benzenesulfonylmethyl)benzyl]-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (196)

25 In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.64 g of 1-[2-(benzenesulfonylmethyl)benzyl]-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (196) were formed from 0.74 g of 1-[2-(benzenesulfonylmethyl)benzyl]-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.45 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.19 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.53 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (196):

30 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.57(3H, s), 4.50(2H, s), 4.74(2H, d, J=4.9Hz), 5.59(2H, s), 6.63(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 6.87(1H, d, J=7.4 and 1.5Hz), 7.09-7.19(3H, m), 7.31(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.53-7.61(3H, m), 7.64(1H, dt, J=7.6 and 1.6Hz), 7.68-7.79(5H, m), 7.84(1H, s), 8.52(1H, d, J=4.8Hz).

IR(neat) 1646cm⁻¹

liquid.

35

Example 132

Synthesis of 1-(2-cyanobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (197)

40 In the same manner as in Example 115, 1.03 g of 1-(2-cyanobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (197) were formed from 1.14 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-cyanobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.998 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.425 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 1.19 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (197):

45 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.58(3H, s), 4.76(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.59(2H, s), 6.64(1H, d, J=7.4Hz), 7.21(1H, dt, J=5.6 and 1.8Hz), 7.33(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.39-7.47(2H, m), 7.65-7.79(5H, m), 7.89(1H, s), 8.56(1H, dd, J=4.9 and 0.9Hz).

IR(KBr) : 2223, 1642cm⁻¹

mp : 150.5-151.4°C

50

Example 133

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (198)

55 In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.672 g of 1-(biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (198) were formed from 1.07 g of 1-(biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.796 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.339 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.950 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (198):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.38(3H, s), 4.78(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.27(2H, s), 6.64(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.17-7.24(2H, m), 7.29-7.43(6H, m), 7.48(2H, t, J=5.5Hz), 7.49(1H, s), 7.57-7.73(3H, m), 7.80(1H, d, J=1.0Hz), 8.58(1H, d, J=4.9Hz).
 IR(KBr) : 1630, 1619cm⁻¹
 mp : 179.8-180.8°C

5

Example 134

Synthesis of 1-benzyl-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (199)

10 In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.66 g of 1-benzyl-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (199) were formed from 0.59 g of 1-benzyl-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.56 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.24 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.67 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (199):

15 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.58(3H, s), 4.76(2H, d, J=4.9Hz), 5.36(2H, s), 7.02-7.06(2H, m), 7.21(1H, dd, J=6.9 and 5.0Hz), 7.27-7.35(4H, m), 7.65-7.75(4H, m), 7.96(1H, d, J=0.8Hz), 8.56(1H, d, J=4.8Hz).
 IR(KBr) : 1640cm⁻¹.
 mp : 124.0-124.9°C

20 Example 135

Synthesis of 1-(4-tert-butylbenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (200)

25 In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.477 g of 1-(4-tert-butylbenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (200) were formed from 0.544 g of 1-(4-tert-butylbenzyl)-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.428 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.183 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.511 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (200):

30 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.27(9H, s), 2.60(3H, s), 4.77(2H, d, J=4.9Hz), 5.34(2H, s), 6.98(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.21(1H, dd, J=7.3 and 5.1Hz), 7.29-7.35(3H, m), 7.62(1H, br s), 7.65-7.75(3H, m), 7.96(1H, d, J=1.1Hz), 8.57(1H, d, J=4.7Hz).
 IR(KBr) : 1646cm⁻¹.
 mp : 140.4-142.8°C

35 Example 136

Synthesis of 2-methyl-1-(2-naphthylmethyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (201)

40 In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.47 g of 2-methyl-1-(2-naphthylmethyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (201) were formed from 0.80 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-naphthylmethyl)benzimidazole, 0.64 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.27 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.77 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (201):

45 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.60(3H, s), 4.75(2H, d, J=4.9Hz), 5.52(2H, s), 7.17-7.23(2H, m), 7.31(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.38(1H, s), 7.43-7.48(2H, m), 7.60-7.82(7H, m), 8.00(1H, d, J=1.0Hz), 8.53(1H, d, J=4.7Hz).
 IR(KBr) : 1640cm⁻¹.
 mp : 143.0-144.5°C.

Example 137

50 Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (202)

In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.410 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (202) were formed from 0.500 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.356 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.151 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.424 g of triethylamine.

55 Properties of Compound (202):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.45(3H, t, J=7.7Hz), 2.90(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 4.77(2H, d, J=4.7Hz), 5.43(2H, s), 7.10(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.20(1H, dt, J=4.9 and 7.7Hz), 7.33(2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.42(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.49-7.55(4H, m), 7.61(1H, br

t), 7.67(1H, dt, J=7.8 and 1.8Hz), 7.72(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.81(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.99(1H, s), 8.56(1H, d, J=4.9Hz).
 IR(KBr) : 1640cm⁻¹.
 mp : 123.0-124.0°C

5 Example 138

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-[2-(pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (203)

In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.110 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-[2-(pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (203) were formed from 0.461 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 0.728 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.174 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.486 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (203):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 4.78(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.51(2H, s), 6.92(1H, d, J=6.5Hz), 7.17-7.31(3H, m), 7.34(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.45(1H, dd, J=1.1 and 8.0Hz), 7.69(1H, dt, J=1.8 and 7.7Hz), 7.67-7.73(1H, br s), 7.76(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 7.87(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.05(2H, s), 8.57(1H, d, J=4.9Hz).
 IR(KBr) : 1646cm⁻¹.
 mp : 144.0-145.0°C.

20 Example 139

Synthesis of 2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (204)

In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.241 g of 2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (204) were formed from 0.367 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole, 0.299 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.217 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.360 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (204):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.56(3H, s), 4.75(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.83(2H, s), 6.41(1H, d, J=7.8 and 1.2Hz), 7.22(1H, dt, J=5.0 and 1.7Hz), 7.32(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.43-7.52(2H, m), 7.64(1H, s), 7.68(1H, dt, J=7.6 and 1.7Hz), 7.75(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.5Hz), 7.80(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.82(1H, d, J=1.3Hz), 8.28(1H, dd, J=8.0 and 1.7Hz), 8.56(1H, d, J=4.9Hz).
 IR(KBr) : 1645cm⁻¹.
 mp : 194.8-196.7°C

35 Example 140

Synthesis of 2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (205)

In the same manner as in Example 115, 0.079 g of 2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (205) were formed from 0.096 g of 5-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole, 0.078 g of oxalyl chloride, 0.048 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.093 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (205):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.57(3H, s), 4.80(2H, d, J=4.7Hz), 5.80(2H, s), 6.43(1H, d, J=7.4 and 0.8Hz), 7.17(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.22(1H, dt, J=5.5 and 1.8Hz), 7.35(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.44-7.52(2H, m), 7.67(1H, s), 7.69(1H, dt, J=7.8 and 1.9Hz), 7.82(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.5Hz), 8.27(1H, dd, J=8.0 and 1.6Hz), 8.28(1H, d, J=1.4Hz), 8.56(1H, d, J=4.9Hz).
 IR(KBr) : 1645cm⁻¹.
 mp : ~96°C(decomp.)

50 Example 141

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(2-naphthalenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole sodium salt (206)

N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole (0.541 g) was added at a time to a solution of 0.500 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole in 20 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Subsequently, a solution of 0.689 g of 2-naphthalenesulfonamide and 0.506 g of diazabicycloundecene in 5 ml of N,N-

dimethylformamide were added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 48 hours. The reaction solution was cooled, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Water and chloroform were added to the residue, and 10% hydrochloric acid was added thereto until the aqueous layer was acidified. The mixture was extracted twice with chloroform. A saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the resulting organic layer, and the mixed solution was stirred. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dissolved in a small amount of methanol. Further, ethyl acetate was added thereto for crystallization. The crystals were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.508 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(2-naphthalenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole sodium salt (206).

Properties of Compound (206):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.46(3H, s), 5.51(2H, s), 6.38(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.17(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.30(1H, t), 7.45(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.51-7.57(3H, m), 7.77-7.93(5H, m), 7.99(1H, m), 8.35(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1594cm⁻¹.

Mass(FAB) : m/e 512(M+1).

mp : 352.0-354.5°C

Example 142

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(1-naphthalenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole sodium salt (207)

In the same manner as in Example 141, 0.390 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(1-naphthalenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole sodium salt (207) were formed from 0.600 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.647 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.829 g of 1-naphthalenesulfonamide and 0.608 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (207):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.46(3H, s), 5.49(2H, s), 6.39(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.16(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.31(1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.36(1H, t), 7.40-7.45(2H, m), 7.50(1H, t, J=7.7Hz), 7.54(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.75-7.81(2H, m), 7.87(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.93(1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 8.09(1H, d, J=7.3Hz), 8.86(1H, d, J=8.5Hz).

IR(KBr) : 1633cm⁻¹.

Mass(FAB) : m/e 512(M+1).

mp : ~265°C(decomp.)

Example 143

Synthesis of 6-(4-chlorobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole sodium salt (208)

In the same manner as in Example 141, 0.270 g of 6-(4-chlorobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole sodium salt (208) were formed from 0.400 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.432 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.510 g of 4-chlorobenzenesulfonamide and 0.404 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (208):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.46(3H, s), 5.52(2H, s), 6.38(1H, d, J=7.4Hz), 7.19(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.31(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.39(2H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.45(1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.54(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.76-7.82(4H, m).

IR(KBr) : 1592cm⁻¹.

Mass(FAB) : m/e 496(M+1).

mp : 360-362°C(decomp.)

Example 144

Synthesis of 6-(3-chlorobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (209)

In the same manner as in Example 141, 6-(3-chlorobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole sodium salt was obtained from 0.450 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.486 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.573 g of 3-chlorobenzenesulfonamide and 0.456 g of diazabicycloundecene. This salt was dissolved in a mixed solution of methanol and water, and was adjusted to a pH of from 5 to 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.420 g of 6-(3-chlorobenzenesulfo-

nylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (209).

Properties of Compound (209):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.51(3H, s), 5.63(2H, s), 6.48(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.22(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.34(1H, t, J=7.7Hz), 7.56(1H, t, J=8.0Hz), 7.64(1H, t, J=8.0Hz), 7.68(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.78(2H, t, J=8.6Hz), 7.91(1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.95(1H, d, J=1.6Hz), 8.10(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1687cm⁻¹.

Mass(FAB) : m/e 474(M+1).

mp : 254.5-257.5°C(decomp.)

Example 145

Synthesis of 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-benzyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (210)

In the same manner as in Example 144, 0.447 g of 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-benzyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (210) were formed from 0.466 g of 2-benzyl-5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 0.401 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.389 g of benzenesulfonamide and 0.377 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (210):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 4.28(2H, s), 5.57(2H, s), 6.23(1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.04(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.10-7.26(6H, m), 7.40(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.46(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.61-7.73(4H, m), 8.00(2H, d, J=7.6Hz), 8.23(1H, s), 12.43(1H, br s).

IR(KBr) : 1685cm⁻¹.

mp : 152.0-155.0°C

Example 146

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-benzyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (211)

In the same manner as in Example 144, 0.803 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-benzyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (211) were formed from 0.760 g of 2-benzyl-6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 0.654 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.634 g of benzenesulfonamide and 0.614 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (211):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 4.41(2H, s), 5.71(2H, s), 6.32(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.06(1H, t, J=7.7Hz), 7.14-7.30(6H, m), 7.50(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.62(2H, t), 7.70(1H, t), 7.81(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.87(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.97(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 8.16(1H, s), 12.60(1H, br s).

IR(KBr) : 1704cm⁻¹.

mp : 143.0-144.5°C.

Example 147

Synthesis of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (180)

Ten milliliters of dichloromethane and 1 drop of N,N-dimethylformamide were added to 0.627 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, and the mixture was cooled with ice. Oxalyl chloride (0.493 g) was added dropwise thereto, and the mixture was stirred for several minutes. Further, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and was then concentrated under reduced pressure to remove oxalyl chloride. The residue was dissolved in 10 ml of dichloromethane. This solution was added dropwise to a solution of 0.167 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.469 g of triethylamine in 5 ml of methylene chloride while being cooled with ice. After the mixture was stirred for 1 hour, the reaction solution was washed three times with water and further with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen-carbonate. The organic layer was concentrated under reduced pressure, and was purified through preparative thin-layer silica-gel chromatography (eluent: a mixture of acetone and diethyl ether at a ratio of 1:1). The resulting product was further dissolved in 5 ml of ethyl acetate, and 2 ml of hexane were added thereto for crystallization. The crystals were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.359 g of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (180).

Properties of Compound (180):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.56(3H, s), 4.76(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.40(2H, s), 6.33(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.07(1H, dd, J=8.4 and

2.0Hz), 7.22(1H, dd, J=7.4 and 4.9Hz), 7.33(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.48(1H, d, J=2.1Hz), 7.62-7.79(4H, m), 7.86(1H, d, J=1.1Hz), 8.57, (1H, d, J=4.9Hz).

IR(KBr) : 1645cm⁻¹.

mp : 204.1-206.3°C

5

Example 148

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (212)

10 Oxalyl chloride (0.655 g) was added to a solution of 0.886 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole and 1 drop of N,N-dimethylformamide in 13 ml of dichloromethane while being cooled with ice, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 hours. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, washed with methylene chloride, and dried under reduced pressure. The crystals were added to a solution of 0.235 g of 2-aminomethylpyridine and 0.653 g of triethylamine in 15 ml of dichloromethane while being cooled, and the mixture was
15 stirred for 1 hour. Water was added to the reaction solution to stop the reaction. The reaction solution was washed twice with water and further with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate. The organic layer was then dried, and the solvent was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was recrystallized from a mixed solvent of ethyl acetate and ethanol to give 0.774 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (212).

20 Properties of Compound (212):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.62(3H, s), 4.77(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.42(2H, s), 7.12(2H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.21(1H, m), 7.34(2H, m), 7.42(2H, m), 7.51-7.55(4H, m), 7.62(1H, br t), 7.67(1H, dt, J=1.7 and 7.7Hz), 7.71(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.4Hz), 7.76(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.00(1H, d, J=1.2Hz), 8.56(1H, d, J=4.8Hz).

25 IR(KBr) : 1642cm⁻¹.

mp : 205.0-206.5°C

Example 149

30 Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (163)

N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole (0.973 g) was added to a solution of 0.902 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole in 20 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Subsequently, a solution of 0.943 g of benzenesulfonamide and 0.913 g of diazabicycloundecene in 5 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 70 hours. The reaction solution was cooled, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Water and chloroform were added to the residue, and 10% hydrochloric acid was added thereto while being stirred until the aqueous layer was acidified. The mixed solution was extracted twice with chloroform. The resulting organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in a
40 small amount of chloroform, and ethyl acetate was added to the solution for crystallization. The crystals were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.667 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (163).

Example 150

45

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole sodium salt (213)

In the same manner as in Example 141, 0.365 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole sodium salt (213) were formed from 0.637 g of 6-carboxy-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.533 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.516 g of benzenesulfonamide and 0.500 g of diazabicycloundecene.

50 Properties of Compound (213):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.52(3H, s), 5.52(2H, s), 7.13(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.31-7.37(4H, m), 7.39-7.45(3H, m), 7.58-7.63(4H, m), 7.78-7.82(3H, m), 7.97(1H, s).

55 IR(Nujol) : 1591cm⁻¹.

mp : 289.0-290.0°C(decomp.)

Example 151

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (163)

N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole (5.41 g) was added at a time to a solution of 5.02 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole in 110 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Subsequently, a solution of 5.24 g of benzenesulfonamide and 5.08 g of diazabicycloundecene in 20 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was added thereto, and the mixed solution was stirred at 100°C for 70 hours. The reaction solution was cooled, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Water and chloroform were added to the residue, and 10% hydrochloric acid was added thereto while being stirred until the aqueous layer was acidified. The solution was extracted twice with chloroform. The organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen-carbonate, and a part of the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 4.96 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (163).

Example 152

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-trifluoromethanesulfonylcarbamoylbenzimidazole hydrochloride (214)

N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole (0.647 g) was added at a time to a solution of 0.600 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole in 20 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Subsequently, a solution of 0.596 g of trifluoromethanesulfonamide and 0.609 g of diazabicycloundecene in 5 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 72 hours. The reaction solution was cooled, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Water and ethyl acetate were added to the residue, and 10% hydrochloric acid was added thereto while being stirred until the aqueous layer was acidified. The crystals precipitated were washed with a mixed solvent of 25 ml of ethanol and 25 ml of methanol. The crystals were dried to give 0.420 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-trifluoromethanesulfonylcarbamoylbenzimidazole hydrochloride (214).

Properties of Compound (214):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.84(3H, s), 5.82(2H, s), 7.08(1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.30(1H, t), 7.40(1H, t, J=7.7Hz), 7.58(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.79(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 8.07-8.13(2H, m).
 IR(KBr) : 1634cm⁻¹.
 Mass(Cl) : m/e 432(M+1-HCl).
 mp : 332-335°C(decomp.)

Example 153 and 154

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole hydrochloride (215) and 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (216)

In the same manner as in Example 152, 0.540 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole hydrochloride (215) were formed from 0.460 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.455 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.431 g of benzenesulfonamide and 0.418 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (215):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.71(3H, s), 5.74(2H, s), 6.83(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.33(1H, dd, J=2.0 and 8.4Hz), 7.63(2H, t), 7.71(1H, t), 7.78(1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.86(1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.95(1H, dd, J=1.4 and 8.7Hz), 7.99(2H, m), 8.29(1H, s).
 IR(KBr) : 1686cm⁻¹.
 mp : 236.0-238.0°C

This compound was dissolved in a mixed solvent of a potassium hydrogencarbonate and methanol, and the solution was adjusted to a pH of from 5 to 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The crystals precipitated were collected, washed with water and with methanol, and dried to give 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (216).

Properties of Compound (216):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.48(3H, s), 5.58(2H, s), 6.42(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.31(1H, dd, J=2.2 and 8.4Hz), 7.60-7.75(6H, m), 7.99(2H, d, J=7.4Hz), 8.06(1H, s), 12.40(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1540cm⁻¹.

mp : 238.2.-239.9°C

Example 155

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(4-methoxybenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (217)

N,N'-carbodiimidazole (0.431 g) was added at a time to a solution of 0.400 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole in 15 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Subsequently, a solution of 0.498 g of 4-methoxybenzenesulfonamide and 0.405 g of diazabicycloundecene in 5 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was added thereto, and the mixed solution was stirred at 100°C for 67 hours. The reaction solution was cooled, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Water and chloroform were added to the residue, and 10% hydrochloric acid was added thereto while being cooled until the aqueous layer was acidified. The resulting mixture was extracted twice with chloroform. The organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of chloroform and methanol at a ratio of 100:2 to 100:10). The resulting product was concentrated, and was crystallized from a mixed solution of ethyl acetate and diethyl ether. The crystals were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.450 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(4-methoxybenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (217).

Properties of Compound (217):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.46(3H, s), 3.83(3H, s), 5.58(2H, s), 7.12(2H, d, J=9.0Hz), 7.21(1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.33(1H, t), 7.56(1H, d, J=7.0Hz), 7.63(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.71(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.5Hz), 7.91(2H, d, J=9.0Hz), 8.05(1H, d, J=1.3Hz).

IR(KBr) : 1683cm⁻¹.

Mass(FAB) : m/e 470(M+1).

mp : 271.0-274.0°C

Example 156

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(α-toluenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (218)

In the same manner as in Example 155, 0.350 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(α-toluenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (218) were formed from 0.450 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.485 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.512 g of α-toluenesulfonamide and 0.456 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (218):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.48(3H, s), 4.36(2H, s), 5.53(2H, s), 6.40(1H, d, J=6.8Hz), 7.15-7.28(6H, m), 7.32(1H, t), 7.49(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.55(1H, d), 7.83-7.87(2H, m).

IR(KBr) : 1593cm⁻¹.

Mass(FAB) : m/e 454(M+1).

mp : 193-196°C(foamed)

Example 157

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(2,5-dimethylbenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (219)

In the same manner as in Example 155, 0.490 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(2,5-dimethylbenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (219) were formed from 0.500 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.539 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.616 g of 2,5-xylenesulfonamide and 0.506 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (219):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.35(3H, s), 2.48(3H, s), 2.51(3H, s), 5.58(2H, s), 6.45(1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.20-7.27(2H, m), 7.31-7.39(2H, m), 7.56(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.64(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.75(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.82(1H, s), 8.06(1H, s), 12.45(1H, br s).

IR(KBr) : 1690cm⁻¹.

Mass(FAB) : m/e 468(M+1).

mp : 266.5-267.5°C

Example 158

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(4-nitrobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (220)

5 N,N'-carbodiimidazole (0.432 g) was added at a time to a solution of 0.400 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole in 15 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Subsequently, a solution of 0.538 g of 4-nitrobenzenesulfonamide and 0.405 g of diazabicycloundecene in 5 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 84 hours. The reaction solution was cooled, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Chloroform and hydrochloric acid were added to the residue, and the mixture was stirred to precipitate the crystals. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.300 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(4-nitrobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (220).

Properties of Compound (220):

15 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.56(3H, s), 5.65(2H, s), 6.54(1H, d, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.23(1H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.34(1H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.56(1H, t, $J=8.0\text{Hz}$), 7.68(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.83(1H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 8.07(1H, s), 8.16(2H, d, $J=8.7\text{Hz}$), 8.37(2H, d, $J=8.7\text{Hz}$).
 IR(KBr) : 1621cm^{-1} .
 Mass(FAB) : m/e 485($M+1$).
 mp : 330-332°C

Example 159

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl]benzimidazole (221)

25 In the same manner as in Example 158, 0.390 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl]benzimidazole (221) were formed from 0.450 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.486 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.676 g of 4-(trifluoromethyl)benzenesulfonamide and 0.457 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (221):

30 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.52(3H, s), 5.62(2H, s), 6.47(1H, d, $J=7.2\text{Hz}$), 7.22(1H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.34(1H, t), 7.56(1H, d, $H=8.0\text{Hz}$), 7.66(1H, d, 8.5Hz), 7.78(1H, d), 7.97(2H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 8.06(1H, s), 8.15(2H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$).
 IR(KBr) : 1620cm^{-1} .
 Mass(FAB) : m/e 508($M+1$).
 35 mp : 288.0-292.0°C

Example 160

Synthesis of 6-(2-chlorobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole ammonium salt (222)

40 N,N'-carbodiimidazole (0.485 g) was added at a time to a solution of 0.450 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole in 15 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Subsequently, a solution of 0.575 g of trifluoromethanesulfonamide and 0.457 g of diazabicycloundecene in 5 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 72 hours. The reaction solution was cooled, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Water and ethyl acetate were added to the residue, and 10% hydrochloric acid was added thereto while being mixed until the aqueous layer was acidified. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration. The crystals were dissolved in ethanol, and the solution was adjusted to a pH of 7 with aqueous ammonia. Further, diisopropyl ether was added thereto. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.360 g of 6-(2-chlorobenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole ammonium salt (222).

Properties of Compound (222):

55 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.47(3H, s), 5.51(2H, s), 6.43(1H, d, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.12(4H, br s), 7.19(1H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.28-7.38(4H, m), 7.46(1H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 7.53(1H, d, $J=7.9\text{Hz}$), 7.78-7.82(2H, m), 7.97(1H, m).
 IR(KBr) : 1590cm^{-1} .
 Mass(FAB) : m/e 474($M+1-\text{NH}_3$).
 mp : 264.0-267.0°C

Example 161

Synthesis of 6-carbamoyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (223)

5 Oxalyl chloride (0.437 g) was added to a solution of 0.490 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole and 1 drop of N,N-dimethylformamide in 8 ml of methylene chloride while being cooled with ice, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. Four milliliters of 28% aqueous ammonia were added thereto, and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The reaction solution was extracted with the addition of water and methylene chloride. The organic layer was concentrated, and the crystals precipitated were then collected, and were
 10 dried to give 0.240 g of 6-carbamoyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (223).

Properties of Compound (223):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.48(3H, s), 5.54(2H, s), 6.41(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.21-8.02(3H, m), 7.31(1H, dd, $J=2.2$ and
 15 8.4Hz), 7.60(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.75(1H, m), 7.93(1H, s).
 IR(KBr) : 1666cm^{-1} .
 mp : $112.0-114.0^\circ\text{C}$

Example 162

20 Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-benzyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (224)

N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole (0.248 g) was added at a time to a solution of 0.315 g of 2-benzyl-6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)benzimidazole in 5 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Subsequently, a solution of 0.240 g of benzenesulfonamide and 0.233 g of diazabicycloundecene in 4 ml of N,N-
 25 dimethylformamide was added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 62 hours. The reaction solution was cooled, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Water and chloroform were added to the residue, and 10% hydrochloric acid was added thereto while being mixed until the aqueous layer was acidified. The solution was extracted twice with chloroform. The resulting organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate, and a part of the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. To the residue were added 4 ml
 30 of methanol and 4 ml of a 20% potassium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution to form a uniform solution. This solution was then adjusted to a pH of from 5 to 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.310 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-benzyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (244).

Properties of Compound (224):

35 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 4.32(1H, s), 5.61(2H, s), 6.16(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.09(1H, dd, $J=8.4$ and 1.9Hz), 7.18-7.10(5H, m), 7.82-7.58(6H, m), 7.97(2H, d, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 8.10(1H, s), 12.43(1H, br s).
 IR(KBr) : 1703cm^{-1} .
 mp : $236.0-238.0^\circ\text{C}$

Example 163

40 Synthesis of 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-benzyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (225)

45 In the same manner as in Example 152, 0.270 g of 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-benzyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)benzimidazole (225) were formed from 0.385 g of 2-benzyl-5-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 0.304 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.294 g of benzenesulfonamide and 0.285 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (225):

50 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 4.28(2H, s), 5.52(2H, s), 6.14(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.21-7.06(6H, m), 7.42(1H, d, $J=8.6\text{Hz}$), 7.76-7.57(5H, m), 8.05-7.95(2H, m), 8.24(1H, s), 12.43(1H, br s).
 IR(KBr) : 1691cm^{-1} .
 mp : $107.0-110.0^\circ\text{C}$.

55

Example 164

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl-2-hydroxybenzimidazole (226)

5 Tetramethoxymethane (0.220 g) was added to a solution of 0.400 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide in 5 ml of acetic acid, and the mixture was stirred at 80 °C for 2 hours. The reaction solution was concentrated, and a 20% potassium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution was added to this reaction solution to render it basic. This solution was then adjusted to a pH of from 5 to 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The crystals precipitated were collected, and 10 ml of methanol, 0.50 g of 10% hydrochloric acid and 0.35% hydrochloric acid were added
10 thereto. The mixture was stirred at 60°C for 15 hours. A 20% potassium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution was added to the solution to render it alkaline. This solution was then adjusted to a pH of from 5 to 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.219 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl-2-hydroxybenzimidazole (226).

Properties of Compound (226):

15 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 5.07(2H, s), 7.08(1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.33-7.39(3H, m), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.60-7.65(7H, m), 7.66-7.72(2H, m), 7.96-7.80(2H, m), 11.46(1H, s), 12.34(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1704, 1686cm⁻¹.

Mass(FD) : m/e 483(M).

20 mp : 268.7-273.9°C

Example 165

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-mercaptobenzimidazole (227)

25 Two milliliters of carbon disulfide were added to a solution of 0.800 g of N-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide, and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 70 hours. Chloroform and water were added thereto. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.719 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-mercaptobenzimidazole (227).

30 Properties of Compound (227):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 5.55(2H, s), 7.28(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=6.3Hz), 7.39-7.47(4H, m), 7.61-7.65(6H, m), 7.69(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.78(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.4Hz), 7.87(1H, s), 7.81-7.98(2H, m), 12.51(1H, s), 13.29(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1701cm⁻¹.

35 mp : 320.0-321.0°C

Example 166

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methoxybenzimidazole (228)

40 Tetramethoxymethane (0.250 g) was added to a solution of 0.400 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide in 3 ml of acetic acid, and the mixture was stirred at 80°C for 2 hours. Methanol was added to the reaction solution, and the crystals precipitated were collected. The crystals were washed with a mixed solvent of 1 ml of acetone and 8 ml of methanol, separated through filtration, and dried to give 0.280 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methoxybenzimidazole (228).

45 Properties of Compound (228):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 4.17(3H, s), 5.33(2H, s), 7.30(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.50(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.60-7.65(6H, m), 7.68-7.72(2H, m), 7.98-8.01(2H, m), 8.05(1H, d, J=1.5Hz), 8.18(1H, s),
50 12.50(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1690cm⁻¹.

mp : 136.0-138.5°C

Example 167

55 Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-carboxybenzimidazole (229)

Triethylamine (0.080 g) and 0.148 g of methyloxalyl chloride were added to a solution of 0.400 g of N-benzenesul-

fonyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide in 3 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was concentrated, and the residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 9:1) to obtain crude 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-carboxybenzimidazole. This compound was dissolved in 1 ml of acetic acid and 5 ml of methanol, and the mixture was stirred at 60°C for 15 hours. The reaction solution was neutralized with a potassium hydroxide aqueous solution. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.245 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-carboxybenzimidazole (229).

Properties of Compound (229):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 5.44(2H, s), 7.23(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.36(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.41(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.45(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.58(2H, t, J=7.8Hz), 7.60-7.71(7H, m), 7.94(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 12.38(1H, s), 12.52(1H, s).
IR(KBr) : 1670cm⁻¹.
mp : 247.5-250.0°C

Example 168

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methylaminobenzimidazole (230)

A mixture containing 0.300 g of N-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide, 0.200 g of methyl isothiocyanate, 5 ml of methanol and 5 ml of acetone was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. Further, 1 ml of 97% sulfuric acid was added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 43 hours. A 20% potassium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution was added to the reaction solution to render it basic. This reaction solution was then concentrated, and the residue was extracted with ethyl acetate and with water. The organic layer was concentrated, dissolved in chloroform, and precipitated with hexane. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.140 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methylaminobenzimidazole (230).

Properties of Compound (230):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.98(3H, d, J=4.4Hz), 5.34(2H, s), 7.22(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.26(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.34(1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.57(2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.59-7.68(6H, m), 7.76(1H, s), 7.95(2H, d, J=7.4Hz), 12.28(1H, s).
IR(KBr) : 1672cm⁻¹.
Mass(FAB) : m/e 497(M+1).
mp : 225.0-228.0°C

Example 169

Synthesis of 2-amino-6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)benzimidazole (231)

Ten milliliters of methanol, 10 ml of acetone and 0.395 g of cyanogen bromide were added to 1.500 g of N-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 100 hours and then at 50°C for 30 hours. The reaction solution was extracted with chloroform and with water. The organic layer was washed six times with water, and was concentrated. The residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 9:1) to give 0.135 g of 2-amino-6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)benzimidazole (231).

Properties of Compound (231):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 5.32(2H, s), 6.77(2H, s), 7.05(1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.21(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.31-7.38(4H, m), 7.43(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.58-7.65(6H, m), 7.79-7.82(2H, m).
IR(KBr) : 1684cm⁻¹.
Mass(FAB) : m/e 483(M+1).
mp : 352.5-355.0°C

Example 170

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole potassium salt (232)

Triethylamine (0.060 g) and 0.084 g of butyryl chloride were added to a solution of 0.300 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-

4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide in 2 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. The reaction solution was directly purified through silica-gel column chromatography to obtain 0.250 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)-4-butyrylamino benzamide. To this compound were added 5 ml of methanol and 0.50 g of 35% hydrochloric acid, and the mixture was stirred at 60°C for 3 hours. Then, 20% potassium hydrogencarbonate was added thereto to stop the reaction, and the reaction solution was extracted with ethyl acetate and with water. The organic layer was concentrated, and the product was dissolved in a small amount of chloroform. Ether was added thereto for crystallization. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.157 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole potassium salt (232).

Properties of Compound (232):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 0.95(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 1.77(2H, q, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 2.82(2H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 5.55(2H, s), 7.11(2H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$), 7.32-7.38(4H, m), 7.43(2H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.47(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.58-7.64(4H, m), 7.79-7.83(3H, m), 7.96(1H, s).

IR(Nujol) : 1592cm^{-1} .

Mass(FAB) : m/e 548($M+1$).

mp : $279.0-282.0^\circ\text{C}$

Example 171

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-n-heptylbenzimidazole (233)

In the same manner as in Example 170, 0.232 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-n-heptylbenzimidazole (233) were formed from 0.400 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide, 0.080 g of triethylamine and 0.170 g of octanoyl chloride.

Properties of Compound (233):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 0.79(3H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 1.12-1.24(6H, m), 1.24-1.31(2H, m), 1.66-1.73(2H, m), 2.84(2H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 5.58(2H, s), 7.14(2H, d, $J=8.1\text{Hz}$), 7.34(2H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.43(2H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.52-7.66(7H, m), 7.75(1H, d, $J=8.8\text{Hz}$), 7.95(2H, d, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 8.15(1H, s), 12.45(1H, s). IR(KBr) : 1688cm^{-1} .

mp : $112.0-117.5^\circ\text{C}$

Example 172

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-chloromethylbenzimidazole (234)

In the same manner as in Example 170, 0.913 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-chloromethylbenzimidazole (234) were formed from 0.300 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide, 0.060 g of triethylamine and 0.102 g of chloroacetyl chloride.

Properties of Compound (234):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 5.10(2H, s), 5.71(2H, s), 7.23(2H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 7.35(1H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 7.44(2H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.60-7.66(6H, m), 7.69(1H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.75-7.81(2H, m), 7.98-8.01(2H, m), 8.16(1H, s), 12.52(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1700cm^{-1} .

mp : $220.5-223.5^\circ\text{C}$.

Example 173

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (235)

In the same manner as in Example 170, 0.183 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (235) were formed from 0.400 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide, 0.115 g of triethylamine and 0.131 g of methoxyacetyl chloride.

Properties of Compound (235):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 3.31(3H, s), 4.72(2H, s), 5.63(2H, s), 7.23(2H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 7.35(1H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.44(2H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.60-7.65(6H, m), 7.70(1H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.72-7.79(2H, m), 7.98-8.01(2H, m), 8.18(1H, s), 12.50(1H, s). IR(KBr) : 1690cm^{-1} .

mp : 195.0-198.0°C.

Example 174

5 Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-i-propylbenzimidazole potassium salt (236)

In the same manner as in Example 170, 0.400 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide, 0.080 g of triethylamine and 0.112 g of isobutyl chloride were reacted as starting materials. The crude product was dissolved in a mixed solvent of methanol and a 20% potassium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution, and the pH was adjusted to 7 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The crystals precipitated were crystals of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-i-propylbenzimidazole potassium salt [(236), 0.167 g].

Properties of Compound (236):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.26(6H, d, J=6.8Hz), 3.25-3.40(1H, m), 5.58(2H, s), 7.09(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.32-7.37(4H, m), 7.43(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.48(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.58-7.64(4H, m), 7.79-7.83(3H, m), 7.95(1H, s).
IR(Nujol) : 1592cm⁻¹.
Mass(FAB) : m/e 548(M+1).
mp : 310.1-312.7°C.

20 Example 175

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methylthiobenzimidazole (237)

A 20% potassium hydroxide aqueous solution (0.323 g), 2 ml of water and 0.123 g of methyl iodide were added to a solution of 0.310 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-mercaptobenzimidazole in 5 ml of methanol in this order, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was adjusted to a pH of from 5 to 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.281 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methylthiobenzimidazole (237).

Properties of Compound (237):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.75(3H, s), 5.48(2H, s), 7.25(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.60-7.66(7H, m), 7.68-7.75(2H, m), 7.82-7.99(2H, m), 8.19(1H, d, J=1.6Hz), 12.43(1H, s).
IR(KBr) : 1685cm⁻¹.
mp : 218.8-220.4°C.

35 Example 176

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-ethylthiobenzimidazole (238)

In the same manner as in Example 175, 0.225 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-ethylthiobenzimidazole (238) were formed from 0.240 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-mercaptobenzimidazole and 0.117 g of ethyl iodide.

Properties of Compound (238):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.39(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 3.37(2H, q, J=7.3Hz), 5.47(2H, s), 7.24(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.1Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.57-7.68(8H, m), 7.75(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.98(2H, d, J=7.5Hz), 8.15(1H, s), 12.43(1H, s).
IR(KBr) : 1686cm⁻¹.
mp : 125.5-129.5°C.

50 Example 177

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-n-propylthiobenzimidazole (239)

In the same manner as in Example 175, 0.156 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-n-propylthiobenzimidazole (239) were formed from 0.220 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-mercaptobenzimidazole and 0.117 g of n-propyl iodide.

Properties of Compound (239):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.97(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.76(2H, q, J=7.2Hz), 3.29-3.36(2H, m), 5.48(2H, s), 7.24(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.58-7.71(8H, m), 7.74(1H, dd, J=8.5 and 1.7Hz), 7.99(2H, d, J=7.7Hz), 8.17(1H, s), 12.43(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1690cm⁻¹.

mp : 106.0-111.5°C.

Example 178

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-n-hexylthiobenzimidazole (240)

In the same manner as in Example 175, 0.212 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-n-hexylthiobenzimidazole (240) were formed from 0.250 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-mercaptobenzimidazole and 0.166 g of n-hexyl iodide.

Properties of Compound (240):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.82(3H, t, J=7.9Hz), 1.19-1.33(4H, m), 1.33-1.44(2H, m), 1.68-1.75(2H, m), 3.30-3.43(2H, m), 5.48(2H, s), 7.23(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.1Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.60-7.75(9H, m), 8.00(2H, d, J=7.7Hz), 8.19(1H, s), 12.44(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1688cm⁻¹.

mp : 139.5-141.0°C(decomp.)

Example 179

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)benzimidazole (241)

A mixture of 0.400 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide and 2 ml of formic acid was stirred at 90°C for 3 hours. The reaction solution was concentrated, and was precipitated with methanol. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.243 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)benzimidazole (241).

Properties of Compound (241):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 5.60(2H, s), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.2Hz), 7.39(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.61-7.77(9H, m), 8.00(2H, d, J=7.7Hz), 8.26(1H, s), 8.66(1H, s), 12.5(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1683cm⁻¹.

mp : 141.5-143.6°C.

Example 180

Synthesis of 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (242)

Four milliliters of acetic acid and 8 ml of ethanol were added to 0.434 g of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-(4-benzyloxybenzylamino)benzamide, and the mixture was stirred at 90°C for 7 hours. The reaction solution was concentrated under reduced pressure. Ethyl acetate and ether were added to the residue for crystallization. The crystals were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.375 g of 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (242).

Properties of Compound (242):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.59(3H, s), 4.78(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.01(2H, s), 5.31(2H, s), 6.89(2H, d, J=8.7Hz), 6.99(2H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.21(1H, dd, J=5.1 and 7.4Hz), 7.29-7.42(6H, m), 7.62(1H, br t), 7.65-7.75(3H, m), 7.98(1H, s), 8.57(1H, d, J=4.1Hz).

IR(KBr) : 1640cm⁻¹.

mp : 169.0-170.0°C.

Example 181

Synthesis of 2-methyl-1-(3,4-methylenedioxybenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (243)

Two milliliters of acetic acid and 5 ml of methanol were added to 0.490 g of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-

(3,4-methylenedioxybenzylamino)benzamide, and the mixture was stirred at 70°C for 8 hours. The reaction solution was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 9:1), and was then crystallized from ethyl acetate. The crystals were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.270 g of 2-methyl-1-[(3,4-methylenedioxybenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (243).

Properties of Compound (243):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.59(3H, s), 4.78(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.28(2H, s), 5.93(2H, s), 6.51(1H, d, J=1.6Hz), 6.55(1H, dd, J=1.4 and 7.9Hz), 6.72(2H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.22(1H, dd, J=6.7 and 5.0Hz), 7.34(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.62(1H, br t), 7.67-

7.75(3H, m), 7.96(1H, d, J=1.1Hz), 8.58(1H, d, J=4.9Hz).

IR(KBr) : 1637cm⁻¹.

mp : 190.5-192.0°C.

Example 182

Synthesis of 2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]-1-[4-(1,2,3-thiadiazol-4-yl)benzyl]benzimidazole (244)

In the same manner as in Example 180, 0.33 g of 2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]-1-[4-(1,2,3-thiadiazol-4-yl)benzyl]benzimidazole (244) were formed from 0.50 g of N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetylamino-3-[4-(1,2,3-thiadiazol-4-yl)benzylamino]benzamide.

Properties of Compound (244):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.58(3H, s), 4.58(2H, d, J=5.9Hz), 5.62(2H, s), 7.24(1H, dd, J=7.3 and 5.0Hz), 7.28-7.33(3H, m), 7.64(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.73(1H, dt, J=7.7 and 1.6Hz), 7.81(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.3Hz), 8.10(1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 8.13(1H, s), 8.49(1H, d, J=4.2Hz), 9.04(1H, t, J=5.9Hz), 9.58(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1642cm⁻¹.

mp : 216.0-217.0°C.

Example 183

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2,4-difluorobenzyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (245)

N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-(2,4-difluorobenzylamino)benzamide (0.370 g) was dissolved in a mixed solvent of 3.3 g of 10% hydrochloric acid, 6 ml of methanol and 4 ml of water, and 0.5 g of 35% hydrochloric acid were further added thereto. The mixture was stirred at 60°C for 3 hours. A 20% potassium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution was added to the reaction solution to render it basic. Then, this solution was adjusted to a pH of from 5 to 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.182 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2,4-difluorobenzyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (245).

Properties of Compound (245):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.53(3H, s), 5.56(2H, s), 6.95-7.01(1H, m), 7.04(1H, dt, J=8.7 and 1.4Hz), 7.32(1H, dt, J=10.7 and 2.1Hz), 7.59-7.66(3H, m), 7.68-7.74(2H, m), 8.00(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 8.13(1H, s), 12.43(1H, s). IR(KBr) : 1686cm⁻¹.

mp : 234.5-235.5°C(decomp.)

Example 184

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-phenylbenzimidazole (246)

Triethylamine (0.115g) and 0.200 g of benzoyl chloride were added to a solution of 0.500 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide in 5 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 hours. A potassium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution was added thereto to stop the reaction. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in a mixture of water and methanol, and the solution was adjusted to a pH of from 5 to 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The crystals precipitated were collected, and were dried to obtain 0.393 g of crude N-benzenesulfonyl-4-benzoylamino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide. This crude product was converted to 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-phenylbenzimidazole [(246), 0.270 g] in the same manner as in Example 183.

Properties of Compound (246):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 5.70(2H, s), 7.07(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.32-7.37(1H, m), 7.43(2H, t, J=5.7Hz), 7.53-7.58(2H, m), 7.58-7.65(7H, m), 7.68-7.72(1H, m), 7.77(2H, dd, J=7.5 and 1.5Hz), 7.81-7.83(2H, m), 7.98-8.02(2H, m), 8.22(1H, s), 12.47(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1690cm⁻¹.

mp : 138.5-139.5°C.

Example 185

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole (247)

In the same manner as in Example 183, 0.237 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-(2-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole (247) were formed from 0.79 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-(2-nitrobenzylamino)benzamide.

Properties of Compound (247):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.48(3H, s), 5.01(2H, s), 5.93(2H, s), 6.28-6.30(1H, m), 7.55-7.62(4H, m), 7.64-7.74(3H, m), 7.97(2H, d, J=8.0Hz), 8.10(1H, s), 8.22-8.28(1H, m), 12.39(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1686cm⁻¹.

mp : 269.5-272.5(decomp.)

Example 186

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-benzylbenzimidazole (248)

In the same manner as in Example 183, 0.222 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-benzylbenzimidazole (248) were formed from 0.38 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-benzylaminobenzamide.

Properties of Compound (248):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.54(3H, s), 5.55(2H, s), 7.12(2H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.28(1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.34(2H, t, J=7.0Hz), 7.61-7.66(3H, m), 7.69-7.76(2H, m), 8.00(2H, d, J=7.9Hz), 8.18(1H, s), 12.43(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1695cm⁻¹.

mp : 260.0-262.0°C(decomp.)

Examples 187 and 188

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole (249) and 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole potassium salt (250)

In the same manner as in Example 183, 0.255 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole (249) were formed as a crystal from 0.505 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-(4-nitrobenzylamino)benzamide. Further, the filtrate was concentrated to form 0.136 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole potassium salt (250) as a crystal.

Properties of Compound (249):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.50(3H, s), 5.70(2H, s), 7.30(2H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.52(2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.57(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.76(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.4Hz), 7.92(2H, d, J=7.3Hz), 8.05(1H, s), 8.20(2H, d, J=8.7Hz), 12.43(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1686cm⁻¹.

mp : 164.5-167.0°C.

Properties of Compound (250):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.51(3H, s), 5.68(2H, s), 7.28(2H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.32-7.41(3H, m), 7.46(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.78-7.86(3H, m), 7.91(1H, s), 8.20(2H, d, J=8.5Hz).

IR(KBr) : 1594cm⁻¹.

mp : 326.0-328.0°C(decomp.)

Example 189

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (251)

5 A mixture containing 0.500 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-3-amino-4-acetylaminobenzamide potassium salt, 0.470 g of 4-benzyloxybenzyl bromide, 0.925 g of a 20 % potassium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution and 3 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was stirred at 90°C for 1 hour. The reaction solution was concentrated, and was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 9:1) to obtain crude N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetyl-amino-3-(4-benzyloxybenzylamino)benzamide. This crude product was cyclized in the same manner as in Example 183 to give 0.160 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (251).

Properties of Compound (251):

15 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.54(3H, s), 5.05(2H, s), 5.44(2H, s), 7.09(2H, d, $J=8.7\text{Hz}$), 7.32(2H, d, $J=7.0\text{Hz}$), 7.29-7.44(5H, m), 7.58-7.67(3H, m), 7.68-7.75(2H, m), 7.79-8.02(2H, m), 8.18(1H, s), 12.46(1H, s).
 IR(KBr) : 1685cm^{-1} .
 mp : 111.0-114.0°C.

Example 190

20

Synthesis of 2-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (252)

Five-percent palladium on carbon (0.10 g) was added to a mixture of 1.00 g of crude N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-4-acetyl-amino-3-nitrobenzamide, 8 ml of acetic acid and 12 ml of ethanol, and the solution was stirred in a hydrogen atmosphere at 80°C for 7 hours. The solid material was separated through filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated. Ethyl acetate was added to the residue for crystallization. The crystals were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.57 g of 2-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (252).

Properties of Compound (252):

30 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3 , δ) : 2.52(3H, s), 4.59(2H, d, $J=5.9\text{Hz}$), 7.26(1H, dd, $J=7.1$ and 5.1Hz), 7.33(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.50(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.72-7.78(2H, m), 8.08(1H, s), 8.51(1H, d, $J=4.8\text{Hz}$), 9.04(1H, t, $J=5.8\text{Hz}$), 12.44(1H, s).
 IR(KBr) : 1641cm^{-1} .
 mp : 212.0-215.0°C.

35 Examples 191 and 192

synthesis of 1-benzenesulfonyl-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (253) and 1-benzenesulfonyl-2-methyl-5-[2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (254)

40 Ten milliliters of dichloromethane and 0.760 g of triethylamine were added to 1.00 g of 1-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, and 0.994 g of benzenesulfonyl chloride were added dropwise thereto. The mixture was stirred for 3 hours, and the reaction solution was washed three times with water and then with a sodium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution. The organic layer was concentrated under reduced pressure, and was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 9:1) to obtain 1.380 g of a mixture of 1-benzenesulfonyl-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole and 1-benzenesulfonyl-2-methyl-5-[2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole. This mixture was further purified through medium-pressure silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 100:3) to give 0.550 g of oily 1-benzenesulfonyl-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (253) and 0.540 g of oily 1-benzenesulfonyl-2-methyl-5-[2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (254). These oily products were dissolved in 1.5 ml of methylene chloride, and were crystallized from diethyl ether.

Properties of Compound (253):

55 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3 , δ) : 2.84(3H, s), 4.81(2H, d, $J=4.8\text{Hz}$), 7.24(1H, dd, $J=5.1$ and 7.3Hz), 7.37(1H, d, $J=7.7\text{Hz}$), 7.53(2H, dd, $J=7.9$ and 7.5Hz), 7.63-7.74(2H, m), 7.85(1H, dd, $J=8.4$ and 1.2Hz), 7.97(2H, dd, $J=9.6$ and 1.1Hz), 8.58-8.61(2H, m).
 IR(KBr) : 1636cm^{-1} .
 mp : 163.4-164.3°C.

Properties of Compound (254):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 2.83(3H, s), 4.78(2H, d, $J=4.7\text{Hz}$), 7.23(1H, dd, $J=4.9$ and 8.6Hz), 7.34(1H, d, $J=7.9\text{Hz}$), 7.53(2H, dd, $J=7.5$ and 8.4Hz), 7.64-7.75(3H, m), 7.91-7.96(3H, m), 8.10(1H, d, $J=9.1\text{Hz}$), 8.14(1H, d, $J=1.3\text{Hz}$), 8.56(1H, dd, $J=4.9$ and 1.0Hz).

IR(KBr) : 1657cm^{-1} .

mp : $88.3-91.3^\circ\text{C}$.

Examples 193 and 194

Synthesis of 2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (255) and 2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (256)

Ten milliliters of N,N-dimethylformamide, 3.24 g of 4-nitrobenzyl bromide and 2.52 g of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to 3.56 g of 2-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, and the mixture was heated at 80°C for 2 hours. The reaction solution was separated with the addition of chloroform and water. The organic layer was concentrated under reduced pressure, and was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 4:1) to obtain a mixture of 2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole and 2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole. This mixture was further separated into position isomers through medium-pressure silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 85:15). Each of the position isomers was recrystallized from a mixed solvent of chloroform and diethyl ether to give 1.37 g of 2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (255) and 1.19 g of 2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (256).

Properties of Compound (255):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 2.59(3H, s), 4.77(2H, d, $J=4.8\text{Hz}$), 5.48(2H, s), 7.09(2H, d, $J=8.7\text{Hz}$), 7.22(1H, dd, $J=7.2$ and 4.9Hz), 7.33(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.66-7.70(2H, m), 7.73(1H, dd, $J=8.4$ and 1.5Hz), 7.78(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.91(1H, d, $J=1.2\text{Hz}$), 8.15-8.19(2H, m), 8.56(1H, d, $J=4.6\text{Hz}$)

IR(KBr) : 1652cm^{-1}

mp : $116.1-119.1^\circ\text{C}$

Properties of Compound (256):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 2.59(3H, s), 4.79(2H, d, $J=4.8\text{Hz}$), 5.46(2H, s), 7.17-7.24(4H, m), 7.35(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.69(2H, dt, $J=7.6$ and 1.7Hz), 7.83(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 8.19(2H, d, $J=8.6\text{Hz}$), 8.26(1H, d, $J=1.3\text{Hz}$), 8.57(1H, d, $J=4.8\text{Hz}$)

IR(KBr) : 1634cm^{-1}

mp : $203.7-206.3^\circ\text{C}$

Examples 195 and 196

Synthesis of 2-methyl-1-(2-phenylethyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (257) and 2-methyl-1-(2-phenylethyl)-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (258)

In the same manner as in Examples 193 and 194, 0.30 g of 2-Methyl-1-(2-phenylethyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (257) and 0.23 g of 2-methyl-1-(2-phenylethyl)-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (258) were formed from 2.00 g of 2-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole and 15.0 g of phenetyl iodide.

Properties of Compound (257):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 2.17(3H, s), 3.10(2H, t, $J=6.8\text{Hz}$), 4.35(2H, t, $J=6.8\text{Hz}$), 4.82(2H, d, $J=4.8\text{Hz}$), 6.92-6.97(2H, m), 7.21-7.28(4H, m), 7.38(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.78(1H, br t), 7.68-7.73(3H, m), 7.98(1H, d, $J=0.9\text{Hz}$), 8.60(1H, dd, $J=1.0$ and 4.9Hz)

IR(neat) : 1633cm^{-1}

liquid.

Properties of Compound (258):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 2.19(3H, s), 3.08(2H, t, $J=6.8\text{Hz}$), 4.35(2H, t, $J=6.8\text{Hz}$), 4.81(2H, d, $J=4.8\text{Hz}$), 6.91-6.96(2H,

m), 7.19-7.26(4H, m), 7.31(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.36(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.64-7.73(2H, m), 7.85(1H, dd, J=1.7 and 8.4Hz), 8.19(1H, d, J=1.3Hz), 8.58(1H, d, J=4.0Hz)

IR(neat) : 1643cm⁻¹

liquid.

Examples 197 and 198

Synthesis of 1-(2,4-difluorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (259) and 1-(2,4-difluorobenzyl)-2-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (260)

In the same manner as in Examples 193 and 194, 0.25 g of 1-(2,4-difluorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (259) and 0.25 g of 1-(2,4-difluorobenzyl)-2-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (260) were formed from 1.00 g of 2-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole and 1.00 g of 2,4-difluorobenzyl bromide.

Properties of Compound (259):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.62(3H, s), 4.78(2H, d, J=4.7Hz), 5.38(2H, s), 6.73-6.79(2H, m), 6.88(1H, t, J=10.0Hz), 7.24(1H, dd, J=7.3 and 5.1Hz), 7.35(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.67-7.76(4H, m), 7.97(1H, s), 8.58(1H, d, J=4.4Hz). IR(KBr) : 1642cm⁻¹

mp : 98.0-104.0°C

Properties of Compound (260):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.62(3H, s), 4.79(2H, d, J=4.7Hz), 5.35(2H, s), 6.72-6.81(2H, m), 6.89(1H, t, J=9.8Hz), 7.22(1H, t, J=6.2Hz), 7.28(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.34(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.63-7.71(2H, m), 7.83(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.97(1H, s), 8.57(1H, d, J=4.7Hz)

IR(KBr) : 1647cm⁻¹

mp : 143.5-144.0°C

Examples 199 and 200

Synthesis of 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (261) and 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-2-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (262)

Thirty milliliters of methanol and 0.20 g of 5% palladium on carbon were added to 2.32 g of a mixture of 2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole and 2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, and the mixture was stirred in a hydrogen atmosphere at room temperature until the starting material disappeared. The solid material was separated through filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated. The resulting residue was purified through medium-pressure silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 85:15) to separate 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole and 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-2-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole. Each of these compounds was crystallized from a mixed solvent of chloroform and diethyl ether. The crystals were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.354 g of 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (261) and 0.330 g of 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-2-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (262).

Properties of Compound (261):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 3.00(3H, s), 4.98(2H, s), 5.88(2H, s), 7.55(2H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.69(2H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.90(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.96(1H, dt, J=7.1 and 0.6Hz), 8.12(1H, J=8.0Hz), 8.18(1H, dd, J=8.5 and 1.4Hz), 8.55(1H, dt, J=8.0 and 1.7Hz), 8.62(1H, d, J=1.1Hz), 8.77(1H, dd, J=5.9 and 1.1Hz)

IR(KBr) : 1643cm⁻¹

mp : 180.0-181.0°C

Properties of Compound (262):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 3.00(3H, s), 5.01(2H, s), 5.83(2H, s), 7.47(2H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.78(2H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.78(1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.97(1H, dt, J=7.2 and 0.7Hz), 8.13(1H, J=8.1Hz), 8.15(1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 8.51(1H, s), 8.55(1H, dt, J=7.9 and 1.6Hz), 8.77(1H, d, J=5.8Hz)

IR(KBr) : 1639, 1612cm⁻¹

mp : 168.0-171.0°C

Example 201

5 Synthesis of 1-[4-(benzenesulfonylamino)benzyl]-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (263)

Triethylamine (0.185 g) and benzenesulfonyl chloride (0.210 g) were added to a solution of 0.340 g of 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole in 10 ml of chloroform, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 8 hours. Water was added thereto to stop the reaction, and the reaction mixture was extracted with chloroform. The organic layer was washed three times with water, dried, and concentrated. The residue was then purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 100:1 to 4:1) to give 0.300 g of 1-[4-(benzenesulfonylamino)benzyl]-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole (263).

Properties of Compound (263):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.53(3H, s), 4.78(2H, d, J=4.8Hz), 5.28(2H, s), 6.90(2H, t, J=8.6Hz), 6.99(2H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.11(1H, s), 7.23(1H, dd, J=5.5 and 7.2Hz), 7.34(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.40(2H, t, J=8.1Hz), 7.50(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.66-7.74(6H, m), 7.92(1H, s), 8.56(1H, d, J=4.8Hz)
IR(KBr) : 1642cm⁻¹
mp : 204.4-206.5°C

Example 202

25 Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylaminomethyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (264)

To a solution of 0.667 g of benzenesulfonic acid amide in 5 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide were added 0.127 g of 60% sodium hydride at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. Further, 0.648 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-chloromethyl-2-methylbenzimidazole hydrochloride were added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. Water was added to the reaction solution to stop the reaction, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was extracted with ethyl acetate and with water. The organic layer was concentrated, and was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: ethyl acetate) to give 0.240 g of 6-benzenesulfonylaminomethyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (264).

Properties of Compound (264):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.42(3H, s), 4.02(2H, m), 4.02(2H, m), 5.44(2H, s), 6.36(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.03(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.18(1H, s), 7.21(1H, t), 7.33(1H, t), 7.59-7.43(5H, m), 7.73(2H, d, J=7.5Hz), 8.08(1H, s)
IR(KBr) : 1522cm⁻¹
mp : 164.5-167.0°C

40 Examples 203

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)aminomethyl]benzimidazole (265)

2-Aminomethylpyridine (0.372 g) was added to a solution of 0.597 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-chloromethyl-2-methylbenzimidazole and 0.350 g of potassium carbonate in 3 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, and the mixture was stirred at 60°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was extracted with water and with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed twice with water, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of chloroform and methanol at a ratio of 9:1), and was recrystallized from a mixed solvent of ethyl acetate and hexane to give 0.300 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)aminomethyl]benzimidazole (265).

Properties of Compound (265):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.57(3H, s), 3.91(2H, s), 3.93(2H, s), 5.35(2H, s), 7.08-7.14(3H, m), 7.23(2H, d, J=7.3Hz), 7.30-7.35(2H, m), 7.41(2H, t), 7.50-7.55(4H, m), 7.57(1H, dt, J=1.8 and 7.6Hz), 7.68(1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 8.53(1H, d, J=4.9Hz)
IR(KBr) : 1618cm⁻¹
mp : 104.5-106.0°C

Example 204

Synthesis of N-benzenesulfonyl-3-[1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-yl]propionamide (266)

5 5% Palladium on carbon (0.500 g) was added to a solution of 0.607 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-acrylamide in 150 ml of ethanol, and the mixture was stirred in a hydrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 43 hours. The solid material was separated through filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was dissolved in a mixed solution of a 20% potassium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution and methanol, and was adjusted to a pH of from 5 to 6 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and was dried to give 0.250 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-3-[1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole-6-yl]propionamide (266).

Properties of Compound (266):

15 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.45(3H, s), 2.52(2H, t), 2.78(2H, t), 5.37(2H, s), 6.88(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.08(2H, d, J=7.4Hz), 7.22-7.34(3H, m), 7.36(1H, t, J=8.1Hz), 7.55(2H, t), 7.67(1H, t), 7.84(2H, d, J=7.6Hz), 12.04(1H, br s)
IR(KBr) : 1715cm⁻¹
Mass(FAB) : m/e 468(M+1)
mp : 229.8-233.0°C

20 Example 205

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(1,2,3-thiadiazol-4-yl)benzyl]benzimidazole (267)

25 In the same manner as in Example 183, 0.279 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(1,2,3-thiadiazol-4-yl)benzyl]benzimidazole (267) were formed from 0.382 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-[4-(1,2,3-thiadiazol-4-yl)benzylamino]benzamide.

Properties of Compound (267):

30 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.56(3H, s), 5.62(2H, s), 7.28(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.58-7.63(3H, m), 7.67(1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.74(1H, dd, J=8.5 and 1.2Hz), 7.99(2H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.2Hz), 8.10(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 8.19(1H, s), 9.58(1H, s), 12.47(1H, s)
IR(KBr) : 1617, 1556cm⁻¹
mp : 258.5-260.0°C(decomp.)

35 Example 206

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(8-quinolinesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole sodium salt (268)

40 In the same manner as in Example 141, 0.400 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(8-quinolinesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole sodium salt (268) were formed from 0.450 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.485 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.625 g of 8-quinolinesulfonamide and 0.457 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (268):

45 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.42(3H, s), 5.48(2H, s), 6.32(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.17(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.30(1H, t, J=7.7Hz), 7.42(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.48(1H, dd, J=4.2 and 8.2Hz), 7.53(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.64(1H, t, J=7.7Hz), 7.79(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.88(1H, s), 8.04(1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 8.33-8.37(2H, m), 8.85(1H, dd)
IR(KBr) : 1594cm⁻¹
Mass(FAB) : m/e 513(M+1)
mp : 348-352°C (decomp.)

50

Example 207

Synthesis of 6-(4-tert-butylbenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole sodium salt (269)

55 In the same manner as in Example 141, 0.280 g of 6-(4-tert-butylbenzenesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole sodium salt (269) were obtained from 0.450 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.486 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.640 g of 2-tert-benzenesulfonamide and 0.657 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (269):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) 1.25(9H, s), 2.46(3H, s), 5.51(2H, s), 6.37(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.18(1H, t), 7.31(1H, t), 7.34(2H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.44(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.54(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.69(2H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.78-7.82(2H, m)
 IR(KBr) : 1596cm⁻¹
 Mass(FAB) : m/e 518(M+1)
 mp : 359.5-362°C

Example 208

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (270)

In the same manner as in Production Example 32, 0.30 g of crude N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzylamino]benzamide were obtained from 0.50 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzamide and 0.418 g of 4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide. When this crude product was dissolved in methanol and was allowed to stand, the crystals were precipitated. The crystals were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.160 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (270).

Properties of Compound (270):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.51(3H, s), 5.66(2H, s), 7.28(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.59-7.65(3H, m), 7.67-7.75(4H, m), 7.99(2H, d, J=7.5Hz), 8.14(1H, d, J=1.0Hz), 12.43(1H, s)
 IR(KBr) : 1618, 1550cm⁻¹
 mp : 278.5-280.0°C

Example 209

Synthesis of 2-benzyl-6-carboxy-1-methylbenzimidazole hydrochloride (271)

A 5% sodium hydroxide aqueous solution (2.8 g) was added to a solution of 0.340 g of 2-benzyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-methylbenzimidazole in 4 ml of ethanol, and the mixture was heat-refluxed for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was acidified with 1-N hydrochloric acid, and was concentrated under reduced pressure. Ethanol was added to the residue to extract the organic substance. Ethanol was distilled off under reduced pressure to give 0.300 g of 2-benzyl-6-carboxy-1-methylbenzimidazole hydrochloride (271).

Properties of Compound (271):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 4.00(3H, s), 4.62(2H, s), 7.33(1H, m), 7.35-7.45(4H, m), 7.83(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.06(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.42(1H, s), 13.3(1H, br s)

Example 210

Synthesis of 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (272)

A mixture of 0.500 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzamide, 3.9 g of 35% hydrochloric acid, 15 ml of methanol and 12 ml of water was stirred at 60°C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was neutralized with a potassium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution. The crystals precipitated were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 0.404 g of 5-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (272).

Properties of Compound (272):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.79(3H, s), 7.64-7.68(2H, m), 7.72-7.76(1H, m), 7.81(1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.94(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.7Hz), 8.02-8.05(2H, m), 8.30(1H, s)
 IR(KBr) : 1701cm⁻¹
 mp : 223.0-227.5°C

Production Example 45

Production of ethyl 3-methoxyacetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate

Ethyl 3-methoxyacetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate (18.7 g) was obtained from 15.0 g of ethyl 3-amino-4-nitrobenzoate

and 15.0 g of methoxyacetyl chloride in the same manner as in Production Example 12.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(CDCI₃, δ) : 1.42(3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 3.58(3H, s), 4.11(2H, s), 4.43(2H, q, J=7.2Hz), 7.85(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.7Hz), 8.27(1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 9.44(1H, d, J=1.6Hz), 11.15(1H, s)

Example 211

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (273)

Crude ethyl 3-[N-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)methoxyacetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate (2.02 g) was obtained from 2.00 g of ethyl 3-methoxyacetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 2.98 g of 4-biphenylmethyl bromide in the same manner as in Production Example 14. Subsequently, 1.44 g of crude 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (273) were obtained in the same manner as in Example 24.

Example 212

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (274)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.864 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (274) were formed from 1.44 g of crude 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole. Properties of Compound (274):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 3.35(3H, s), 4.77(2H, s), 5.68(2H, s), 7.25(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.61-7.66(4H, m), 7.74(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.83(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.5Hz), 8.08(1H, d, J=1.2Hz), 12.83(1H, s)

Example 213

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (275)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.429 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (275) were formed from 0.400 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole, 0.348 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.294 g of 1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl and 0.327 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (275):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.84(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.35-1.42(2H, m), 1.62-1.70(2H, m), 3.33(3H, s), 3.51(2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 4.74(2H, s), 5.65(2H, s), 7.26(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.62-7.67(4H, m), 7.78(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.84(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 8.24(1H, d, J=1.5Hz), 12.01(1H, s)
IR(KBr) : 1684cm⁻¹
mp : 176.0-178.5°C

Example 214

Synthesis of 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (276)

Crude ethyl 3-[N-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)methoxyacetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate (2.14 g) was obtained from 2.00 g of ethyl 3-methoxyacetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 3.30 g of 4-benzyloxybenzyl chloride in the same manner as in Production Example 14. Subsequently, 1.66 g of crude 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (276) were obtained in the same manner as in Example 24.

Example 215

Synthesis of 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-carboxy-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (277)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 2.64 g of 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-carboxy-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (277) were formed from 3.75 g of crude 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (277):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 3.34(3H, s), 4.74(2H, s), 5.05(2H, s), 5.53(2H, s), 6.97(2H, d, $J=8.7\text{Hz}$), 7.15(2H, d, $J=8.7\text{Hz}$), 7.31(1H, t, $J=7.2\text{Hz}$), 7.41(2H, d, $J=7.2\text{Hz}$), 7.71(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.81(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 7.4Hz), 8.04(1H, d, $J=1.1\text{Hz}$), 12.81(1H, s)

5 Example 216

Synthesis of 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (278)

10 In the same manner as in Example 155, 0.321 g of 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (278) were formed from 0.400 g of 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-carboxy-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole, 0.322 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.272 g of 1-butanefulfonamide and 0.302 g of diazabicycloundecene. Properties of Compound (278):

15 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 0.86(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 1.37-1.44(2H, m), 1.65-1.71(2H, m), 3.32(3H, s), 3.52(2H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 4.71(2H, s), 5.05(2H, s), 5.51(2H, s), 6.98(2H, d, $J=8.7\text{Hz}$), 7.15(2H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 7.31(1H, t, $J=7.2\text{Hz}$), 7.37(2H, t, $J=7.2\text{Hz}$), 7.41(2H, d, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 7.74(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.82(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 8.5Hz), 8.21(1H, s), 11.98(1H, s)
IR(KBr) : 1685cm^{-1}
mp : $72.0-74.0^\circ\text{C}$

20 Example 217

Synthesis of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (279)

25 Crude ethyl 3-[N-2,4-dichlorobenzyl)methoxyacetylaminol-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 2.00 g of ethyl 3-methoxyacetylaminol-4-nitrobenzoate and 2.08 g of 2,4-dichlorobenzyl chloride in the same manner as in Production Example 14. Subsequently, 3.15 g of crude 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (279) were obtained in the same manner as in Example 24.

30 Example 218

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methoxy-methylbenzimidazole (280)

35 In the same manner as in Example 53, 1.46 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (280) were formed from 3.15 g of crude 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole. Properties of Compound (280):

40 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 3.23(3H, s), 4.70(2H, s), 5.68(2H, s), 6.54(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.31(1H, dd, $J=2.2$ and 8.5Hz), 7.73(1H, d, $J=2.1\text{Hz}$), 7.76(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.86(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 8.5Hz), 8.00(1H, d, $J=1.1\text{Hz}$), 12.85(1H, s)

Example 219

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (281)

45 In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.430 g of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole (281) were formed from 0.400 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methoxymethylbenzimidazole, 0.355 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.300 g of 1-butanefulfonamide and 0.333 g of diazabicycloundecene. Properties of Compound (281):

50 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 0.85(3H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 1.37-1.42(2H, m), 1.63-1.69(2H, m), 3.21(3H, s), 3.51(2H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 4.68(2H, s), 5.65(2H, s), 6.46(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.31(1H, dd, $J=2.0$ and 8.4Hz), 7.75(1H, d, $J=2.1\text{Hz}$), 7.80(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.86(1H, dd, $J=1.7$ and 8.6Hz), 8.14(1H, d, $J=1.2\text{Hz}$), 12.00(1H, s)
IR(KBr) : 1694cm^{-1}
mp : $168.5-170.5^\circ\text{C}$

55

Example 220

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(1-propanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (282)

- 5 In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.459 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(1-propanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (282) were formed from 0.400 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.431 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.328 g of 1-propanesulfonamide and 0.404 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (282):

- 10 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 0.98(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 1.67-1.75(2H, m), 2.50(3H, s), 3.49(2H, t, $J=7.7\text{Hz}$), 5.61(2H, s), 6.45(1H, d, $J=7.0\text{Hz}$), 7.24(1H, dt, $J=0.8$ and 7.8Hz), 7.35(1H, dt, $J=1.4$ and 7.4Hz), 7.63(1H, dd, $J=0.9$ and 7.9Hz), 7.69(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.81(1H, dd, $J=1.6$ and 8.5Hz), 8.12(1H, d, $J=1.6\text{Hz}$), 11.90(1H, s)
IR(KBr) : 1676cm^{-1}
mp : $217.5-218.5^\circ\text{C}$

Example 221

Synthesis of 6-ethanesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (283)

- 20 In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.459 g of 6-ethanesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (283) were formed from 0.400 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.431 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.290 g of ethanesulfonamide and 0.404 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (283):

- 25 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 1.23(3H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 2.50(3H, s), 3.50(2H, q, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 5.61(2H, s), 6.45(1H, d, $J=6.7\text{Hz}$), 7.24(1H, dt, $J=0.9$ and 7.5Hz), 7.35(1H, dt, $J=1.4$ and 7.5Hz), 7.58(1H, dd, $J=1.0$ and 8.0Hz), 7.69(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.81(1H, dd, $J=1.6$ and 8.4Hz), 8.13(1H, d, $J=1.5\text{Hz}$), 11.86(1H, s)
IR(KBr) : 1673cm^{-1}
mp : $256.5-258.5^\circ\text{C}$

Example 222

Synthesis of 6-(propaneultam-1-ylcarbonyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (284)

- 35 In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.323 g of 6-(propanesultam-1-ylcarbonyl)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (284) were formed from 0.400 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.431 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.420 g of 1-(3-chloropropane)sulfonamide and 0.404 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (284):

- 40 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.27-2.33(2H, m), 2.52(3H, s), 3.52(2H, t, $J=7.0\text{Hz}$), 3.87(2H, t, $J=6.6\text{Hz}$), 5.59(2H, s), 6.57(1H, d, $J=7.7\text{Hz}$), 7.23(1H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.34(1H, t, $J=6.4\text{Hz}$), 7.53-7.58(2H, m), 7.67(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.79(1H, d, $J=1.1\text{Hz}$)
IR(KBr) : 1648cm^{-1}
mp : $165.5-166.6^\circ\text{C}$

Example 223

Synthesis of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole potassium salt (285)

- 50 In the same manner as in Example 170, 0.196 g of 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-cyclopropyl benzimidazole potassium salt (285) were obtained from 0.400 g of N-benzenesulfonyl-4-amino-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)benzamide and 0.101 g of cyclopropanecarbonyl chloride via N-benzenesulfonyl-3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethylamino)-4-cyclopropanecarbonylaminobenzamide.

Properties of Compound (285):

- 55 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 1.00-1.15(4H, m), 2.23-2.31(1H, m), 5.66(2H, s), 7.21(2H, m, $J=9.1\text{Hz}$), 7.32-7.45(7H, m), 7.59-7.63(4H, m), 7.78-7.83(3H, m), 7.97(1H, s).
IR(Nujol) : 1540cm^{-1}

Mass(FAB) : m/e 546(M+1)

mp : 220.8-224.8°C

Example 224

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(1-pentanesulfonylcarbonyl)benzimidazole (286)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.491 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(1-pentanesulfonylcarbonyl)benzimidazole (286) were formed from 0.400 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.431 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.402 g of 1-pentanesulfonamide and 0.404 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (286):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.81(3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 1.23-1.28(2H, m), 1.32-1.37(2H, m), 1.65-1.69(2H, m), 3.50(2H, t, J=7.8Hz), 5.61(2H, s), 6.45(1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.24(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.57(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.69(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.81(1H, dd, J=1.7 and 8.4Hz), 8.12(1H, d, J=1.2Hz), 12.25(1H, s)

IR(KBr) : 1684cm⁻¹

mp : 173.3-179.8°C

Example 225

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(3-methylbutane)sulfonylcarbonyl]benzimidazole (287)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.284 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(3-methylbutane)sulfonylcarbonyl]benzimidazole (287) were formed from 0.300 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.323 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.302 g of 1-(3-methyl)butanesulfonamide and 0.303 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (287):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.84(6H, d, J=6.5Hz), 1.52-1.59(2H, m), 1.61-1.70(1H, m), 3.44(2H, t, J=7.9Hz), 5.60(2H, s), 6.45(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.24(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.57(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.66(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.81(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.6Hz), 8.09(1H, s), 11.87(1H, s)

IR(KBr) : 1682cm⁻¹

mp : 201.0-204.1°C

Example 226

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(1-hexanesulfonylcarbonyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (288)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.379 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-(1-hexanesulfonylcarbonyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (288) were formed from 0.300 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.323 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.335 g of 1-hexanesulfonamide and 0.303 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (288):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.81(3H, t, J=7.0Hz), 1.18-1.28(4H, m), 1.32-1.41(2H, m), 1.63-1.71(2H, m), 2.53(3H, s), 3.50(2H, t, J=7.7Hz), 5.64(2H, s), 6.51(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.25(1H, dt, J=1.2 and 7.8Hz), 7.36(1H, dt, J=1.4 and 7.7Hz), 7.58(1H, dd, J=1.0 and 8.0Hz), 7.72(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.84(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.5Hz), 8.15(1H, d, J=1.3Hz), 11.87(1H, s)

IR(KBr) : 1682cm⁻¹

mp : 141.2-143.5°C

Example 227

Synthesis of 6-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (289)

In the same manner as in Example 18, 0.760 g of 6-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (289) were formed from 1.01 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1 ml of diphenylphosphorylazide, 1 ml of diisopropylethylamine and 25 ml of tert-butyl alcohol.

Properties of Compound (289):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.49(9H, s), 2.47(3H, s), 5.37(2H, s), 6.41(1H, d, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 6.55(1H, br s), 6.93(1H, dd, $J=1.9$ and 8.6Hz), 7.08(1H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.22(1H, t), 7.44(1H, d, $J=8.0\text{Hz}$), 7.62(2H, d, $J=8.6\text{Hz}$)

Example 228

Synthesis of 6-amino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (290)

In the same manner as in Example 22, 0.420 g of 6-amino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (290) were formed from 0.760 g of 6-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (290):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{DMSO-d}_6, \delta)$: 2.37(3H, s), 4.83(2H, br s), 5.32(2H, s), 6.33(1H, d, $J=1.9\text{Hz}$), 6.42(1H, d, $J=7.7\text{Hz}$), 6.46(1H, dd, $J=1.9$ and 8.5Hz), 7.19-7.24(2H, m), 7.31(1H, t), 7.53(1H, d, $J=7.9\text{Hz}$)

Example 229

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefsulfonylamino)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (291)

In the same manner as in Example 20, 0.230 g of 6-(1-butanefsulfonylamino)-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (291) were formed from 0.300 g of 6-amino-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.216 g of 1-butanefsulfonyl chloride and 0.130 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (291):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{DMSO-d}_6, \delta)$: 0.74(3H, m), 1.23(2H, m), 1.55(2H, m), 2.50(3H, s), 2.89(2H, m), 5.47(2H, s), 6.58(1H, d, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.02(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.10(1H, s), 7.23(1H, t), 7.33(1H, t), 7.52(2H, m), 9.55(1H, s)
 IR(KBr) : 1629cm^{-1}
 mp : $149.5-151.0^\circ\text{C}$

Production Example 46

Production of methyl 2-[N-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-3-nitrobenzoate

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, 0.250 g of methyl 2-[N-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-3-nitrobenzoate were formed from 1.00 g of methyl 2-acetylamino-3-nitrobenzoate and 0.985 g of 2,4-dichlorobenzyl chloride.

Properties of the compound:

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 1.99(3H, s), 3.71(3H, s), 4.85(1H, d, $J=4.5\text{Hz}$), 4.98(1H, d, $J=4.5\text{Hz}$), 7.17-7.22(2H, m), 7.46(1H, d, $J=7.9\text{Hz}$), 7.63(1H, t, $J=7.9\text{Hz}$), 7.98(1H, d, $J=8.0\text{Hz}$), 8.09(1H, d, $J=7.9\text{Hz}$)

Example 230

Synthesis of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-7-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (292)

In the same manner as in Example 24, 5.15 g of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-7-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (292) were formed from 6.50 g of methyl 2-[N-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-3-nitrobenzoate.

Properties of Compound (292):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 2.53(3H, s), 3.70(3H, s), 5.72(2H, s), 6.26(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.04(1H, dd, $J=2.0$ and 8.4Hz), 7.28(1H, t, $J=7.9\text{Hz}$), 7.45(1H, d, $J=2.0\text{Hz}$), 7.75(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.93(1H, d, $J=7.9\text{Hz}$)

Example 231

Synthesis of 7-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (293)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 1.76 g of 7-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (293) were formed from 2.00 g of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-7-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (293):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.49(3H, s), 5.81(2H, s), 6.09(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.21-7.28(2H, m), 7.62(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.67(1H, d, $J=2.2\text{Hz}$), 7.83(1H, d, $J=8.0\text{Hz}$), 13.04(1H, br s)

Example 232

Synthesis of 7-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (294)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.325 g of 7-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (294) were formed from 0.463 g of 7-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.448 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.379 g of 1-butanefulfonamide and 0.421 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (294):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 0.84(3H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 1.33(2H, m), 1.44(2H, m), 2.53(3H, s), 3.16(2H, m), 5.64(2H, s), 6.03(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.25(1H, dd, $J=2.1$ and 8.4Hz), 7.30(1H, t, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.44(1H, d, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.68(1H, d, $J=2.1\text{Hz}$), 7.87(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 12.18(1H, br s)

IR(KBr) : 1690cm^{-1}

mp : 98.5-102.0°C

Example 233

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[1-[3-(trimethylsilyl)propane]sulfonylcarbamoyl]benzimidazole (295)

In the same manner as in Example 149, 0.604 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[1-[3-(trimethylsilyl)propane]sulfonylcarbamoyl]benzimidazole (295) were formed from 0.400 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.431 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.520 g of 1-[3-(trimethylsilyl)propane]sulfonamide and 0.404 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (295):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : -0.06(9H, s), 0.61(2H, t, $J=8.6\text{Hz}$), 1.66-1.73(2H, m), 2.50(3H, s), 3.51(2H, t, $J=7.7\text{Hz}$), 5.61(2H, s), 6.46(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.24(1H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.35(1H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.57(1H, dd, $J=7.9$ and 0.9Hz), 7.70(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.81(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 8.5Hz), 8.12(1H, d, $J=1.4\text{Hz}$), 11.98(1H, s)

IR(KBr) : 1688cm^{-1}

mp : 197.0-203.9°C

Example 234

Synthesis of 4-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (296)

A mixture of 8.03 g of methyl 2-acetyl amino-3-nitrobenzoate, 18.8 g of reduced iron, 20 ml of acetic acid and 40 ml of ethanol was heat-refluxed for 18 hours. After the solvent was concentrated, chloroform and 10% hydrochloric acid were added to the residue for extraction. The aqueous layer was acidified with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate, and was extracted with chloroform. Chloroform was then distilled off under reduced pressure to give 1.61 g of 4-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (296).

Properties of Compound (296):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3 , δ) : 1.43(3H, t), 2.66(3H, s), 4.45(2H, q), 7.24-7.28(1H, m), 7.84-7.89(2H, m), 10.26(1H, br s)

Example 235

Synthesis of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-4-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (297)

A mixture of 1.61 g of 4-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 3.08 g of 2,4-dichlorobenzyl chloride, 1.51 g of potassium iodide, 1.05 g of potassium carbonate and 4 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was stirred at 80°C for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was extracted with chloroform and with water. The chloroform layer was washed with water, dried, and concentrated. The residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate at a ratio of 2:8) to give 0.730 g of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-4-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (297).

Properties of Compound (297):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.47(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.63(3H, s), 4.52(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.39(2H, s), 6.30(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.06(1H, dd, J=2.1 and 8.4Hz), 7.25(1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.32(1H, dd, J=1.0 and 7.9Hz), 7.48(1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.93(1H, dd, J=1.0 and 7.7Hz)

5 Example 236

Synthesis of 4-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (298)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.575 g of 4-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (298) were formed from 0.730 g of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-4-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (298):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.65(3H, s), 5.67(2H, s), 6.73(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.33(1H, dd, J=2.2 and 8.4Hz), 7.39(1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.74(1H, d, J=2.2Hz), 7.76(1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.85(1H, d, J=7.5Hz)

15 Example 237

Synthesis of 4-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (299)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.275 g of 4-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (299) were formed from 0.350 g of 4-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.339 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.287 g of 1-butanefulfonamide and 0.318 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (299):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.86(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.42(2H, m), 1.73(2H, m), 2.61(3H, s), 3.61(2H, m), 5.65(2H, s), 6.67(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.32(1H, dd, J=2.1 and 8.4Hz), 7.39(1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.73(1H, d, J=2.1Hz), 7.78(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.91(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 12.66(1H, br s)

IR(KBr) : 1699cm⁻¹

mp : 180.7-183.6°C

30 Example 238

Synthesis of 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (300)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, crude ethyl 3-[N-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)acetyl amino]-4-nitrobenzoate was obtained from 2.00 g of ethyl 3-acetyl amino-4-nitrobenzoate and 3.69 g of 4-benzyloxybenzyl chloride. Subsequently, 4.09 g of crude 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (300) were formed in the same manner as in Example 24.

40 Example 239

Synthesis of 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole (301)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 1.13 g of 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole (301) were formed from 4.09 g of 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (301):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.57(3H, s), 5.05(2H, s), 5.48(2H, s), 6.97(2H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.08(2H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.28-7.43(5H, m), 7.60(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.78(1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 8.07(1H, s), 12.72(1H, s)

50 Example 240

Synthesis of 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (302)

In the same manner as in Example 149, 0.206 g of 1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (302) were formed from 0.300 g of 6-carboxy-1-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.242 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.204 g of 1-butanefulfonamide and 0.227 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (302):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.87(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.38-1.43(2H, m), 1.64-1.71(2H, m), 2.54(3H, s), 3.49(2H, t, J=6.8Hz), 5.05(2H, s), 5.45(2H, s), 6.98(2H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.10(2H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.31(1H, t, J=7.2Hz), 7.37(2H, t, J=7.2Hz), 7.41(2H, d, J=7.3Hz), 7.62(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.79(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 8.23(1H, s), 11.93(1H, s)
 IR(KBr) : 1684cm⁻¹
 mp : 132.4-137.7°C

Example 241

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-[(2'-cyanobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (303)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, 0.750 g of crude ethyl 3-[N-[(2'-cyanobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate were obtained from 1.00 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 1.30 g of 4'-bromomethyl-2-cyanobiphenyl. Subsequently, 0.410 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-[(2'-cyanobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (303) were formed in the same manner as in Example 24.

Properties of Compound (303):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.40(3H, t), 2.63(3H, s), 4.39(2H, q), 5.46(2H, s), 7.17(2H, d), 7.40-7.66(5H, m), 7.73-7.78(2H, m), 8.00(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.5Hz), 8.05(1H, d, J=1.2Hz)

Example 242

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-[(2'-cyanobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (304)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.190 g of 6-carboxy-1-[(2'-cyanobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (304) were formed from 0.410 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-[(2'-cyanobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (304):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.59(3H, s), 5.67(2H, s), 7.24(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.53-7.64(5H, m), 7.75(1H, t, J=7.7Hz), 7.80(1H, d), 7.92(1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 8.12(1H, s), 12.74(1H, br s)

Example 243

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[(2'-cyanobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (305)

In the same manner as in Example 155, 0.155 g of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[(2'-cyanobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (305) were formed from 0.187 g of 6-carboxy-1-[(2'-biphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.160 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.135 g of 1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl and 0.150 g of diazabicycloundecene by being purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of chloroform and methanol at a ratio of 20:1).

Properties of Compound (305):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.83(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.34(2H, m), 1.60(2H, m), 2.56(3H, s), 3.27(2H, m), 5.62(2H, s), 7.23(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.53-7.57(4H, m), 7.60(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.75(1H, dt, J=1.0 and 7.8Hz), 7.83(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 7.92(1H, d), 8.13(1H, s), 11.92(1H, br s).

IR(KBr) : 2223cm⁻¹.

mp : 115-118°C

Production Example 47

Production of 2-fluoro-4'-methylbiphenyl

Thirty milliliters of a 1.6-M-n-butyllithium hexane solution and a solution of 8.33 g of 4-bromotoluene in 30 ml of tetrahydrofuran were added in this order to 30 ml of tetrahydrofuran which had been cooled to -78°C in a nitrogen atmosphere, and the mixture was then stirred at -78°C for 1 hour. A solution containing 6.64 g of zinc chloride which had been dehydrated through heat-melting under reduced pressure in 30 ml of tetrahydrofuran was added thereto at -78°C, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. This solution was added to a solution of 7.22 g of 2-fluoroiodobenzene and 0.52 g of tetrakis(trifluorophosphine)palladium (O) in 30 ml of tetrahydrofuran at room temperature, and the mixed solution was stirred for 24 hours. The reaction solution was diluted with 300 ml of ethyl acetate, and the dilute

solution was extracted with the addition of 10% hydrochloric acid. The organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, dried, and then concentrated. The residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: hexane) to give 6.05 g of oily 2-fluoro-4'-methylbiphenyl.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.39(3H, s), 7.10-7.30(5H, m), 7.39-7.49(3H, m)

Production Example 48

10 Production of 2-fluoro-4'-bromomethylbiphenyl

A mixture of 8.70 g of 2-fluoro-4'-methylbiphenyl, 8.32 g of N-bromosuccinimide, 0.10 g of 2,2'-azobisisobutyronitrile and 150 ml of carbon tetrachloride was heat-refluxed for 5 hours. The reaction solution was washed with water, and the organic layer was concentrated. The resulting residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate at a ratio of 9:1) to obtain crude 2-fluoro-4'-bromomethylbiphenyl. Further, this compound was crystallized from hexane to give 4.93 g of 2-fluoro-4'-bromomethylbiphenyl.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 4.55(2H, s), 7.13-7.23(2H, m), 7.33(1H, m), 7.43(1H, m), 7.47(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.54(2H, d, J=8.1Hz)

Production Example 49

25 Production of ethyl 3-[N-[(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate

Ethyl 3-[N-(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate (1.90 g) was formed from 1.54 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 2.26 g of 2-fluoro-4'-bromomethylbiphenyl in the same manner as in Production Example 14.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.33(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.92(3H, s), 4.36(2H, m), 4.44(1H, d, J=4.4Hz), 5.32(1H, d, J=4.4Hz), 7.13(1H, m), 7.18-7.22(3H, m), 7.31(1H, m), 7.40(1H, dt, J=1.6 and 7.7Hz), 7.44(2H, d), 7.67(1H, d, J=1.6Hz), 7.94(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.15(1H, dd, J=1.8 and 8.4Hz)

35 Example 244

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-[(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (306)

In the same manner as in Example 24, 1.53 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-[(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (306) were formed from 1.90 g of ethyl 3-[N-(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate.

Properties of Compound (306):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.40(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.62(3H, s), 4.38(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.43(2H, s), 7.10-7.17(3H, m), 7.19(1H, dt, J=1.0 and 7.5Hz), 7.31(1H, m), 7.38(1H, dt, J=1.8 and 7.8Hz), 7.50(2H, dd), 7.74(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 8.00(1H, dd, J=1.4 and 8.4Hz), 8.06(1H, s)

Example 245

50 Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-[(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (307)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 1.24 g of 6-carboxy-1-[(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (307) were formed from 1.50 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-[(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (307):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.59(3H, s), 5.63(2H, s), 7.19(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.24-7.31(2H, m), 7.39(1H, m), 7.46-7.53(3H, m), 7.62(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.80(1H, dd, J=1.3 and 8.4Hz), 8.10(1H, s)

Example 246

Synthesis of 6-(1-ethanesulfonylcarbonyl)-1-[(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (308)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.340 g of 6-(1-ethanesulfonylcarbonyl)-1-[(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (308) were formed from 0.455 g of 6-carboxy-1-[(2'-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.409 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.346 g of 1-butanedisulfonamide and 0.384 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (308):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.84(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.39(1H, m), 1.67(1H, m), 2.57(3H, s), 3.51(1H, t), 5.60(2H, s), 7.21(2H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.24-7.30(2H, m), 7.39(1H, m), 7.48(1H, t), 7.52(2H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.66(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.80(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 8.25(1H, s), 11.93(1H, br s)

Production Example 50

Production of 3-fluoro-4-methylbiphenyl

Thirty milliliters of a 1.6-M-n-butyllithium hexane solution and a solution of 9.21 g of 4-bromo-2-fluorotoluene in 30 ml of tetrahydrofuran were added in this order to 30 ml of tetrahydrofuran which had been cooled to -78°C in a nitrogen atmosphere, and the mixture was then stirred at -78°C for 1 hour. A solution containing 6.64 g of zinc chloride which had been dehydrated through heat-melting under reduced pressure in 30 ml of tetrahydrofuran was added thereto at -78°C, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction solution was added to a solution of 6.63 g of iodobenzene and 0.52 g of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0) in 30 ml of tetrahydrofuran at room temperature, and the mixed solution was stirred for 24 hours. The reaction solution was diluted with 300 ml of ethyl acetate, and the dilute solution was extracted with the addition of 10% hydrochloric acid. The organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, dried, and then concentrated. The residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: hexane) to give 6.00 g of oily 3-fluoro-4-methylbiphenyl.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.31(3H, d, J=1.8Hz), 7.20-7.28(3H, m), 7.34(1H, m), 7.43(2H, t), 7.55(2H, d)

Production Example 51

Production of 4-bromomethyl-3-fluorobiphenyl

A mixture of 6.00 g of 3-fluoro-4-methylbiphenyl, 5.73 g of N-bromosuccinimide, 0.075 g of 2,2'-azobisisobutyronitrile and 120 ml of carbon tetrachloride was heat-refluxed for 5 hours. The reaction solution was washed with water, and the organic layer was concentrated. The resulting residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate at a ratio of 9:1) to give 8.30 g of oily 4-bromomethyl-3-fluorobiphenyl.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 4.57(2H, s), 7.30(1H, d, J=11.0Hz), 7.34-7.40(2H, m), 7.45(3H, m), 7.56(2H, d)

Production Example 52

Production of ethyl 3-[N-[(3-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, 2.68 g of crude ethyl 3-[N-[(3-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate were obtained from 1.54 g of ethyl 3-acetylamino-4-nitrobenzoate and 2.26 g of 3-fluoro-4-bromomethylbiphenyl.

Example 247

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-[(3-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (309)

In the same manner as in Example 24, 1.34 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-[(3-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (309) were formed from 2.68 g of crude ethyl 3-[N-[(3-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]acetylamino]-4-nitrobenzoate.

Properties of Compound (309):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.40(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.65(3H, s), 4.39(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.46(2H, s), 6.79(1H, t, J=8.0Hz), 7.25(1H, m), 7.34-7.40(2H, m), 7.41-7.47(2H, m), 7.50-7.54(2H, m), 7.74(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.99(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 8.07(1H, d, J=1.3Hz)

Example 248

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-[(3-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (310)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 1.15 g of 6-carboxy-1-[(3-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (310) were formed from 1.34 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-[(3-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound 310:

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.59(3H, s), 5.64(2H, s), 7.03(1H, t, J=8.0Hz), 7.37(1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.42-7.48(3H, m), 7.56-7.68(4H, m), 7.79(1H, dd, J=1.4 and 8.4Hz), 8.11(1H, s), 12.7(1H, br s)

Example 249

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbonyl)-1-[(3-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (311)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.236 g of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbonyl)-1-[(3-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (311) were formed from 0.390 g of 6-carboxy-1-[(3-fluorobiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.351 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.297 g of 1-butanefulfonylamine and 0.329 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (311):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.84(3H, t), 1.38(2H, m), 1.65(2H, m), 2.57(3H, s), 3.48(2H, m), 5.63(2H, s), 6.93(1H, t, J=8.1Hz), 7.37(1H, m), 7.42-7.47(3H, m), 7.60(1H, dd, J=1.7 and 11.8Hz), 7.62-7.68(3H, m), 7.80(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 8.21(1H, d, J=1.3Hz), 11.90(1H, br s).

IR(Nujol) : 1681cm⁻¹

mp : 227-230°C

Example 250

Synthesis of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-[(2-methoxyethane)sulfonylcarbonyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (312)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.149 g of 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-[(2-methoxyethane)sulfonylcarbonyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (312) were formed from 0.300 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.272 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.258 g of (2-methoxyethane)sulfonamide and 0.256 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (312):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.87(3H, t, J=6.9Hz), 1.30(3H, t, J=8.0Hz), 2.89(2H, q, J=7.6Hz), 3.25-3.35(2H, m), 3.63-3.74(2H, m), 5.59(2H, s), 7.17(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.34(1H, t, J=7.0Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.58-7.68(5H, m), 7.82(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.23(1H, s), 11.88(1H, s).

IR(Nujol) : 1681cm⁻¹.

mp : 78-81°C

Example 251

Synthesis of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(1-pentanesulfonylcarbonyl)benzimidazole (313)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.196 g of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(1-pentanesulfonylcarbonyl)benzimidazole (313) were formed from 0.300 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.323 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.301 g of 1-pentanesulfonylamine and 0.303 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (313):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.81(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.22-1.30(2H, m), 1.32-1.39(2H, m), 1.64-1.71(2H, m), 2.50(3H, s), 3.50(2H, t, J=7.8Hz), 5.59(2H, s), 6.45(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.33(1H, dd, J=2.2 and 8.5Hz), 7.69(1H, d, J=8.5Hz),

7.76(1H, d, J=2.1Hz), 7.80(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.5Hz), 8.10(1H, s), 11.89(1H, s).

IR(Nujol) : 1682cm⁻¹.

mp : 213.2-214.6°C

5 Example 252

Synthesis of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-[1-[3-(methylthio)propane]sulfonylcarbamoyl]benzimidazole (314)

10 In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.178 g of 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-[1-[3-(methylthio)propane]sulfonylcarbamoyl]benzimidazole (314) were formed from 0.300 g of 6-carboxy-1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.272 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.285 g of 1-[(3-methylthio)propane]sulfonamide and 0.256 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (314):

15 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.30(3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.91-1.99(2H, m), 1.97(3H, s), 2.58(2H, t, J=7.2Hz), 2.90(2H, q, J=7.6Hz), 3.55-3.61(2H, m), 5.60(2H, s), 7.18(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.60-7.66(4H, m), 7.69(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.82(1H, dd, J=1.8 and 8.5Hz), 8.24(1H, s), 11.98(1H, s).

IR(Nujol) : 1671cm⁻¹.

mp : 89.9-91.2°C

20 Example 253

Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(1-pentanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (315)

25 In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.258 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(1-pentanesulfonylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (315) were formed from 0.300 g of 6-carboxy-1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.272 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.254 g of 1-pentanesulfonamide and 0.256 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (315):

30 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.87(3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 1.22-1.39(4H, m), 1.30(3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.66-1.73(2H, m), 2.90(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 3.51(2H, t, J=7.7Hz), 5.60(2H, s), 7.18(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.34(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.60-7.67(4H, m), 7.71(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.81(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.4Hz), 8.27(1H, d, J=1.1Hz), 11.92(1H, s).

IR(Nujol) : 1682cm⁻¹.

mp : 175.3-178.4°C

35 Example 254

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dicyclobenzyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole (316)

40 In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.253 g of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dicyclobenzyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole (316) were formed from 0.300 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.258 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.217 g of 1-butanefulfonylcarbamide and 0.262 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (316):

45 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.85(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.27(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.35-1.43(2H, m), 1.63-1.70(2H, m), 2.81(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 3.51(2H, t, J=7.7Hz), 5.59(2H, s), 6.41(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.32(1H, dd, J=2.0 and 8.4Hz), 7.73(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.76(1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.81(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.5Hz), 8.12(1H, d, J=1.6Hz), 11.87(1H, s).

IR(Nujol) : 1694cm⁻¹.

mp : 175.7-176.9°C

50 Example 255

Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-[1-(3-methyl)butanesulfonylcarbamoyl]benzimidazole (317)

55 In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.273 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-[1-(3-methyl)butanesulfonylcarbamoyl]benzimidazole (317) were formed from 0.300 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.272 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.254 g of 1-(3-methyl)butanesulfonamide and 0.256 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (317):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.85(6H, d, J=6.5Hz), 1.30(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.55-1.62(2H, m), 1.63-1.70(1H, m), 2.90(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 3.52(2H, t, J=7.9Hz), 5.61(2H, s), 7.19(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.61-7.66(4H, m), 7.71(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.81(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.4Hz), 8.27(1H, s), 11.95(1H, s).

IR(Nujol) : 1682cm⁻¹.

mp : 102.8-104.5°C

Example 256

Synthesis of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (318)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, ethyl 4-[N-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)acetylamino]-3-nitrobenzoate was formed from 1.525 g of ethyl 4-acetylamino-3-nitrobenzoate and 1.42 g of 2,4-dichlorobenzyl chloride. This compound was converted into 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole [(318), 1.476 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Properties of Compound (318):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.42(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.57(3H, s), 4.41(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.38(2H, s), 6.35(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.09(1H, dd, J=2.0 and 8.4Hz), 7.16(1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.49(1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.96(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.5Hz), 8.46(1H, s)

Example 257

Synthesis of 5-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (319)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 1.195 g of 5-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (319) were formed from 1.465 g of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (319):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.48(3H, s), 5.56(2H, s), 6.53(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.32(1H, dd, J=2.1 and 8.4Hz), 7.44(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.73(1H, d, J=2.2Hz), 7.78(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 8.15(1H, d, J=1.3Hz)

Example 258

Synthesis of 5-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (320)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.690 g of 5-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (320) were formed from 0.565 g of 5-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.504 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.427 g of 1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl and 0.473 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (320):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.87(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.41(2H, m), 1.68(2H, m), 2.49(3H, s), 3.52(2H, m), 5.58(2H, s), 6.53(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.33(1H, dd, J=2.1 and 8.4Hz), 7.50(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.73(1H, d, J=2.1Hz), 7.78(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.5Hz), 8.24(1H, s), 11.97(1H, br s).

IR(Nujol) : 1674cm⁻¹.

mp : 135.4-139.2°C

Example 259

Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole (321)

In the same manner as in Production Example 14, ethyl 4-[N-(4-biphenylmethyl)propionylamino]-3-nitrobenzoate was formed from 1.50 g of 4-propionylamino-3-nitrobenzoate and 1.67 g of 4-bromomethylbiphenyl. This compound was converted into 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole [(321), 1.23 g] in the same manner as in Example 24 without being purified.

Properties of Compound (321):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.40(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.45(3H, t, J=7.6Hz), 2.90(2H, q, J=7.6Hz), 4.39(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.40(2H, s), 7.09(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.27(1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.34(1H, m), 7.42(2H, t), 7.55-7.51(4H, m), 7.97(1H, dd,

J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 8.52(1H, d, J=1.2Hz)

Example 260

5 Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-5-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole (322)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.870 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-5-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole (322) were formed from 1.00 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (322):

10

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.30(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.90(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 5.57(2H, s), 7.17(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.33(1H, m), 7.42(2H, t), 7.63-7.57(5H, m), 7.81(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.6Hz), 8.18(1H, d, J=1.3Hz), 12.67(1H, br s)

Example 261

15

Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-5-(1-butanefulfonylcarbonyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole (323)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.305 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-5-(1-butanefulfonylcarbonyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole (323) were formed from 0.400 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-5-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.364 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.308 g of 1-butanefulfonylamine and 0.342 g of diazabicycloundecene.

20

Properties of Compound (323):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.86(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.30(3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.41(2H, m), 1.68(2H, m), 2.91(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 3.52(2H, m), 5.59(2H, s), 7.16(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.34(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.43(2H, t), 7.59-7.65(5H, m), 7.80(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.6Hz), 8.24(1H, d, J=1.6Hz), 11.97(1H, br s).

25

IR(Nujol) : 1682cm⁻¹.

mp : 142.9-144.4°C

Example 262

30

Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(2-methoxyethanesulfonylcarbonyl)benzimidazole (324)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.487 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(2-methoxyethanesulfonylcarbonyl)benzimidazole (324) were formed from 0.513 g of benzimidazole, 0.464 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.420 g of 2-methoxyethanesulfonylamine and 0.438 g of diazabicycloundecene.

35

Properties of Compound (324):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.30(3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.90(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 3.13(3H, s), 3.70-3.77(4H, m), 5.60(2H, s), 7.18(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.1Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.60-7.67(4H, m), 7.70(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.80(1H, dd, J=7.4 and 1.3Hz), 8.25(1H, s), 11.97(1H, s).

40

IR(Nujol) : 1684cm⁻¹.

mp : 94.6-97.2°C

Example 263

45

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethyl-1-[4-(4-fluorobenzoyloxy)benzyl]benzimidazole (325)

A mixture of 0.534 g of ethyl 4-propionylamino-3-aminobenzoate, 0.374 g of potassium carbonate, 0.800 g of 4-(4-fluorobenzoyloxy)benzyl bromide, 5 ml of ethyl acetate and 3 ml of water was stirred at 75°C for 16 hours. The organic layer was concentrated, and ethanol and 0.46 g of 36% hydrochloric acid were added to the residue. The mixture was stirred for 2 hours while being heat-refluxed. The reaction mixture was neutralized with potassium carbonate, and the solvent was then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was extracted with ethyl acetate and with water. The organic layer was concentrated under reduced pressure, and was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate at a ratio of 1:1) to give 0.228 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethyl-1-[4-(4-fluorobenzoyloxy)benzyl]benzimidazole (325).

55

Properties of Compound (325):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.40(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.42(3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.86(2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 4.38(2H, q, J=7.1Hz),

4.97(2H, s), 5.32(2H, s), 6.88(2H, d, J=8.7Hz), 6.98(2H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.05(2H, t, J=8.7Hz), 7.37(2H, m), 7.76(2H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.98(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.5Hz), 8.02(1H, s)

Example 264

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-2-ethyl-1-[4-(4-fluorobenzyloxy)benzyl]benzimidazole (326)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.175 g of 6-carboxy-2-ethyl-1-[4-(4-fluorobenzyloxy)benzyl]benzimidazole (326) were formed from 0.225 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethyl-1-[4-(4-fluorobenzyloxy)benzyl]benzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (326):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.28(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.89(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 5.01(2H, s), 5.47(2H, s), 6.95(2H, d), 7.03(2H, d), 7.18(2H, t), 7.45(2H, m), 7.62(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.77(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.05(1H, s)

Example 265

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefonylcarbamoyl)-2-ethyl-1-[4-(4-fluorobenzyloxy)benzyl]benzimidazole ammonium salt (327)

In the same manner as in Example 98, oily 6-(1-butanefonylcarbamoyl)-2-ethyl-1-[4-(4-fluorobenzyloxy)benzyl]benzimidazole was obtained from 0.171 g of 6-carboxy-2-ethyl-1-[4-(4-fluorobenzyloxy)benzyl]benzimidazole, 0.137 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.116 g of butanesulfonamide and 0.129 g of diazabicycloundecene. This compound was dissolved in ethyl acetate, and aqueous ammonia was added thereto. The solid material precipitated was separated through filtration, and was dried to give 0.140 g of 6-(1-butanefonylcarbamoyl)-2-ethyl-1-[4-(4-fluorobenzyloxy)benzyl]benzimidazole ammonium salt (327).

Properties of Compound (327):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.83(3H, t), 1.25(3H, t), 1.35(2H, m), 1.61(2H, m), 2.84(2H, q), 3.27(2H, m), 5.01(2H, s), 5.42(2H, s), 6.95(2H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.02(2H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.17(2H, t), 7.44(2H, m), 7.57(1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.82(1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 8.12(1H, s).
IR(Nujol) : 1614cm⁻¹.
mp : 105-115°C

Example 266

Synthesis of 1-[4-(3,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)benzyl]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole (328)

In the same manner as in Example 263, 2.01 g of 1-[4-(3,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)benzyl]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole (328) were formed from 1.81 g of ethyl 4-propionylamino-3-aminobenzoate and 3.18 g of 4-(3,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)benzyl bromide.

Properties of Compound (328):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.40(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.42(3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.86(2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 4.38(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.97(2H, s), 5.33(2H, s), 6.87(2H, m), 6.98(2H, m), 7.22(1H, dd, J=2.0 and 8.3Hz), 7.44(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.50(1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.76(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.97(1H, dd, J=1.6 and 8.6Hz), 8.02(1H, d, J=1.3Hz)

Example 267

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-[4-(3,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)benzyl]-2-ethylbenzimidazole (329)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 1.82 g of 6-carboxy-1-[4-(3,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)benzyl]-2-ethylbenzimidazole (329) were formed from 2.01 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethyl-1-[4-(4-fluorobenzyloxy)benzyl]benzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (329):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.28(3H, t), 2.88(2H, q), 5.05(2H, s), 5.47(2H, s), 6.96(2H, d), 7.04(2H, d), 7.39(1H, m), 7.68-7.59(3H, m), 7.78(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.06(1H, s)

Example 268

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[4-(3,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)benzyl]-2-ethylbenzimidazole ammonium salt (330)

Oily 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[4-(3,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)benzyl]-2-ethylbenzimidazole was obtained from 0.500 g of 6-carboxy-1-[4-(3,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)benzyl]-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.356 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.301 g of butanesulfonamide and 0.334 g of diazabicycloundecene in the same manner as in Example 98. This compound was dissolved in ethyl acetate, and aqueous ammonia was added thereto. The solid material precipitated was separated through filtration, and was dried to give 0.51 g of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[4-(3,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)benzyl]-2-ethylbenzimidazole ammonium salt (330).

Properties of Compound (330)

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.82(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.26(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.31(2H, m), 1.54(2H, m), 2.84(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 3.07(2H, m), 5.05(2H, s), 5.41(2H, s), 6.95(2H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.00(2H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.41(1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.46(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.62(1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.68(1H, s), 7.81(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.97(1H, s).

IR(Nujol) : 1540cm⁻¹.

mp : 99.5-101.5°C

Example 269

Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-6-(n-butylcarbamoyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole (331)

In the same manner as in Example 15, 0.295 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-6-(n-butylcarbamoyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole (331) were formed from 0.400 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-6-chlorocarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole hydrochloride, 0.233 g of n-butylamine and 0.215 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (331):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.95(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.37-1.48(2H, m), 1.45(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.57-1.63(2H, m), 2.90(2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 3.46(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.42(2H, s), 6.16(1H, br s), 7.10(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.34(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.42(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.48-7.57(5H, m), 7.87(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.91(1H, s).

IR(Nujol) : 1621cm⁻¹.

mp : 170.5-173.0°C

Example 270

Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(thiazol-2-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (332)

In the same manner as in Example 15, 0.179 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(thiazol-2-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (332) were obtained from 0.400 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-6-chlorocarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole hydrochloride, 0.318 g of 2-aminothiazole and 0.215 g of triethylamine.

Properties of Compound (332):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.48(3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.95(2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 5.41(2H, s), 6.94(1H, d, J=3.6Hz), 7.06(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.26(1H, d, J=3.6Hz), 7.32(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.39(2H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.47-7.51(4H, m), 7.87(2H, s), 8.03(1H, s), 11.15(1H, s).

IR(Nujol) : 1652cm⁻¹.

mp : 225.5-227.7°C

Example 271

Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(2-pyridylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (333)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.116 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(2-pyridylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (333) were formed from 0.300 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.272 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.158 g of 2-aminopyridine and 0.256 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (333):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.47(3H, t, J=7.6Hz), 2.93(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 5.45(2H, s), 7.06(1H, dd, J=7.4 and 4.9Hz), 7.10(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.34(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.42(2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.50-7.55(4H, m), 7.75(1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.79(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.86(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.98(1H, s), 8.30(1H, d, J=6.2Hz), 8.38(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.62(1H, s).
 IR(Nujol) : 1661cm⁻¹.
 mp : 160.9-164.5°C

Example 272

Synthesis of 6-(n-butylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-benzimidazole (334)

In the same manner as in Example 15, 0.156 g of 6-(n-butylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (334) were formed from 0.300 g of 6-chlorocarbonyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-ethylbenzimidazole hydrochloride, 0.181 g of triethylamine and 0.196 g of n-butylamine.

Properties of Compound (334):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 0.96(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.37-1.43(2H, m), 1.55-1.62(2H, m), 2.56(3H, s), 3.46(2H, q, J=7.0Hz), 5.40(2H, s), 6.15(1H, br s), 6.32(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.07(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.48(1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.55(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.74(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.79(1H, s).
 IR(Nujol) : 1636cm⁻¹.
 mp : 146.6-147.5°C

Production Example 53

Production of ethyl 3-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)amino]-4-nitrobenzoate

A solution of 0.877 g of 3-fluoro-4-nitrobenzoic acid and 2.25 g of sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)amine in 5ml of toluene was heat-refluxed for 15 hours. After the solvent was distilled off, the residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography to obtain crude 3-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)amino]-4-nitrobenzoic acid. To this compound were added 80 ml of ethanol and 3.0 g of 97% sulfuric acid, and the mixture was heat-refluxed for 4.5 hours. After ethanol was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was extracted with chloroform and with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate. The organic layer was dried, and was then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate at a ratio of 2:1) to give 1.16 g of ethyl 3-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)amino]-4-nitrobenzoate.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.35(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.64(3H, d, J=6.6Hz), 4.30(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.16(1H, m), 7.18-7.31(4H, m), 7.43(1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 8.21(1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 8.34(1H, d, J=5Hz)

Production Example 54

Production of ethyl 4-amino-3-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)amino]benzoate

A mixture of 1.14 g of ethyl 3-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)amino]-4-nitrobenzoate, 1.60 g of reduced iron, 10 ml of ethanol and 5 ml of acetic acid was heat-refluxed for 3 hours. The solid material was separated through filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was extracted with chloroform and with 10% hydrochloric acid. The organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate at a ratio of 2:1) to give 0.920 g of ethyl 4-amino-3-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)amino]benzoate.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.31(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.52(3H, d, J=6.7Hz), 3.56(1H, br s), 3.79(2H, br s), 4.23(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.96(1H, q, J=6.7Hz), 6.68(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.03(1H, d, J=1.7Hz), 7.15(1H, dd, J=2.1 and 8.4Hz), 7.35(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.39-7.43(2H, m)

Example 273

Synthesis of 1-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (335)

5 Acetyl chloride (0.243 g) was added dropwise to a solution of 0.900 g of ethyl 4-amino-3-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)amino]benzoate in 2.0 ml of pyridine at room temperature. Further, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and the reaction mixture was then extracted with the addition of ethyl acetate and excess 10% hydrochloric acid. The organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain crude ethyl 4-4-acetylamino-3-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)amino]benzoate. This crude product was immediately dissolved in 20 ml of ethanol, and 0.4 ml of 36% hydrochloric acid were added to the solution. The mixture was heat-refluxed for 2 hours. The reaction solution was neutralized with sodium hydrogencarbonate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was extracted with ethyl acetate and with water. The organic layer was concentrated, and the residue was purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol at a ratio of 20:1) to give 0.700 g of 1-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (335).

Properties of Compound (335):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.38(3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 2.01(3H, d, J=7.2Hz), 2.63(3H, s), 4.29-4.40(2H, m), 5.89(1H, q, J=7.2Hz), 7.37(1H, dd, J=2.2 and 8.4Hz), 7.40(1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.52(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.67(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.86(1H, s), 7.91(1H, dd, J=1.4 and 8.4Hz)

Example 274

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)]-2-methylbenzimidazole (336)

25 In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.447 g of 6-carboxy-1-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)]-2-methylbenzimidazole (336) were formed from 0.690 g of 1-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (336):

30 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.88(3H, d, J=6.8Hz), 2.57(3H, s), 6.01(1H, q), 7.55(1H, d), 7.60-7.67(3H, m), 7.71(1H, d), 7.89(1H, d), 12.65(1H, br s)

Example 275

35 Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)]-2-methylbenzimidazole (337)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)]-2-methylbenzimidazole (336) was formed from 0.433 g of 6-carboxy-1-[sec-(2,4-dichlorophenetyl)]-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.412 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.348 g of butanefulfonylcarbamoyl and 0.386 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (337)

40 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.84(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.34(2H, m), 1.57(2H, m), 1.89(3H, d, J=7.0Hz), 2.49(3H, s), 3.07(2H, m), 5.954(1H, q, J=7.0Hz), 7.41(1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.56(1H, dd, J=2.1 and 8.5Hz), 7.61(1H, d, J=2.1Hz), 7.74-7.79(3H, m)

Example 276

Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(phenylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (338)

50 In the same manner as in Example 15, 0.195 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(phenylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (338) were formed from 0.300 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-6-chlorocarbonyl-2-ethylbenzimidazole hydrochloride, 0.243 g of triethylamine and 0.224 g of aniline.

Properties of Compound (338):

55 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.47(3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.93(2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 5.44(2H, s), 7.11(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.14(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.32-7.38(3H, m), 7.42(2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.51-7.54(4H, m), 7.63(2H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.69(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.6Hz), 7.84(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.88(1H, br s), 7.97(1H, d, J=1.5Hz).
IR(Nujol) : 1647cm⁻¹.

mp : 171.7-172.1°C

Example 277

5 Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (339)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.234 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (339) were formed from 0.300 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.272 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.170 g of 2-amino-1,3,4-thiadiazole and 0.256 g of diazabicycloundecene.

10 Properties of Compound (339):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.45(3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.90(2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 5.53(2H, s), 7.07(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.33(1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.40(2H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.52(4H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.89(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 8.08(1H, dd, J=8.5 and 1.6Hz), 8.34(1H, d, J=1.2Hz), 7.60(1H, s), 12.26(1H, s).

15 IR(Nujol) : 1654cm⁻¹.

mp : 230.1-233.4°C

Example 278

20 Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(tetrazol-5-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (340)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.135 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(tetrazol-5-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (340) were formed from 0.300 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.272 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.143 g of 5-aminotetrazole and 0.256 g of diazabicycloundecene.

25 Properties of Compound (340)

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.32(3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.93(2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 5.61(2H, s), 7.23(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.34(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.60-7.67(4H, m), 7.76(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.98(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 8.46(1H, s), 12.30(1H, s), 15.95(1H, s).

30 IR(Nujol) : 1667cm⁻¹.

mp : 273.1-276.0°C

Example 279

35 Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(1,3,4-triazol-3-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (341)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.224 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(1,3,4-triazol-3-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (341) were formed from 0.300 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.272 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.141 g of 3-amino-1,3,4-triazole and 0.256 g of diazabicycloundecene.

40 Properties of Compound (341):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.33(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.93(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 5.63(2H, s), 7.17(2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.60-7.65(4H, m), 7.78(1H, d, J=7.4Hz), 7.83(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 1.5Hz), 8.17(1H, s), 8.77(2H, s), 12.04(1H, s).

45 IR(Nujol) : 1675cm⁻¹.

mp : 263.4-266.2°C

Example 280

50 Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(1,3,4-triazol-2-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (342)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.215 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(1,3,4-triazol-2-ylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (342) were formed from 0.300 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.272 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.141 g of 2-amino-1,3,4-triazole and 0.256 g of diazabicycloundecene.

55 Properties of Compound (342):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.31(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.92(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 5.60(2H, s), 7.23(2H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.34(1H, t, J=7.2Hz), 7.44(2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.60-7.66(4H, m), 7.72(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.78(1H, s), 7.95(1H, d, J=8.3Hz),

8.43(1H, s), 11.85(1H, s), 13.57(1H, s).

IR(Nujol) : 1659cm⁻¹.

mp : 306.0°C(decomp.)

5 Example 281

Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(3-pyridylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (343)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.229 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(3-pyridylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (343) were formed from 0.300 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.272 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.158 g of 3-aminopyridine and 0.256 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (343):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.47(3H, t, J=7.6Hz), 2.93(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 5.45(2H, s), 7.10(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.29-7.36(2H, m), 7.42(2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.53(4H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.71(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.86(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.97(1H, s), 7.98(1H, s), 8.27(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.38(1H, d, J=4.7Hz), 8.68(1H, d, J=2.5Hz).

IR(Nujol) : 1644cm⁻¹.

mp : 124.4-125.6°C

20 Example 282

Synthesis of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(2-pyridylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (344)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.152 g of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-(2-pyridylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (344) were formed from 0.300 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.290 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.168 g of 2-aminopyridine and 0.273 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (344):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 2.59(3H, s), 5.43(2H, s), 6.33(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.06-7.10(2H, m), 7.50(1H, d, J=2.1Hz), 7.77(1H, dt, J=7.8 and 1.9Hz), 7.83(2H, s), 7.88(1H, s), 8.30(1H, d, J=3.7Hz), 8.39(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 8.78(1H, s).

IR(Nujol) : 1666cm⁻¹.

mp : 157.4-159.2°C

Example 283

35

Synthesis of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(4-pyridylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (345)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.153 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-2-ethyl-6-(4-pyridylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole (345) were formed from 0.300 g of 1-(4-biphenylmethyl)-6-carboxy-2-ethylbenzimidazole, 0.272 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.158 g of 4-aminopyridine and 0.256 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (345):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.48(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.94(2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 5.45(2H, s), 7.10(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.35(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.42(2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.50-7.60(6H, m), 7.691(1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.86(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.95(1H, s), 7.99(1H, br s), 8.54(2H, dd, J=1.5 and 4.7Hz).

IR(Nujol) : 1663cm⁻¹.

mp : 123.8-124.7°C

Production Example 55

50

Production of N-(1-butanesulfonyl)-4-acetylamino-3-nitrobenzamide

In the same manner as in Production Example 28, 10.75 g of N-(1-butanesulfonyl)-4-acetylamino-3-nitrobenzamide were formed from 10.0 g of 4-acetylamino-3-nitrobenzoic acid, 9.40 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 7.92 g of 1-butanesulfonamide and 8.83 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.87(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.37-1.44(2H, m), 1.64-1.71(2H, m), 2.12(3H, s), 3.52(2H, t,

J=7.7Hz), 7.83(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 8.21(1H, dd, J=8.6 and 2.1Hz), 8.54(1H, d, J=2.2Hz), 10.56(1H, s), 12.32(1H, s)

Production Example 56

5 Production of N-(1-butanesulfonyl)-3-amino-4-acetylaminobenzamide

In the same manner as in Production Example 29, 3.04 g of N-(1-butanesulfonyl)-3-amino-4-acetylaminobenzamide were formed from 10.75 g of N-(1-butanesulfonyl)-4-acetylmino-3-nitrobenzamide.

Properties of the compound:

10

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.86(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.33-1.43(2H, m), 1.59-1.67(2H, m), 2.07(3H, s), 3.37-3.43(2H, t), 5.12(2H, br s), 7.13(1H, dd, J=8.2 and 2.0Hz), 7.28(1H, d, J=1.9Hz), 7.40(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 9.09(1H, s)

Production Example 57

15

Production of N-(1-butanesulfonyl)-4-acetylmino-3-[4-(2-pyridyl)benzylamino]benzamide

In the same manner as in Production Example 32, crude N-(1-butanesulfonyl)-4-acetylmino-3-[4-(2-pyridyl)benzylamino]benzamide was obtained from 0.400 g of N-(1-butanesulfonyl)-3-amino-4-acetylaminobenzamide and 0.477 g of 2-[(4-bromomethyl)phenyl]pyridine. This product was used in the subsequent reaction at once.

20

Example 284

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[4-(2-pyridyl)benzyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (346)

25

In the same manner as in Example 183, 0.330 g of 6-(1-butanesulfonylcarbamoyl)-1-[4-(2-pyridyl)benzyl]-2-methylbenzimidazole (346) were obtained from the above-mentioned crude N-(1-butanesulfonyl)-4-acetylmino-3-[4-(2-pyridyl)benzylamino]benzamide.

Properties of Compound (346):

30

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.82(3H, t), 1.37-1.46(2H, m), 1.54-1.61(2H, m), 2.54(3H, s), 3.10(2H, t, J=7.8Hz), 5.57(2H, s), 7.19(2H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.33(1H, t, J=5.2Hz), 7.49(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.82-7.87(2H, m), 7.90(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 8.01-8.04(3H, m), 8.63(1H, d, J=4.2Hz).

IR(Nujol) : 1722cm⁻¹.

35

mp : 292.4-298.4°C

Example 285

Synthesis of 5-chlorosulfonyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (347) and 6-chlorosulfonyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (348)

40

Four grams of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole were added to 20 ml of chlorosulfonic acid in an ice bath, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours and then at 80°C for 1.5 hours. The reaction solution was poured into ice water, and the gum solid material precipitated was separated through filtration to obtain a mixture of 5-chlorosulfonyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (347) and 6-chlorosulfonyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (348). This mixture was used in the subsequent reaction at once.

45

Example 286

Synthesis of 5-aminosulfonyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (349) and 6-aminosulfonyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (350)

50

The mixture of 5-chlorosulfonyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole and 6-chlorosulfonyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole obtained in Example 285 was immediately treated with 100 ml of 25% aqueous ammonia at room temperature for 1 hour. The solid material was separated through filtration to give 2.68 g of a mixture of 5-aminosulfonyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (349) and 6-aminosulfonyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (350) at a ratio of 1:1.

55

Properties of the mixture of Compound (349) and Compound (350):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CD}_3\text{OD}, \delta)$: 2.52(3/2H, s), 2.54(3/2H, s), 5.54(2H, s), 6.55(1H, d, $J=6.9\text{Hz}$), 7.17(1H, d, $J=8.0\text{Hz}$), 7.52(1H, s), 7.65-7.78(2H, m), 7.82(1/2H, s), 8.11(1/2H, s)

Example 287

Synthesis of 6-(n-valerylaminosulfonyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (351) and 5-(n-valerylaminosulfonyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (352)

One milliliter of chloroform, 0.56 ml of triethylamine and 0.326 g of n-valeryl chloride were added to 0.500 g of a mixture of 5-aminosulfonyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole and 6-aminosulfonyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole at a ratio of 1:1, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 48 hours. Water was added thereto to stop the reaction, and the reaction solution was extracted with chloroform. The organic layer was dried, concentrated, and purified through silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of chloroform and methanol at a ratio of 95:5) to obtain 0.360 g of a mixture of 5-(n-valerylaminosulfonyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole and 6-(n-valerylaminosulfonyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole. Further, this mixture was purified through medium-pressure silica-gel column chromatography (eluent: a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate at a ratio of from 1:1 to 1:4) to give 0.95 g of 6-(n-valerylaminosulfonyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (351) and 0.45 g of 5-(n-valerylaminosulfonyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (352).

Properties of Compound (351):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{DMSO}-d_6, \delta)$: 0.74(3H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 1.09(2H, m), 1.31(2H, m), 2.10(2H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 2.53(3H, s), 5.63(2H, s), 6.60(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.32(1H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 7.67-7.77(3H, m), 7.93(1H, s).

IR(KBr) : 1726cm^{-1} .

mp : $207.5-210.0^\circ\text{C}$.

Mass(FD) : m/e 454($M+1$)

Properties of Compound (352):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{DMSO}-d_6, \delta)$: 0.75(3H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 1.11(2H, m), 1.34(2H, m), 2.13(2H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 2.51(3H, s), 5.59(2H, s), 6.57(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.32(1H, dd, $J=2.2$ and 8.4Hz), 7.57(1H, d, $J=8.6\text{Hz}$), 7.67(1H, dd, $J=1.6$ and 8.6Hz), 7.73(1H, d, $J=2.1\text{Hz}$), 8.08(1H, d, $J=1.6\text{Hz}$).

IR(KBr) : 1706cm^{-1} .

mp : $213.0-216.0^\circ\text{C}$

Example 288

Synthesis of 2,4-dimethyl-6-methoxycarbonylbenzimidazole

Methyl 4-acetylamino-5-amino-3-methylbenzoate was obtained from methyl 4-amino-3-methylbenzoate by the method described in Journal of Medicinal Chemistry, 1993, 36, 4040 - 4051. Subsequently, this compound was heat-refluxed in acetic acid for 2 hours to give 2,4-dimethyl-6-methoxycarbonylbenzimidazole.

Properties of the compound:

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 2.55(3H, s), 2.62(3H, s), 3.91(3H, s), 7.74(1H, s), 8.07(1H, s), 10.65(1H, br s)

Example 289

Synthesis of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2,4-dimethyl-6-methoxycarbonylbenzimidazole (353)

A mixture containing 0.900 g of 2,4-dimethyl-6-methoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 1.20 g of 2,4-dichlorobenzyl chloride, 0.200 g of sodium iodide, 0.610 g of potassium carbonate and 4 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was stirred at 80°C for 16 hours. After the organic solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was extracted with ethyl acetate and with water. The organic layer was concentrated, and was crystallized with the addition of hexane. The crystals were separated through filtration, and were dried to give 1.08 g of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2,4-dimethyl-6-methoxycarbonylbenzimidazole (353).

Properties of Compound (353):

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta)$: 2.58(3H, s), 2.71(3H, s), 3.90(3H, s), 5.39(2H, s), 6.30(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.07(1H, dd, $J=8.4$

and 2.0Hz), 7.49(1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.75(1H, s), 7.81(1H, s)

Example 290

5 Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2,4-dimethylbenzimidazole (354)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.435 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2,4-dimethylbenzimidazole (354) were formed from 0.510 g of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2,4-dimethyl-6-methoxycarbonylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (354):

10

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.51(3H, s), 2.55(3H, s), 5.57(2H, s), 6.49(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.31(1H, dd, J=8.4 and 2.2Hz), 7.62(1H, s), 7.72(1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.78(1H, s), 12.64(1H, br s)

Example 291

15

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbonyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2,4-dimethylbenzimidazole (355)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.468 g of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbonyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2,4-dimethylbenzimidazole (355) were formed from 0.417 g of 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2,4-dimethylbenzimidazole, 0.290 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.246 g of 1-butanefulfonylamine and 0.273 g of diazabicycloundecene.

20

Properties of Compound (355):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.84(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.38(2H, m), 1.64(2H, m), 2.49(3H, s), 2.56(3H, s), 3.48(2H, t), 5.55(2H, s), 6.40(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.31(1H, dd, J=2.1 and 8.4Hz), 7.64(1H, s), 7.75(1H, d, J=2.1Hz), 7.90(1H, s), 11.79(1H, br s).

25

IR(Nujol) : 1682cm⁻¹.

mp : 180.0-181.5°C

Production Example 58

30

Production of 4-phenoxybenzyl alcohol

Sodium borohydride (0.48 g) was added to a solution of 4.96 g of 4-phenoxybenzaldehyde in 20 ml of ethanol, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. After the completion of the concentration, the residue was extracted with tert-butylmethyl ether and with water. The organic layer was concentrated to give 4.84 g of 4-phenoxybenzyl alcohol.

35

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 4.67(2H, d, J=5.7Hz), 6.99-7.01(4H, m), 7.10(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.32-7.35(4H, m)

40

Production Example 59

Production of 4-phenoxybenzyl chloride

Thionyl chloride (13.34 g) was added to 4.06 g of 4-phenoxybenzyl alcohol, and the mixture was stirred at 80°C for 3.5 hours. After the completion of the concentration, the reaction mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and with water. The organic layer was concentrated to give 4.31 g of 4-phenoxybenzyl chloride.

45

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 4.58(2H, s), 6.96-7.03(4H, m), 7.11-7.14(1H, m), 7.32-7.37(4H, m)

50

Example 292

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(4-phenoxybenzyl)benzimidazole (356)

55

In the same manner as in Example 263, 0.49 g of ethyl 4-acetylamino-3-[(4-phenoxy)benzylamino]benzoate were obtained from 0.56 g of ethyl 4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzoate, 0.33 g of sodium carbonate, 0.12 g of sodium iodide and 0.66 g of 4-phenoxybenzyl chloride. Subsequently, this compound was converted into 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(4-

phenoxybenzyl)benzimidazole [(356), 0.44 g].

Properties of ethyl 4-acetylamino-3-[(4-phenoxy)benzylamino]benzoate:

¹H-NMR(CDCI₃, δ) : 1.37(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.04(3H, s), 4.18(1H, br s), 4.31-4.36(4H, m), 6.98-7.02(4H, m), 7.09-7.12(1H, m), 7.27-7.51(8H, m)

Properties of Compound (356):

¹H-NMR(CDCI₃, δ) : 1.40(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.61(3H, s), 4.39(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.35(2H, s), 6.92-6.95(2H, m), 6.97-7.00(2H, m), 7.02(2H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.09-7.13(1H, m), 7.31-7.34(2H, m), 7.72(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.98(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.4Hz), 8.04(1H, d, J=1.2Hz)

Example 293

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(4-phenoxybenzyl)benzimidazole (357)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.37 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(4-phenoxybenzyl)benzimidazole (357) were formed from 0.44 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(4-phenoxy)benzylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (357):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.57(3H, s), 5.54(2H, s), 6.95-6.97(4H, m), 7.09-7.13(3H, m), 7.33-7.37(2H, m), 7.60(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.78(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.07(1H, s), 12.72(1H, br s)

Example 294

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-1-(4-phenoxybenzyl)benzimidazole (358)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.19 g of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-1-(4-phenoxybenzyl)benzimidazole (358) were obtained from 0.36 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(4-phenoxybenzyl)benzimidazole, 0.24 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.21 g of 1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl and 0.23 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (358):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.85(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.40(2H, m), 1.68(2H, m), 2.54(3H, s), 3.52(2H, t, J=7.8Hz), 5.51(2H, s), 6.96-6.98(4H, m), 7.11(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.17(2H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.34-7.37(2H, m), 7.64(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.79(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.5Hz), 8.24(1H, s), 11.92(1H, br s).
IR(Nujol) : 1632cm⁻¹.
mp : 183.4-184.4°C

Example 295

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)benzimidazole (359)

In the same manner as in Example 263, 0.656 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)benzimidazole (359) were formed from 0.600 g of ethyl 4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzoate, 0.450 g of potassium carbonate, 0.122 g of sodium iodide and 0.413 g of 2-chloromethylpyridine. This compound was used in the subsequent reaction at once.

Example 296

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)benzimidazole (360)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.532 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)benzimidazole (360) were formed from 0.656 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)benzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (360):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.56(3H, s), 5.56(2H, s), 7.22(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.28(1H, dd, J=5.0 and 7.1Hz), 7.45(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.74-7.79(2H, m), 7.95(1H, s), 8.48(1H, d, J=8.5Hz).

Example 297

Synthesis of 1-(butanesulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)benzimidazole (361)

- 5 In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.142 g of 1-(butanesulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)benzimidazole (361) were formed from 0.500 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)benzimidazole, 0.394 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.334 g of 1-butanefulfonamide and 0.370 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (361):

- 10 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 0.83(3H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 1.28-1.36(2H, m), 1.52-1.58(2H, m), 2.55(3H, s), 3.06(2H, t, $J=7.9\text{Hz}$), 5.56(2H, s), 7.17(1H, d, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 7.29(1H, dd, $J=4.2$ and 7.3Hz), 7.43(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.77(1H, dt, $J=1.8$ and 7.7Hz), 7.81(1H, dd, $J=1.4$ and 8.4Hz), 7.96(1H, s), 8.50(1H, d, $J=4.7\text{Hz}$)
 IR(Nujol) : 1674cm^{-1} .
 mp : 139°C (decomp.)

Example 298

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole (362)

- 20 In the same manner as in Example 263, 0.51 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(4-nitrobenzyl)benzimidazole (362) were formed from 0.67 g of ethyl 4-acetyl amino-3-aminobenzoate, 0.39 g of sodium carbonate, 0.14 g of sodium iodide and 0.78 g of 4-nitrodibenzyl bromide.

Properties of Compound (362):

- 25 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3 , δ) : 1.39(3H, t, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 2.59(3H, s), 4.38(2H, q, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 5.49(2H, s), 7.20(2H, d, $J=8.6\text{Hz}$), 7.76(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.94(1H, d, $J=1.1\text{Hz}$), 8.01(1H, dd, $J=1.4$ and 8.5Hz), 8.20(2H, d, $J=8.6\text{Hz}$).

Example 299

- 30 Synthesis of 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (363)

- Six milliliters of ethanol and 0.8 ml of acetic acid were added to 0.50 g of 1-(4-nitrobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole and 0.47 g of reduced iron, and the mixture was refluxed for 4.5 hours. The reaction mixture was extracted with water and with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water, dried, and then concentrated under reduced pressure to give 0.46 g of 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (363).

Properties of Compound (363):

- 40 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3 , δ) : 1.40(3H, t, $J=7.2\text{Hz}$), 2.59(3H, s), 4.38(2H, q, $J=7.2\text{Hz}$), 5.25(2H, s), 6.61(2H, d, $J=8.6\text{Hz}$), 6.87(2H, d, $J=8.6\text{Hz}$), 7.71(1H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 7.96(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 8.4Hz), 8.05(1H, d, $J=1.3\text{Hz}$).

Example 300

Synthesis of 1-[(4-benzoylamino)benzyl]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (364)

- 45 A solution of 0.25 g of benzoyl chloride in 4 ml of chloroform was added to a solution of 0.45 g of 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole and 0.15 g of pyridine in 8 ml of chloroform, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was extracted with water and then with chloroform. The organic layer was concentrated under reduced pressure to give 0.33 g of 1-[(4-benzoylamino)benzyl]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (364).

- 50 Properties of Compound (364)

- 55 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3 , δ) : 1.40(3H, t, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 2.59(3H, s), 4.38(2H, q, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 5.37(2H, s), 7.06(2H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.46-7.50(2H, m), 7.53-7.57(1H, m), 7.61(2H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.72(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.84-7.86(2H, m), 7.89(1H, br s), 7.98(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 8.5Hz), 8.03(1H, s).

Example 301

Synthesis of 1-[(4-benzoylamino)benzyl]-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole (365)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.28 g of 1-[(4-benzoylamino)benzyl]-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole (365) were formed from 0.31 g of 1-[(4-benzoylamino)benzyl]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of the compound (365):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.58(3H, s), 5.52(2H, s), 7.12(2H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.48-7.52(2H, m), 7.54-7.58(1H, m), 7.61(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.73(2H, d, $J=8.6\text{Hz}$), 7.79(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 8.4Hz), 7.90-7.92(2H, m), 8.07(1H, d, $J=1.2\text{Hz}$), 10.26(1H, s), 12.73(1H, br s).

Example 302

Synthesis of 1-[(4-benzoylamino)benzyl]-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (366)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.14 g of 1-[(4-benzoylamino)benzyl]-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (366) were obtained from 0.26 g of 1-[(4-benzoylamino)benzyl]-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.17 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.14 g of 1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl and 0.16 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (366):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 0.85(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 1.40(2H, m), 1.68(2H, m), 2.56(3H, s), 3.52(2H, t, $J=7.8\text{Hz}$), 5.50(2H, s), 7.15(2H, d, $J=8.6\text{Hz}$), 7.50(2H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.55-7.59(1H, m), 7.64(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.74(2H, d, $J=8.6\text{Hz}$), 7.79(1H, dd, $J=1.6$ and 8.5Hz), 7.90-7.92(2H, m), 8.24(1H, d, $J=1.3\text{Hz}$), 10.27(1H, s), 11.92(1H, br s).

IR(Nujol) : 1693cm^{-1} .

mp : $267.5-268.1^\circ\text{C}$.

Example 303

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(2-phenylethenyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (367)

In the same manner as in Example 263, 0.320 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(2-phenylethenyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (367) were formed from 0.405 g of ethyl 4-acetylamino-3-aminobenzoate, 0.253 g of potassium carbonate, 0.082 g of sodium iodide and 0.500 g of 4-chloromethylstilbene.

Properties of Compound (367):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3 , δ) : 1.40(3H, t, $J=7.2\text{Hz}$), 2.6(3H, s), 4.38(2H, q, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 5.38(2H, s), 7.01-7.09(4H, m), 7.26(1H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.35(2H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.45(2H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$), 7.49(2H, d, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.73(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.99(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 8.4Hz), 8.30(1H, d, $J=1.2\text{Hz}$).

Example 304

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(2-phenylethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (368)

Five-percent palladium on carbon was added to a solution of 0.320 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(2-phenylethenyl)benzyl]benzimidazole in 10 ml of ethanol in a nitrogen atmosphere, and the mixture was stirred in a hydrogen atmosphere for 23 hours. The solid material was separated through filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated to give 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(2-phenylethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (368). This compound was used in the subsequent reaction at once.

Example 305

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[4-(2-phenylethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (369)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.242 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[4-(2-phenylethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (369) were formed from 0.283 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(2-phenylethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (369)

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.56(3H, s), 2.82(4H, s), 5.51(2H, s), 7.02(2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.11-7.27(7H, m), 7.61(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.78(1H, dd, J=1.5 and 8.04(1H, s), 12.72(1H, s).

Example 306

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbonyl)-2-methyl-[4-(2-phenylethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (370)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.249 g of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbonyl)-2-methyl-[4-(2-phenylethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (370) were formed from 0.225 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[4-(2-phenylethyl)benzyl]-benzimidazole, 1.214 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.167 g of 1-butanefulfonylamine and 0.185 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (370):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.86(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.35-1.42(2H, m), 1.63-1.71(2H, m), 2.53(3H, s), 2.83(4H, s), 3.52(2H, t, J=7.7Hz), 5.49(2H, s), 7.04(2H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.12-7.25(7H, m), 7.64(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.79(1H, dd, J=1.7 and 8.5Hz), 8.22(1H, d, J=1.3Hz), 11.92(1H, s).

IR(Nujol) : 1682cm⁻¹.

mp : 95.4-99.0°C.

Production Example 60

Production of 4-benzoylbenzyl bromide

In the same manner as in Production Example 48, 5.28 g of 4-benzoylbenzyl bromide were formed from 3.92 g of 4-methylbenzophenone, 4.28 g of N-bromosuccinimide and 0.40 g of 2,2'-azobisisobutyronitrile.

Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 4.54(2H, s), 7.47-7.52(4H, m), 7.58-7.62(1H, m), 7.77-7.82(4H, m).

Example 307

Synthesis of 1-[(4-benzoyl)benzyl]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (371)

In the same manner as in Example 263, 0.70 g of 1-[(4-benzoyl)benzyl]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (371) were formed from 0.56 g of ethyl 4-acetyl-3-aminobenzoate, 0.33 g of sodium carbonate, 0.11 g of sodium iodide and 0.83 g of 4-benzoylbenzyl bromide.

Properties of Compound (371):

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ) : 1.40(3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 2.61(3H, s), 4.39(2H, q, J=7.2Hz), 5.47(2H, s), 7.14(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.45-7.48(2H, m), 7.56-7.60(1H, m), 7.74-7.77(5H, m), 7.99-8.02(2H, m).

Example 308

Synthesis of 1-[(4-benzoyl)benzyl]-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole (372)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.55 g of 1-[(4-benzoyl)benzyl]-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole (372) were formed from 0.68 g of 1-[(4-benzoyl)benzyl]-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (372):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 2.57(3H, s), 5.71(2H, s), 7.25(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.52(2H, t, J=7.7Hz), 7.62-7.66(2H, m), 7.68-7.72(4H, m), 7.80(1H, dd, J=1.3 and 8.4Hz), 8.08(1H, d, J=1.1Hz), 12.72(1H, br s).

Example 309

Synthesis of 1-[(4-benzoyl)benzyl]-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbonyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (373)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.13 g of 1-[(4-benzoyl)benzyl]-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbonyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (373) were formed from 0.52 g of 1-[(4-benzoyl)benzyl]-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.34 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.29 g of 1-butanefulfonylamine and 0.32 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (373):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 0.84(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 1.38(2H, m), 1.66(2H, m), 2.54(3H, s), 3.48(2H, t, $J=7.7\text{Hz}$), 5.67(2H, s), 7.27(2H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$), 7.51-7.55(2H, m), 7.63-7.73(6H, m), 7.81(1H, dd, $J=1.6$ and 8.5Hz), 8.21(1H, d, $J=1.4\text{Hz}$).

IR(Nujol) : 1660cm^{-1} .

mp : $111.0-112.4^\circ\text{C}$.

Mass(FAB) : m/e 490($M+1$).

Example 310

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-[4-(2-phenylethenyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (374)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.237 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-[4-(2-phenylethenyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (374) were formed from 0.500 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(2-phenylethenyl)benzyl]benzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (374):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.59(3H, s), 5.58(2H, s), 7.12(2H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$), 7.21(2H, s), 7.26(1H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.36(2H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.57(4H, d, $J=8.0\text{Hz}$), 7.62(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.79(1H, dd, $J=1.5$ and 8.4Hz), 8.07(1H, d, $J=1.2\text{Hz}$), 12.73(1H, s).

Example 311

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-[4-(2-phenylethenyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (375)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.239 g of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-[4-(2-phenylethenyl)benzyl]benzimidazole (375) were formed from 0.237 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-[4-(2-phenylethenyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 0.209 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.176 g of 1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl and 0.195 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (375):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 0.86(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 1.35-1.43(2H, m), 1.63-1.70(2H, m), 2.56(3H, s), 3.52(2H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 5.55(2H, s), 7.15(2H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$), 7.22(2H, s), 7.26(1H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 7.36(2H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.57(1H, d, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 7.58(1H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$), 7.66(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.80(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 8.24(1H, s), 11.93(1H, brs).

IR(Nujol) : 1680cm^{-1} .

mp : $140.3-143.4^\circ\text{C}$.

Example 312

Synthesis of 1-(dibenzofuran-2-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (376)

In the same manner as in Example 263, 0.47 g of 1-(dibenzofuran-2-ylmethyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole (376) were formed from 0.480 g of ethyl 4-acetylaminobenzoate, 0.274 g of sodium carbonate, 0.097 g of sodium iodide and 0.56 g of 2-bromomethyldibenzofuran.

Properties of Compound (376):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3 , δ) : 1.38(3H, t, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 2.62(3H, s), 4.36(2H, q, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 5.54(2H, s), 7.19(1H, dd, $J=1.6$ and 8.5Hz), 7.32(1H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.43-7.59(4H, m), 7.76(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.85(1H, d, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 8.00(1H, dd, $J=1.3$ and 8.4Hz), 8.07(1H, d, $J=1.2\text{Hz}$).

Example 313

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-1-(dibenzofuran-2-ylmethyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (377)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.336 g of 6-carboxy-1-(dibenzofuran-2-ylmethyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (377) were formed from 0.46 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (377):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.63(3H, s), 5.71(2H, s), 7.27(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.36(1H, t, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$), 7.50(1H, t), 7.61-

7.68(3H, m), 7.78(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.97(1H, s), 7.07-8.11(2H, m).

Example 314

5 Synthesis of 1-(dibenzofuran-2-ylmethyl)-6-(1-butanefonylcarbonyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (378)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.249 g of 1-(dibenzofuran-2-ylmethyl)-6-(1-butanefonylcarbonyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (378) were formed from 0.255 g of 6-carboxy-1-(dibenzofuran-2-ylmethyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 0.197 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.167 g of 1-butanefonylamine and 0.185 g of diazabicycloundecene.

10 Properties of Compound (378):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.81(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.36(2H, m), 1.65(2H, m), 2.60(3H, s), 3.50(2H, t, J=7.7Hz), 5.69(2H, s), 7.29(1H, dd, J=1.96 and 8.7Hz), 7.34-7.38(1H, m), 7.48-7.52(1H, m), 7.63-7.68(3H, m), 7.81(1H, dd, J=1.7 and 8.5Hz), 8.00(1H, d, J=1.4Hz), 8.94(1H, d, J=7.1Hz), 8.28(1H, d, J=1.4Hz), 12.70(1H, br s).

15 IR(Nujol) : 1682cm⁻¹.

mp : 224.1-229.8°C.

Production Example 61

20 Production of N-1-butanefonyl-3-acetylmino-4-nitrobenzamide

In the same manner as in Production Example 28, 6.30 g of N-1-butanefonyl-3-acetylmino-4-nitrobenzamide were obtained from 5.15 g of 3-acetylmino-4-nitrobenzoic acid, 5.59 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 4.73 g of 1-butanefonylamine and 5.25 g of diazabicycloundecene.

25 Properties of the compound:

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.87(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.40(2H, m), 1.68(2H, m), 2.07(3H, s), 3.51(2H, t), 7.83(1H, dd, J=1.8 and 8.5Hz), 8.03(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 8.07(1H, d, J=1.8Hz), 10.43(1H, s), 12.64(1H, br s).

30 Production Example 62

Production of N-1-butanefonyl-3-amino-4-nitrobenzamide

A mixture containing 6.30 g of N-1-butanefonyl-3-acetylmino-4-nitrobenzamide, a 10% sodium hydroxide aqueous solution, 300 ml of ethanol and 200 ml of water was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours and then at 50°C for 3 hours. The solvent was distilled off to approximately a half volume, and the residue was adjusted to a pH of 2 with 10% hydrochloric acid. The crystals precipitated were collected, and were dried under reduced pressure to give 5.22 g of N-1-butanefonyl-3-amino-4-nitrobenzamide.

Properties of the compound:

40 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.87(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.40(2H, m), 1.66(2H, m), 3.49(2H, m), 6.99(1H, dd, J=1.8 and 9.0Hz), 7.49(1H, d, J=1.8Hz), 7.55(2H, br s), 8.04(1H, d, J=9.0Hz), 12.28(1H, br s).

Production Example 63

45 Production of N-1-butanefonyl-3-(2,4-dichlorobenzylamino)-4-nitrobenzamide

A solution containing 1.10 g of N-1-butanefonyl-3-amino-4-nitrobenzamide, 0.273 g of sodium iodide, 1.54 g of potassium carbonate, 2.17 g of 2,4-dichlorobenzyl chloride and 10 ml of methanol was stirred at 60°C for 24 hours. Further, 2.00 g of 2,4-dichlorobenzyl chloride were added thereto, and the mixture was heated at 60°C for 36 hours. To the reaction solution were added ethyl acetate and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate, and N-1-butanefonyl-3-(2,4-dichlorobenzylamino)-4-nitrobenzamide was extracted in the aqueous layer. The organic layer was concentrated to give 0.885 g of N-1-butanefonyl-3-(2,4-dichlorobenzylamino)-4-nitrobenzamide.

Properties of the compound:

55 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.81(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.29(2H, m), 1.49(2H, m), 2.97(2H, m), 4.66(2H, d, J=6.0Hz), 7.22(1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.27(1H, s), 7.31(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.37(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.65(1H, s), 8.04(1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 8.57(1H, t).

Production Example 64

Production of N-1-butanesulfonyl-4-amino-3-(2,4-dichlorobenzylamino)benzamide

N-1-butanesulfonyl-3-(2,4-dichlorobenzylamino)-4-nitrobenzamide (0.505 g) was added to a mixture of 1.32 g of sodium hydrosulfite, 1 ml of ethanol, 1 ml of tetrahydrofuran and 1 ml of water at room temperature. The mixture was heat-refluxed for 40 minutes. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and water was added to the residue. The solid material precipitated was collected, and was dried. Further, the resulting material was washed with a mixed solution of 10 ml of methanol and 3 ml of water, and was dried to give 0.220 g of N-1-butanesulfonyl-4-amino-3-(2,4-dichlorobenzylamino)benzamide.

Properties of the compound:

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 0.93(3H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 1.45(2H, m), 1.83(2H, m), 3.57(2H, m), 5.45(2H, s), 6.36(1H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$), 7.11(1H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 7.51(1H, s), 7.75(1H, d), 7.79(1H, d), 7.88(1H, s).

Example 315

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanesulfonylcarbonyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-hydroxybenzimidazole (379)

A mixture of 0.220 mg of N-1-butanesulfonyl-4-amino-3-(2,4-dichlorobenzylamino)benzamide, 0.3 ml of tetramethoxymethane and 2.0 ml of acetic acid was stirred at 60°C for 4 hours. Acetic acid was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was extracted with chloroform and with water. The chloroform layer was concentrated, and 4.0 ml of methanol and 36% hydrochloric acid (4 drops) were added to the residue. The mixture was stirred at 60°C for 2 hours. The reaction solution was neutralized with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate. The crystals precipitated were washed with water, and were dried to give 0.207 g of 6-(1-butanesulfonylcarbonyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-hydroxybenzimidazole (379).

Properties of Compound (379):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 0.83(3H, t, $J=7.3\text{Hz}$), 1.36(2H, m), 1.61(2H, m), 3.40(2H, m), 5.08(2H, s), 6.94(1H, d, $J=8.3\text{Hz}$), 7.11(1H, d, $J=8.2\text{Hz}$), 7.36(1H, dd, $J=2.0$ and 8.4Hz), 7.58(1H, s), 7.68-7.73(2H, m), 11.47(1H, br s), 11.77(1H, br s).

IR(Nujol) : 1689cm^{-1} .

mp : 254-256°C.

Mass(FD) : m/e 455(M).

Example 316

Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-quinolylmethyl)benzimidazole (380)

In accordance with Example 263, 0.87 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-quinolylmethyl)benzimidazole (380) were formed from 2.22 g of ethyl 4-acetyl-amino-3-aminobenzoate, 1.27 g of sodium carbonate, 0.45 g of sodium iodide and 2.28 g of 2-bromomethylquinoline.

Properties of the compound (380):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 1.27(3H, t, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 2.62(3H, s), 4.26(2H, q, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 5.85(2H, s), 7.35(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.58(1H, m), 7.63(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.73(1H, m), 7.78(1H, dd, $J=1.3$ and 8.4Hz), 7.86(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.95(1H, d, $J=8.0\text{Hz}$), 8.14(1H, s), 8.36(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$).

Example 317

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-(2-quinolylmethyl)benzimidazole (381)

In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.46 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-(2-quinolylmethyl)benzimidazole (381) were formed from 0.85 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-quinolylmethyl)benzimidazole.

Properties of Compound (381):

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6 , δ) : 2.62(3H, s), 5.83(2H, s), 7.35(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.57(1H, m), 7.60(1H, d, $J=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.72(1H, t, $J=7.6\text{Hz}$), 7.77(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.86(1H, d, $J=8.4\text{Hz}$), 7.94(1H, d, $J=8.1\text{Hz}$), 8.11(1H, s), 8.35(1H, d,

J=8.5Hz).

Example 318

5 Synthesis of 6-(1-butanesulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-1-(2-quinolylmethyl)benzimidazole (382)

In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.088 g of 6-(1-butanesulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-1-(2-quinolylmethyl)benzimidazole (382) were formed from 0.222 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-quinolylmethyl)benzimidazole, 0.195 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.165 g of 1-butanesulfonamide and 0.183 g of diazabicycloundecene.

10 Properties of Compound (382):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.82(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.36(2H, m), 1.64(2H, m), 2.61(3H, s), 3.48(2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 5.82(2H, s), 7.32(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.58(1H, m), 7.65(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.73(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.78(1H, m), 7.87(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.95(1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 8.23(1H, s), 8.37(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 11.86(1H, brs).

15 IR(Nujol) : 1684cm⁻¹.

mp : 185.5-187.5°C.

Production Example 65

20 Production of ethyl 4-amino-3-(2,4-dichlorobenzylamino)benzoate

Crude ethyl 4-amino-3-(2,4-dichlorobenzylamino)benzoate was formed from 1.40 g of 3-(2,4-dichlorobenzylamino)-4-nitrobenzoate and 4.50 g of sodium hydrosulfite in the same manner as in Production Example 64. This compound was used in the subsequent reaction at once.

25

Example 319

Synthesis of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzylamino)-2-hydroxy-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole (383)

30 In the same manner as in Example 315, 0.400 g of 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzylamino)-2-hydroxy-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole (383) were formed from ethyl 4-amino-3-(2,4-dichlorobenzylamino)benzoate obtained in the above-mentioned Production Example 63 and 2.60 g of tetramethoxymethane.

Properties of Compound (383):

35 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.27(3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 4.24(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.12(2H, s), 7.04(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.12(1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.37(1H, dd, J=2.1 and 8.4Hz), 7.51(1H, s), 7.67-7.72(2H, m), 11.37(1H, br s)

Example 320

40 Synthesis of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[3-(4-bromoisoquinolyl)methyl]benzimidazole (384)

In the same manner as in Example 263, 0.30 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[3-(4-bromoisoquinolyl)methyl]benzimidazole (384) were formed from 0.87 g of ethyl 4-acetyl-amino-3-aminobenzoate, 0.53 g of sodium carbonate, 0.18 g of sodium iodide and 0.87 g of 4-bromo-3-bromomethylisoquinoline.

45 Properties of Compound (384):

¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 1.26(3H, t, J=7.0Hz), 2.59(3H, s), 4.24(2H, q, J=7.0Hz), 5.93(2H, s), 7.61(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.75-7.80(2H, m), 7.99(1H, m), 8.03(1H, s), 8.13(1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 8.23(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 9.12(1H, s).

50 Example 321

Synthesis of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[3-(4-bromoisoquinolyl)methyl]benzimidazole (385)

55 In the same manner as in Example 53, 0.118 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[3-(4-bromoisoquinolyl)methyl]benzimidazole (385) were formed from 0.290 g of 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[3-(4-bromoisoquinolyl)methyl]benzimidazole. This compound was used in the subsequent reaction at once.

Example 322

Synthesis of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-1-[3-(4-bromoisoquinolyl)methyl]benzimidazole (386)

5 In the same manner as in Example 98, 0.075 g of 6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methyl-1-[3-(4-bromoisoquinolyl)methyl]benzimidazole (386) were formed from 0.111 g of 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[3-(4-bromoisoquinolyl)methyl]benzimidazole, 0.097 g of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole, 0.082 g of 1-butanefulfonamide and 0.091 g of diazabicycloundecene.

Properties of Compound (386):

10 ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆, δ) : 0.81(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.35(2H, m), 1.62(2H, m), 2.54(3H, s), 3.46(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 5.91(2H, s), 7.63(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.76(1H, dd, J=8.5 and 1.4Hz), 7.79(1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 8.00(1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 8.08(1H, t, J=1.1Hz), 8.13(1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 8.24(1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 9.11(1H, s), 11.81(1H, brs).

IR(Nujol) : 1678cm⁻¹.

15 mp : 258-259°C.

Mass(FAB) : m/e 515, 517(M+1).

From among the compounds of the present invention, the typical compounds were selected, and were tested for pharmacological properties.

20

Test Example 1

Stimulatory activity of triglyceride (TG) accumulation in 3T3-L1 cells (pre-adipocytes)

25 Test compound

6-benzylsulfonylcarbamoyl-2-cyclopropyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)benzimidazole

Devices used

30

1. Centrifuge: TOMY LC-122

2. Incubator: ESPEC BNA-121D

3. Mixer: Automatic Labo-Mixer

4. Water bath: TAITEC PERSONAL-11

35

5. Spectrophotometer: Shimadzu UV Visible Spectrophotometer UV-160A

6. 24-well plate: IWAKI GLASS CORNING

Reagents used

40

1. Medium: Dulbecco minimum essential medium (MEM) + 5% fetal calf serum (FCS)

2. PBS (-): solution having the following composition

NaCl 0.8 g/liter

KCl 0.2

45

Na₂HPO₄ 1.15

KH₂PO₄ 0.2

3. Solution of EDTA and trypsin:

0.02% EDTA + 0.25% trypsin/PBS(-)

50

4. Dexamethasone: made by Sigma

5. IBMX (3-isobutyl-1-methylxanthine): made by Sigma

6. Insulin: made by Sigma

7. DMSO (dimethylsulfoxide):

made by Wako Pure Chemical Industries, Ltd.

55

8. TG measuring kit:

Triglyceride-Test Wako (acetyl-acetone method): made by Wako Pure Chemical Industries, Ltd.

9. 0.1-N NaOH solution:

prepared by diluting a 1N NaOH solution to 10 times with distilled water.

10. Bio-Rad Protein Assay Reagent: made by Bio-Rad.

11. Bovine albumin: made by Sigma

Test method

Preparation of 3T3-L1 cells

3T3-L1 cells just before a confluent state were prepared in an F75 flask. The medium was removed, and the residue was washed twice with 5 ml of PBS (-). The cells were detached using a solution of EDTA and trypsin. Ten milliliters of the medium were added thereto to form a suspension. This suspension was collected in a 50-milliliter centrifuge tube, and was subjected to centrifugation at 1,000 rpm for 5 minutes. Thus, the cells were precipitated, and the supernatant was removed. The cells were re-suspended in 20 ml of the medium, and the number of cells was counted. The suspension was adjusted such that the concentration of the cells reached 6×10^4 cells/ml, and was inoculated into a 24-well plate in an amount of 1 ml/well. In this state, the incubation was conducted in an incubator at 37°C in 5% CO₂ for 2 days.

Preparation and addition of dexamethasone and IBMX

A solution of 1-mM dexamethasone and 500-mM IBMX was prepared in DMSO. Further, this solution was diluted to 1,000 times with the medium to form a solution of 1 μ M dexamethasone and 0.5mM IBMX. At the same time, DMSO was diluted with the medium to form a 0.1% DMSO solution as well.

Subsequently, the 24-well plate containing the incubated 3T3-L1 cells was withdrawn from the incubator. It was identified using a microscope that the cells became confluent, and the medium was removed through suction. The 2 wells of the 24-well plate were charged with the 0.1% DMSO solution in an amount of 1 ml/well, and the remaining 22 wells were charged with the solution of 1- μ M dexamethasone and 0.5mM IBMX in an amount of 1 ml/well. In this state, the incubation was conducted in an incubator at 37°C in 5% CO₂ for 1 day.

Preparation and addition of a test chemical agent and insulin

A test chemical agent was diluted with DMSO to 1×10^{-2} M, 1×10^{-3} M and 1×10^{-4} M. The dilute solutions were further diluted to 500 times, and were adjusted to 2×10^{-5} M, 2×10^{-6} M and 2×10^{-7} M respectively. At the same time, a 0.2% DMSO solution was also prepared. Insulin which had been adjusted to 100 μ M (in 0.2% bovine serum albumin (BSA) and 3-mM HCl) and had been stored at -80°C was naturally thawed, diluted to 50,000 times with the medium, and adjusted to 2-nM.

Subsequently, the 24-well plate to which dexamethasone and IBMX had been added the preceding day was withdrawn from the incubator. It was identified using a microscope that the shape of the cells was changed with the addition of dexamethasone and IBMX. Then, the medium was removed through suction. The 2 wells to which the 0.1% DMSO solution had been added the preceding day were charged with the 0.2% DMSO solution in an amount of 500 μ l/well and the medium (this was required to check the cell state at that time). The remaining 22 wells (containing the solution of dexamethasone and IBMX) were charged with the 0.2% DMSO solution (2 wells) or the test chemical agent (20 wells) in an amount of 500 μ l/well and then with the insulin solution in an amount of 500 μ l/well. In this state, the incubation was conducted in an incubator at 37°C in 5% CO₂ for from 4 to 5 days.

Measurement of triglyceride (TG) and protein

Four to five days after the addition of the test chemical agent and the insulin solution, the 24-well plate was withdrawn from the incubator. The medium was discarded by decantation, and the remaining medium was then absorbed in a paper towel to completely remove the medium. Subsequently, the residue was extracted twice with isopropyl alcohol, and TG was measured at a wavelength of 410 nm using a TG-measuring kit (acetyl-acetone method). Subsequently, isopropyl alcohol was completely vaporized from the plate in which the extraction with isopropyl alcohol was completed. This plate was then charged with a 0.1-N NaOH solution in an amount of 400 μ l/well, and was allowed to stand at room temperature for 30 minutes to dissolve the cells. This solution was sampled into a tube in an amount of 50 μ l. Further, a solution obtained by diluting a Bio-Rad protein assay reagent to 5 times with distilled water was added to the tube in an amount of 2.5 ml. The mixture was stirred well, and protein was measured at a measurement wavelength of 595 nm using a spectrophotometer.

Results

The stimulatory activity of the test compound for TG accumulation was calculated, when 1×10^{-6} M of a control

compound, pioglitazone, was defined as 100% and insulin (+) without the chemical agent was defined as 0%. The result is shown following.

Table 1

Concentration (M)	Stimulatory activity of TG accumulation (%)
1×10^{-5}	38.2%

Test Example 2

Test for activity of decreasing plasma glucose using db/db mice

Test compounds

6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-2-cyclopropyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)benzimidazole (177)
 6-benzenesulfonylcarbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (163)
 1-(biphenyl-4-ylmethyl)-6-(1-butanefulfonylcarbamoyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole (172)

Animal used

Five-week-old female mice [C57BL/KsJ-dbm db+/db+, C57BL/KsJ-dbm +m/+m (Jackson Laboratory)] were purchased, and were kept for 2 to 3 weeks. Then, these mice were used in the test.

Preparation of an agent

A test compound was mixed with a powdered chow (CE-2, made by Nippon Clea) using a mortar. According to the amount of food intake of the mouse, the mixing ratios, 0.1%, 0.03%, and 0.01% corresponded to 100, 30, and 10 mg/kg body weight, respectively. The mixed chow was changed twice a week. The feed amount and the remaining amount were recorded, and the intake was calculated from the difference therebetween.

Test schedule

The female db/db mice were grouped according to the body weight, the plasma glucose and the plasma triglyceride concentrations. Then, the mixture containing the test compound was administered to the mice for 14 days (from 8 to 10 weeks old). In the morning on day 7 and day 14, the blood was collected from the orbital venous plexus using heparinized glass capillary tubes (Chase Heparinized Capillary Tubes), and a plasma fraction was obtained through centrifugal separation. Plasma glucose, triglyceride, and insulin concentrations were measured on day 0 and day 14 as well as plasma glucose and triglyceride concentrations on day 7. The body weight was measured on day 0, day 7, and day 14. After the final collection of the blood, the mice were killed using CO₂ gas.

Measurement method

The plasma glucose was measured by a glucose oxidase method (Glucose CII-Test Wako made by Wako Pure Chemical Industries, Ltd.) using from 10 to 15 μ l of plasma. The plasma triglyceride concentration was measured by a GPO-p-chlorophenol method (Triglyceride G-Test Wako made by Wako Pure Chemical Industries, Ltd.) or a GPO-DAOS method (Triglyceride E-Test Wako) using from 10 to 15 μ l of plasma. The above-mentioned measurements were conducted immediately after the blood collection. The plasma insulin concentration was measured by radio immuno assay method (Phadesef Insulin RIA Kit made by Cabi Pharmacia) using 20 μ l of plasma (which can be stored at -20°C).

Results

The difference in the plasma glucose and the plasma triglyceride concentrations between the db/db mouse and the +/+ mouse was defined as 100%, and the rate (%) of decrease in the plasma glucose and the plasma triglyceride concentrations of the group to which the test compound was administered was calculated. The results were shown in Table 2.

Table 2

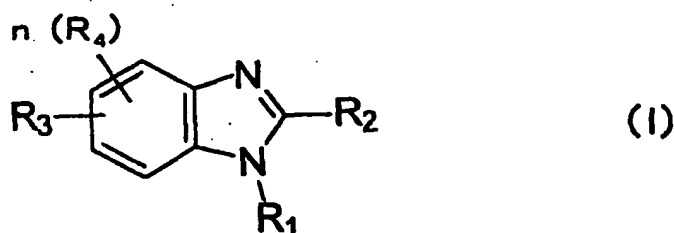
Compound No.	Dose (mg/kg)	Activity of decreasing plasma glucose (%)
(177)	30	34.5
(163)	30	72
(172)	10	70 - 80

INDUSTRIAL APPLICABILITY

Herein provided are novel benzimidazole derivatives and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts. These compounds and their salts have blood sugar level-depressing activity or PDE5-inhibiting activity, and are useful for preventing and treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes (type II diabetes), diabetic complications such as diabetic nephropathy, diabetic neuropathy and diabetic retinopathy, syndrome of insulin resistance (e.g., insulin receptor disorders, Rabson-Mendenhall syndrome, leprechaunism, Kobberling-Dunnigan syndrome, Seip syndrome, Lawrence syndrome, Cushing syndrome, acromegaly, etc.), hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders (e.g., stenocardia, cardiac failure, etc.), hyperglycemia (e.g., abnormal saccharometabolism such as feeding disorders, etc.), or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy (e.g., diabetic glomerulosclerosis, etc.), tubulointerstitial disorders (e.g., renopathy induced by FK506, cyclosporin, etc.), renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis (e.g., after percutaneous arterioplasty), distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions (e.g., bronchitis, asthma (chronic asthma, allergic asthma), etc.), allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders (e.g., hypersensitive enteropathy syndrome, etc.), impotence (e.g., organic impotence, psychic impotence, etc.), and diabetic complications (e.g., diabetic gangrene, diabetic arthropathy, diabetic glomerulosclerosis, diabetic dermatopathy, diabetic neuropathy, diabetic cataract, diabetic retinopathy, etc.), nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA.

Claims

1. A pharmaceutical composition for preventing and treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes, diabetic complications, syndrome of insulin resistance, hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders, hyperglycemia or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy, tubulointerstitial disorders, renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis, distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions, allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders, impotence, diabetic complications, nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA, which comprises, as an active ingredient, a compound of the following formula or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:



wherein R_1 represents a hydrogen atom, an arylsulfonyl group, or a lower alkyl group; said lower alkyl group may be substituted by an aryl group or an aryl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a haloaryl group, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkyloxy group, a haloaryl-lower alkyloxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, a cyanoaryl group,

and a heterocyclic group, or by a heterocyclic group;

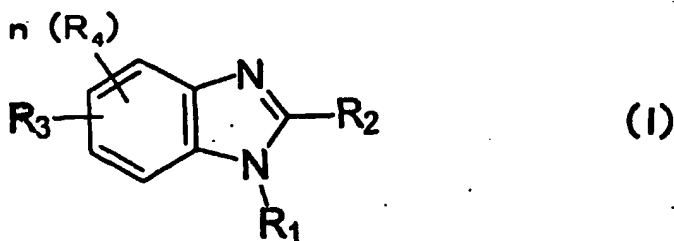
R_2 represents a hydrogen atom, a lower cycloalkyl group, a hydroxyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a mercapto group, a lower alkylthio group, an amino group, a lower alkylamino group, a carboxyl group, an aryl group, or a lower alkyl group; said lower alkyl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkoxy group, a cyano group, a chlorocarbonyl group, an aryl group, or a heterocyclic group;

R_3 represents a carboxyl group, an esterified carboxyl group, an amidated carboxyl group, an amino group, an amido group, or a sulfonyl group; said amino group and said amido group may be substituted by an acyl group or a sulfonyl group; and a halogen atom, an amino group, or an acylamino group is bonded to said sulfonyl group; or R_3 may be bonded to the skeleton via a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

R_4 represents a neutral substituent; and

n means an integer from 0 to 3.

2. Use of a compound of the following formula or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt for preparing a pharmaceutical composition for preventing and treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes, diabetic complications, syndrome of insulin resistance, hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders, hyperglycemia or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy, tubulointerstitial disorders, renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis, distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions, allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders, impotence, diabetic complications, nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA:



wherein R_1 represents a hydrogen atom, an arylsulfonyl group, or a lower alkyl group; said lower alkyl group may be substituted by an aryl group or an aryl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a haloaryl group, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkyloxy group, a haloaryl-lower alkyloxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, a cyanoaryl group, and a heterocyclic group, or by a heterocyclic group;

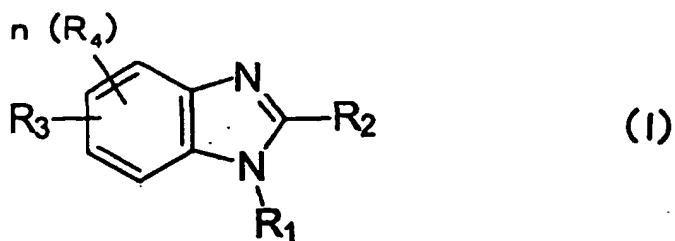
R_2 represents a hydrogen atom, a lower cycloalkyl group, a hydroxyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a mercapto group, a lower alkylthio group, an amino group, a lower alkylamino group, a carboxyl group, an aryl group, or a lower alkyl group; said lower alkyl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkoxy group, a cyano group, a chlorocarbonyl group, an aryl group, or a heterocyclic group;

R_3 represents a carboxyl group, an esterified carboxyl group, an amidated carboxyl group, an amino group, an amido group, or a sulfonyl group; said amino group and said amido group may be substituted by an acyl group or a sulfonyl group; and a halogen atom, an amino group, or an acylamino group is bonded to said sulfonyl group; or R_3 may be bonded to the skeleton via a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

R_4 represents a neutral substituent; and

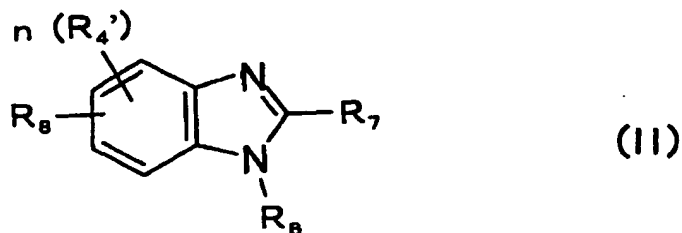
n means an integer from 0 to 3.

3. A method for preventing or treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes, diabetic complications, syndrome of insulin resistance, hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders, hyperglycemia or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy, tubulointerstitial disorders, renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis, distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions, allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders, impotence, diabetic complications, nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA, which comprises administering a compound of the following formula or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:



- 15 wherein R_1 represents a hydrogen atom, an arylsulfonyl group, or a lower alkyl group; said lower alkyl group may be substituted by an aryl group or an aryl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a haloaryl group, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkoxy group, a haloaryl-lower alkoxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, a cyanoaryl group, and a heterocyclic group, or by a heterocyclic group;
- 20 R_2 represents a hydrogen atom, a lower cycloalkyl group, a hydroxyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a mercapto group, a lower alkylthio group, an amino group, a lower alkylamino group, a carboxyl group, an aryl group, or a lower alkyl group; said lower alkyl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkoxy group, a cyano group, a chlorocarbonyl group, an aryl group, or a heterocyclic group;
- 25 R_3 represents a carboxyl group, an esterified carboxyl group, an amidated carboxyl group, an amino group, an amido group, or a sulfonyl group; said amino group and said amido group may be substituted by an acyl group or a sulfonyl group; and a halogen atom, an amino group, or an acylamino group is bonded to said sulfonyl group; or R_3 may be bonded to the skeleton via a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;
- 30 R_4 represents a neutral substituent; and n means an integer from 0 to 3.

4. A pharmaceutical composition for preventing and treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes, diabetic complications, syndrome of insulin resistance, hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders, hyperglycemia or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy, tubulointerstitial disorders, renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis, distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions, allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders, impotence, diabetic complications, nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA, which comprises, as an active ingredient, a compound of the following formula or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:
- 35



- 50 wherein R_6 represents an aryl-lower alkyl group or an aryl-lower alkyl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a haloaryl group, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a cyanoaryl group, an aryl-lower alkoxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, and a heterocyclic group;
- 55 R_7 represents a lower alkyl group or a lower cycloalkyl group;

R_8 represents a carbamoyl group, which may be substituted by a lower alkyl group, a lower alkyl group substituted by a substituted or unsubstituted aryl group or a substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic group, an aryl group, a heterocyclic group, or a group of:

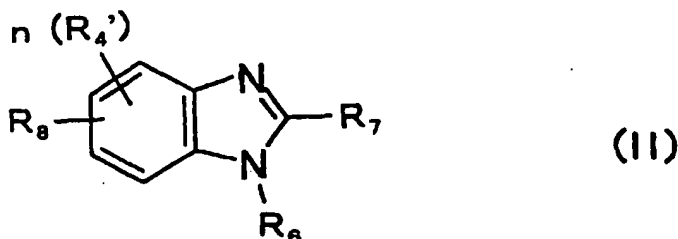


in which R_9 represents an alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a hydroxy-lower alkyl group, a tri-lower alkylsilyl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylthio-lower alkyl group, a heterocyclic group, or an aryl group; said aryl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group or a nitro group; or R_8 may be bonded to the skeleton via a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

R_4' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and

n means an integer from 0 to 3.

5. A Compound of the following formula or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt for the preparation of pharmaceutical composition for preventing and treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes, diabetic complications, syndrome of insulin resistance, hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders, hyperglycemia or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy, tubulointerstitial disorders, renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis, distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions, allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders, impotence, diabetic complications, nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA:



wherein R_6 represents an aryl-lower alkyl group which may be substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a haloaryl group, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a cyanoaryl group, an aryl-lower alkoxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, and a heterocyclic group; R_7 represents a lower alkyl group or a lower cycloalkyl group;

R_8 represents a carbamoyl group, which may be substituted by a lower alkyl group, a lower alkyl group substituted by a substituted or unsubstituted aryl group or a substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic group, an aryl group, a heterocyclic group, or a group of:

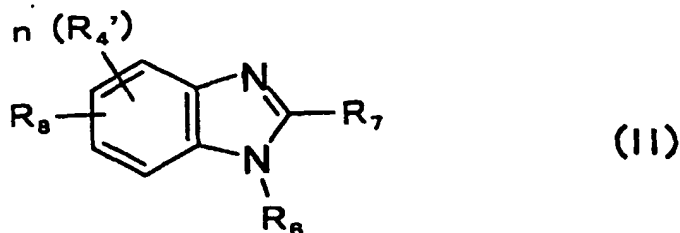


in which R_9 represents an alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a hydroxy-lower alkyl group, a tri-lower alkylsilyl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylthio-lower alkyl group, a heterocyclic group, or an aryl group; said aryl group may be substituted by

a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group or a nitro group; or R_8 may be bonded to the skeleton via a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

R_4' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and
 n means an integer from 0 to 3.

6. A method for preventing or treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes, diabetic complications, syndrome of insulin resistance, hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders, hyperglycemia or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy, tubulointerstitial disorders, renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis, distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions, allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders, impotence, diabetic complications, nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA, which comprises administering a compound of the following formula or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:



wherein R_6 represents an aryl-lower alkyl group or an aryl-lower alkyl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a haloaryl group, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a cyanoaryl group, an aryl-lower alkyloxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, and a heterocyclic group;

R_7 represents a lower alkyl group or a lower cycloalkyl group;

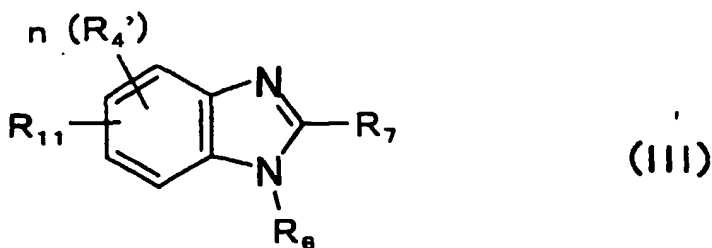
R_8 represents a carbamoyl group, which may be substituted by a lower alkyl group, a lower alkyl group substituted by a substituted or unsubstituted aryl group or a substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic group, an aryl group, a heterocyclic group, or a group of:



in which R_9 represents an alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a hydroxy-lower alkyl group, a tri-lower alkylsilyl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylthio-lower alkyl group, a heterocyclic group, or an aryl group; said aryl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group or a nitro group; or R_8 may be bonded to the skeleton via a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

R_4' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and
 n means an integer from 0 to 3.

7. A pharmaceutical composition for preventing and treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes, diabetic complications, syndrome of insulin resistance, hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders, hyperglycemia or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy, tubulointerstitial disorders, renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis, distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions, allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders, impotence, diabetic complications, nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA, which comprises, as an active ingredient, a compound of the following formula or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:



15 wherein R_6 represents an aryl-lower alkyl group or an aryl-lower alkyl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a haloaryl group, a cyanoaryl group, an aryl-lower alkoxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, and a heterocyclic group;

20 R_7 represents a lower alkyl group or a lower cycloalkyl group;

R_{11} represents a substituent of a formula:

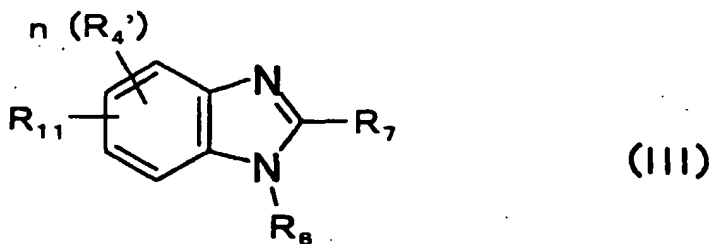


35 in which R_{12} represents an alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a hydroxy-lower alkyl group, a tri-lower alkylsilyl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylthio-lower alkyl group, a heterocyclic group, or an aryl group; said aryl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, or a nitro group; or R_{11} may be bonded to the skeleton via a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

R_4' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and

n means an integer from 0 to 3.

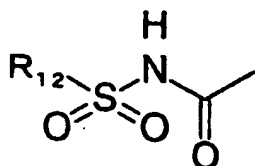
- 40 8. Use of a compound of the following formula or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt for preparing a pharmaceutical composition for preventing and treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes, diabetic complications, syndrome of insulin resistance, hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders, hyperglycemia or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy, tubulointerstitial disorders, renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis, distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions, allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders, impotence, diabetic complications, nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA:



wherein R_6 represents an aryl-lower alkyl group or an aryl-lower alkyl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a haloaryl group, a cyanoaryl group, an aryl-lower alkoxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, and a heterocyclic group;

R_7 represents a lower alkyl group or a lower cycloalkyl group;

R_{11} represents a substituent of a formula:

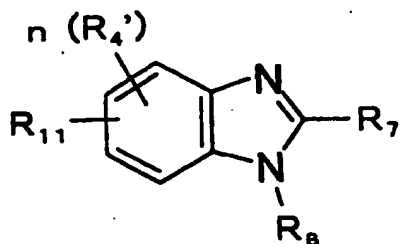


(IIIa)

in which R_{12} represents an alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a hydroxy-lower alkyl group, a tri-lower alkylsilyl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylthio-lower alkyl group, a heterocyclic group, or an aryl group; said aryl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, or a nitro group; or R_{11} may be bonded to the skeleton via a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

R_4' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and n means an integer from 0 to 3.

9. A method for preventing or treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes, diabetic complications, syndrome of insulin resistance, hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders, hyperglycemia or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy, tubulointerstitial disorders, renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis, distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions, allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders, impotence, diabetic complications, nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA, which comprises administering a compound of the following formula or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:

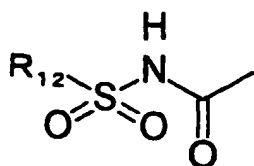


(III)

wherein R_6 represents an aryl-lower alkyl group or an aryl-lower alkyl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a haloaryl group, a cyanoaryl group, an aryl-lower alkoxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, an aryl-lower alkyl group and a heterocyclic group;

R_7 represents a lower alkyl group or a lower cycloalkyl group;

R_{11} represents a substituent of a formula:

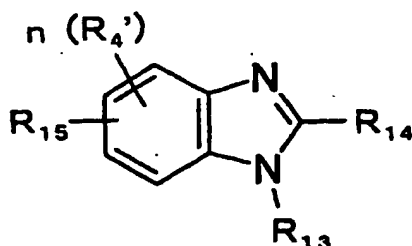


(IIIa)

in which R_{12} represents an alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a hydroxy-lower alkyl group, a tri-lower alkylsilyl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylthio-lower alkyl group, a heterocyclic group, or an aryl group; said aryl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, or a nitro group; or R_{11} may be bonded to the skeleton via a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

R_4' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and n means an integer from 0 to 3.

10. A pharmaceutical composition for preventing and treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes, diabetic complications, syndrome of insulin resistance, hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders, hyperglycemia or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy, tubulointerstitial disorders, renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis, distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions, allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders, impotence, diabetic complications, nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA, which comprises, as an active ingredient, a compound of the following formula or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:

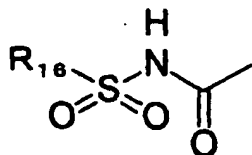


(IV)

wherein R_{13} represents an aryl-lower alkyl group or an aryl-lower alkyl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a haloaryl group, a cyanoaryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, and a heterocyclic group;

R_{14} represents a lower alkyl group;

R_{15} represents a substituent of a formula:



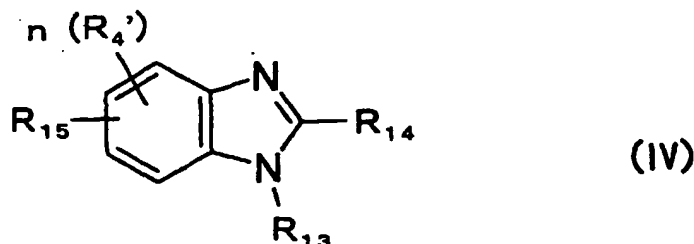
(IVa)

in which R_{16} represents a lower alkyl group or an aryl group;

R_4' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and

n means an integer from 0 to 3.

11. Use of a compound of the following formula or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt for preparing a pharmaceutical composition for preventing and treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes, diabetic complications, syndrome of insulin resistance, hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders, hyperglycemia or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy, tubulointerstitial disorders, renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis, distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions, allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders, impotence, diabetic complications, nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA:



wherein R_{13} represents an aryl-lower alkyl group or an aryl-lower alkyl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a haloaryl group, a cyanoaryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, and a heterocyclic group;

R_{14} represents a lower alkyl group;

R_{15} represents a substituent of a formula:

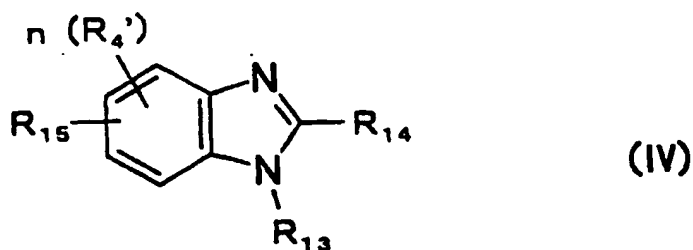


in which R_{16} represents a lower alkyl group or an aryl group;

R_4' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and

n means an integer from 0 to 3.

12. A method for preventing or treating impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes, diabetic complications, syndrome of insulin resistance, hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders, hyperglycemia or hypertension; or stenocardia, hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, glomerulopathy, tubulointerstitial disorders, renal failure, atherosclerosis, angiostenosis, distal angiopathy, cerebral apoplexy, chronic reversible obstructions, allergic rhinitis, urticaria, glaucoma, diseases characterized by enteromotility disorders, impotence, diabetic complications, nephritis, cancerous cachexia, or restenosis after PTCA, which comprises administering a compound of the following formula or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:



15 wherein R₁₃ represents an aryl-lower alkyl group or an aryl-lower alkyl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a haloaryl group, a cyanoaryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, and a heterocyclic group;

R₁₄ represents a lower alkyl group;

20 R₁₅ represents a substituent of a formula:

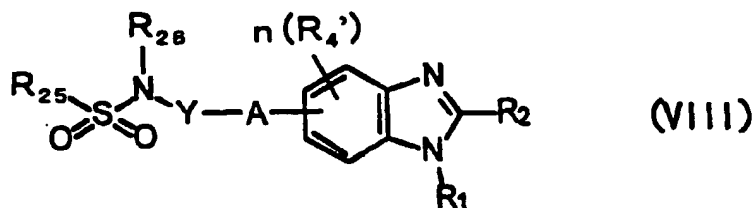


30 in which R₁₆ represents a lower alkyl group or an aryl group;

R₄' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and

n means an integer from 0 to 3.

35 13. A benzimidazole derivative of the following formula, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:



50 wherein R₁ represents a hydrogen atom, an arylsulfonyl group, or a lower alkyl group; said lower alkyl group may be substituted by an aryl group or an aryl group substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a haloaryl group, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyloxy group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a haloaryl-lower alkyloxy group, an arylsulfonylamino group, an arylcarbonylamino group, an arylcarbonyl group, an arylalkenyl group, a cyanoaryl group, and a heterocyclic group, or by a heterocyclic group;

55 R₂ represents a hydrogen atom, a lower cycloalkyl group, a hydroxyl group, a hydroxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a mercapto group, a lower alkylthio group, an amino group, a lower alkylamino group, a carboxyl group, an aryl group, or a lower alkyl group; said lower alkyl group may be substituted by a halogen atom,

a lower alkoxy group, a cyano group, a halocarbonyl group, an aryl group, or a heterocyclic group;

R₂₅ represents an alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, a lower cycloalkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a tri-lower alkylsilyl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylthio-lower alkyl group, an aryl group, a heterocyclic group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, or a hydroxy-lower alkyl group; said aryl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, or a nitro group;

R₂₆ represents a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group; provided that, when R₂₅ and R₂₆ are both lower alkyl groups, they may be bonded together to form a ring;

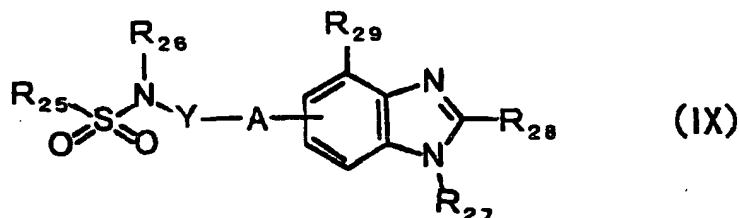
Y represents a carbonyl group or a lower alkylene group;

A represents a single bond, or a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

R₄' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and

n means an integer from 0 to 3.

14. A benzimidazole derivative of the following formula, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:



wherein R₂₇ represents a hydrogen atom, an alkyl group having up to 7 carbon atoms, a halo-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonyl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a heterocyclic lower alkyl group, or a halo-heterocyclic lower alkyl group; the aromatic ring moiety in said aryl-lower alkyl group may be substituted by one or two substituents selected from a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a cyanoaryl group, an amino group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a haloaryl group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, an aryl-lower alkoxy group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a heterocyclic group, an aryloxy group, an arylcarbonyl group, an arylcarbonylamino group, and an aryl-lower alkoxy group substituted by one or two halogen atoms;

R₂₈ represents a hydrogen atom, an alkyl group having up to 7 carbon atoms, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower cycloalkyl group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylamino group, a lower alkoxy group, a lower alkylthio group, a hydroxyl group, a mercapto group, an amino group, or a carboxyl group;

R₂₅ represents an alkyl group having up to 8 carbon atoms, a halo-lower alkyl group, a tri-lower alkylsilyl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylthio-lower alkyl group, an aryl group, a heterocyclic group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, or a hydroxy-lower alkyl group; said aryl group may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, or a nitro group;

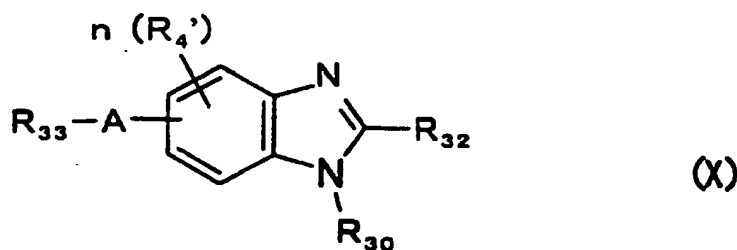
R₂₆ represents a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group; provided that, when R₂₅ and R₂₆ are both lower alkyl groups, they may be bonded together to form a ring;

Y represents a carbonyl group or a lower alkylene group;

A represents a single bond, or a lower alkylene or alkenylene group; and

R₂₉ represents a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group.

15. A benzimidazole derivative of the following formula, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:



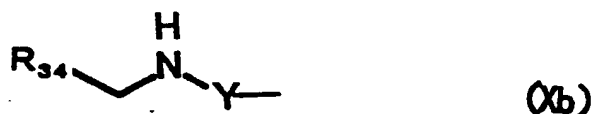
15 wherein R_{30} represents a hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a substituted or unsubstituted benzyl group of a formula:



25 in which R_{31} represents a hydrogen atom, a cyanoaryl group, an amino group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, a cyano group, an aryl group, a haloaryl group, an arylsulfonyl-lower alkyl group, an arylsulfonylamino group, an aryl-lower alkyloxy group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a heterocyclic group, or an aryloxy group, or represents an aryl-lower alkyloxy group or an aryl-lower alkyloxy group substituted by one or two halogen atoms, an arylsulfonyl group, a heterocyclic lower alkyl group, an arylcarbonylamino group, an arylcarbonyl group, an arylalkenyl group, or a lower alkylenedioxyaryl group; the α -position of said benzyl group may be substituted by a lower alkyl group;

30 R_{32} represents a hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, a lower cycloalkyl group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, a lower alkylamino group, a lower alkoxy group, a lower alkylthio group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, or a heterocyclic lower alkyl group;

35 R_{33} represents a carboxyl group, a lower alkoxy-carbonyl group, a (2-cyanoaryl)oxycarbonyl group, or a group of a formula:



45 in which Y represents a carbonyl group or a lower alkylene group;

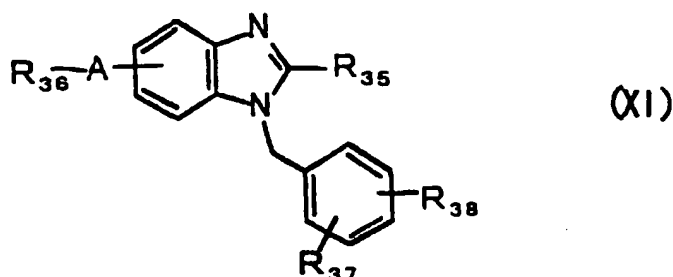
R_{34} represents a lower alkyl group or a lower alkyl group substituted by a substituted or unsubstituted aryl or heterocyclic group, or represents an aryl group or a heterocyclic group;

50 A represents a single bond, or a lower alkylene or alkenylene group;

R_4' represents a hydrocarbon group or a halogenated hydrocarbon group; and

n means an integer from 0 to 3, provided that, when R_{30} is a hydrogen atom, n is 0.

16. A benzimidazole derivative of the following formula, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:



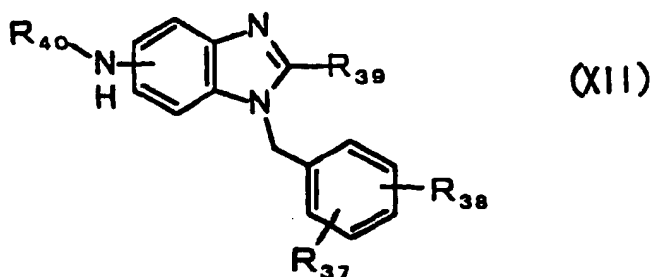
15 wherein R₃₅ represents a hydrogen atom, an aryl group, a lower alkoxy-lower alkyl group, a lower alkyl group, or an aryl-lower alkyl group;

R₃₆ represents a carboxyl group, a lower alkoxycarbonyl group, a heterocyclic lower alkylamino group, or a heterocyclic lower alkylcarbamoyl group;

20 R₃₇ and R₃₈ each independently represent a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, or an aryl-lower alkyloxy group; and

A represents a single bond, or a lower alkylene or alkenylene group; provided that, when R₃₅ is a lower alkyl group, A is a lower alkylene group or a lower alkenylene group.

25 17. A benzimidazole derivative of the following formula, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:

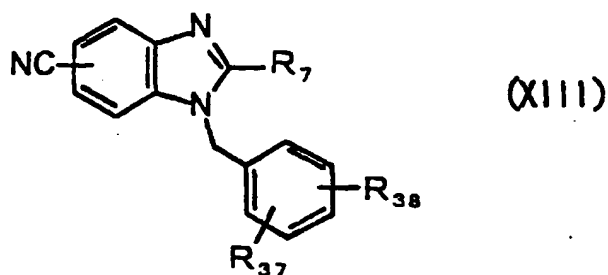


40 wherein R₃₇ and R₃₈ each independently represent a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, or an aryl-lower alkyloxy group;

R₃₉ represents a lower alkyl group; and

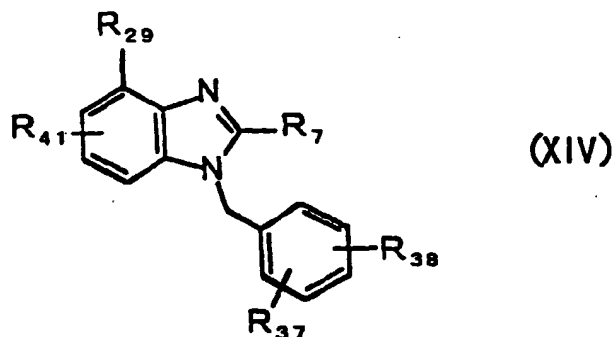
45 R₄₀ represents a hydrogen atom, a lower alkoxycarbonyl group, a lower alkanoyl group, a lower alkanesulfonyl group, or a carbamoyl group.

18. A benzimidazole derivative of the following formula, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:



15
 wherein R_{37} and R_{38} each independently represent a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, or an aryl-lower alkyloxy group; and R_7 represents a lower alkyl group or a lower cycloalkyl group.

20 19. A benzimidazole derivative of the following formula, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt:



35
 wherein R_{37} and R_{38} each independently represent a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, a lower alkyl group, a halo-lower alkyl group, an aryl group, an aryl-lower alkyl group, or an aryl-lower alkyloxy group;

40 R_7 represents a lower alkyl group or a lower cycloalkyl group;

R_{41} represents a 2-pyridylcarbamoyl group, a 2-carboxy-1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl group, an N-methyl-N-(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl group, a homopiperidinocarbonyl group, a [2-(N-oxo-pyridylmethyl)]carbamoyl group, a 4-(dimethylamino)benzylcarbamoyl group, a piperonylcarbamoyl group, an N-methyl-N-(2-pyridyl)carbamoyl group, a thiomorpholinocarbonyl group, a halosulfonyl group, an aminosulfonyl group, an acylaminosulfonyl group, a lower alkoxy carbonyl group, or a carboxyl group;

45 R_{29} represents a hydrogen atom, or a lower alkyl group; provided that, when R_{41} is a lower alkylcarbonyl group or a carboxyl group, R_{29} is a lower alkyl group.

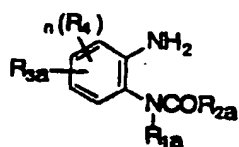
50 20. A benzimidazole derivative selected from the group consisting of 1-(2-bromobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(4-fluorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(3-fluorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(3-methylbenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 2-cyclopropyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclobutyl-6-ethoxycarbonylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-pentylbenzimidazole, 5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(3-methylbenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 2-n-butyl-7-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole, 2-n-butyl-6-carboxy-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-chlorocarbonyl-2-cyclopropylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-morpholinocarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 2-n-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benz-

55

imidazole, 2-n-butyl-5-carbamoyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropyl-6-morpholinocarbonylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclopropyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-cyclobutyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-phenylcarbamoyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-[(4-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-[(3-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(3-methylbenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-ethyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-n-butyl-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-7-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-n-butyl-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-6-(2-pyridylmethylcarbamoyl)benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-benzyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-chlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 1-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(2-methylbenzyl)benzimidazole, 1-benzyl-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-t-butylbenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-6-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(4-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-benzyl-6-carboxy-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(4-t-butylbenzyl)-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(2-methylbenzyl)benzimidazole, 1-benzyl-6-carboxy-2-methylbenzimidazole, 5-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-carboxy-1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2-chlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-benzyl-2-n-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(4-chlorobenzyl)-2-propyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2,6-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]-1-[2-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]-1-[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]benzimidazole, 1-(3,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 2-methyl-1-(2-methylbenzyl)-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-benzyl-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(4-t-butylbenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 6-carbamoyl-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,4-difluorobenzyl)-2-methyl-6-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2,4-difluorobenzyl)-2-methyl-5-[(2-pyridylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzimidazole, 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-7-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 7-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-4-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, 4-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 6-(n-butylcarbamoyl)-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole, 1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methylbenzimidazole, and 5-carboxy-1-(2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-2-methylbenzimidazole; or its salts.

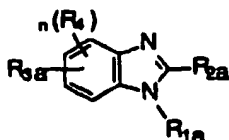
21. A pharmaceutical composition comprising, as an active ingredient, a compound of formulae (I) to (IV) as claimed in any one of claims 1, 4, 7 and 10, and having blood sugar level-depressing activity and/or PDE5-inhibiting activity.
22. Use of a compound of formulae (I) to (IV) as claimed in any one of claims 1, 4, 7 and 10 for the preparation of pharmaceutical composition having blood sugar level-depressing activity and/or PDE5-inhibiting activity.
23. A method for lowering the blood sugar level of a patient and/or inhibiting PDE5 in a patient, which comprises administering to the patient a compound of formulae (I) to (IV) as claimed in any one of claims 1, 4, 7 and 10.
24. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound as claimed in any one of claims 13 to 20 as an active ingredient.
25. A method of producing a benzimidazole derivative as claimed in any of claims 13 to 15 or 19, which comprises any of the following steps (A) to (D):

(A) effecting ring closure of a compound of the following formula (8):



(8 ')

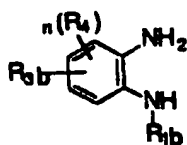
to give a benzimidazole derivative of the following formula (9'):



(9 ')

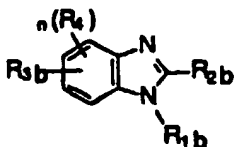
;

(B) reacting a compound of the following formula (10'):



(1 0 ')

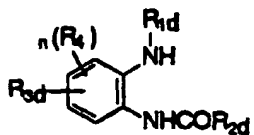
with a carboxylic acid, acid halide, or acid anhydride having a substituent R_{2b} to give a benzimidazole derivative of the following formula (11'):



(1 1 ')

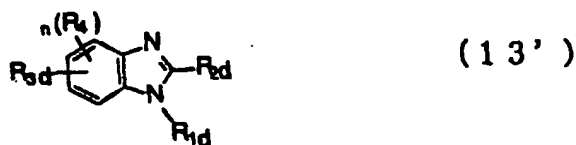
;

(C) reacting a compound of the following formula (12'):



(1 2 ')

with acid to give a benzimidazole derivative of the following formula (13'):



10

(D) allowing a base to act on a compound of the following formula (14):

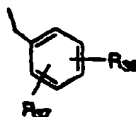


20

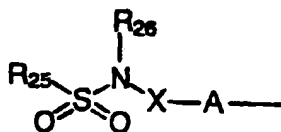
and reacting said compound with a compound represented by $R_{1e}Z$, wherein Z is a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, a toluenesulfonyloxy group, or a methanesulfonyloxy group, to give a benzimidazole derivative of the following formula (15):



in the above formulae, R_{1a} to R_{1e} are substituents represented by R_1 , R_{27} , R_{32} , or the formula:



wherein R_{37} and R_{38} have the same meanings as described above,
 R_{2a} to R_{2e} mean R_2 , R_7 , R_{28} , R_{30} , or R_{35} , respectively,
 R_{3a} to R_{3e} independently represent a substituent of the formula:



wherein R_{25} and R_{26} have the same meanings as described above, a substituent of the formula:



wherein R_{33} and A have the same meanings as described above, or a substituent of the formula:

$R_{36}-A-$

wherein R_{36} and A have the same meanings as described above, R_4 has the same meaning as described above, including R_4' and R_{29} , n means an integer from 0 to 3.

26. A method of producing a benzimidazole derivative as claimed in claim 15 or 16, wherein a compound of the formula (16'):



wherein R_9 is a lower alkyl group, R_{1a} , R_{2a} , n, and A have the same meanings as described above, is hydrolyzed with a base to give a benzimidazole derivative of the formula (17'):

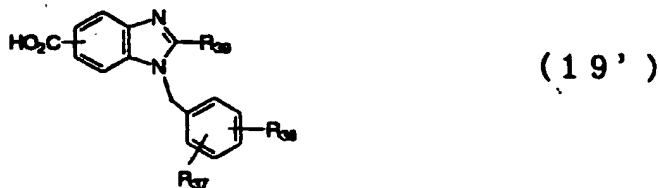


27. A method of producing a benzimidazole derivative as claimed in any one of claims 13 to 16 or 19, wherein carbonyl diimidazole is allowed to act on a compound of the formula (17'), which is then reacted with amines and sulfonamides in the presence of a base to give a benzimidazole of the formula (18'):

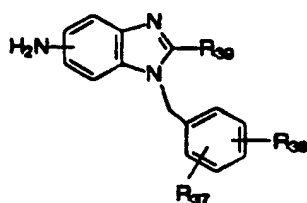


wherein R_{1a} , R_{2a} , n, and A have the same meanings as described above.

28. A method of producing a benzimidazole derivative as claimed in claim 17, wherein a compound of the formula (19'):

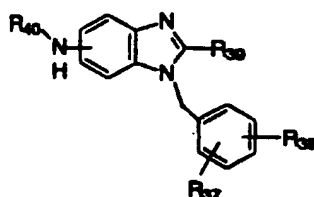


is reacted with azide in the presence of alcohol, or a compound of the formula (20'):



(2 0 ')

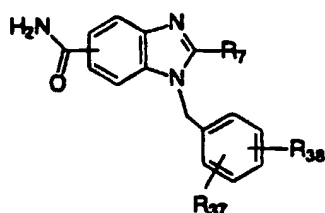
is reacted with the compound represented by $R_{40}Z$, wherein R_{40} has the same meaning as above and Z is a chlorine atom or a bromine atom, to give a benzimidazole derivative of the formula (21):



(2 1 ')

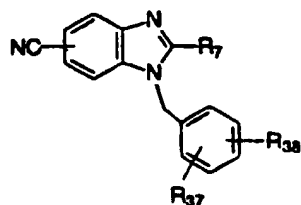
wherein R_{37} to R_{40} have the same meanings as described above.

29. A method of producing a benzimidazole derivative as claimed in claim 18, wherein a compound of the formula (22'):



(2 2 ')

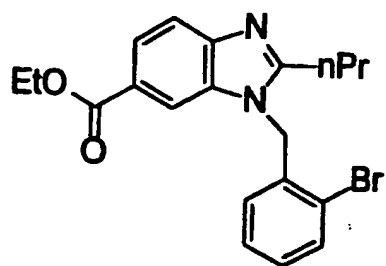
is reacted with titanium tetrachloride to give a benzimidazole derivative of the formula (23'):



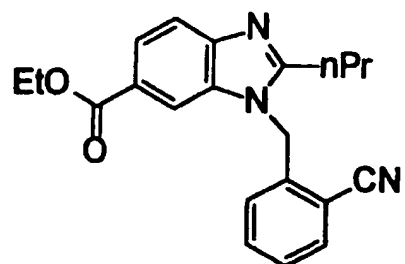
(2 3 ')

wherein R_7 , R_{37} , and R_{38} have the same meanings as described above.

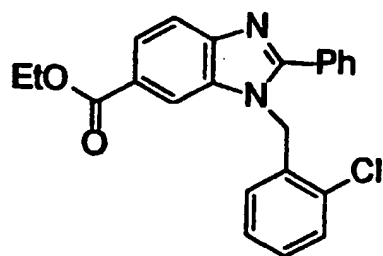
FIG. 1



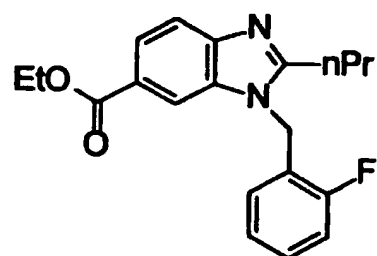
(42)



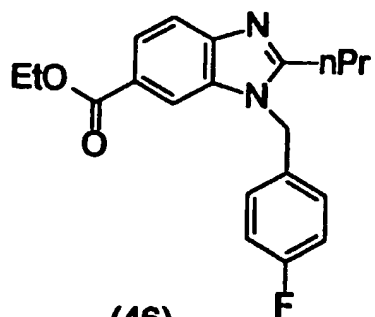
(43)



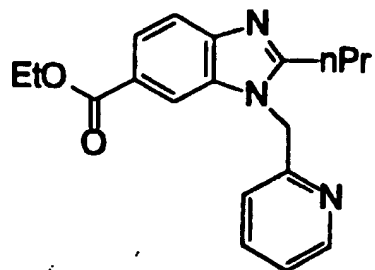
(44)



(45)



(46)



(47)

FIG. 2

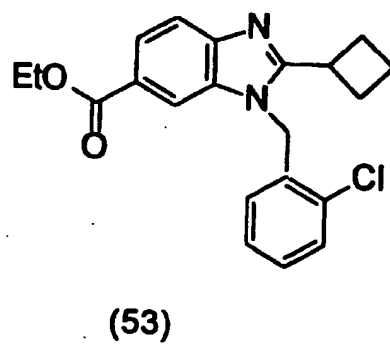
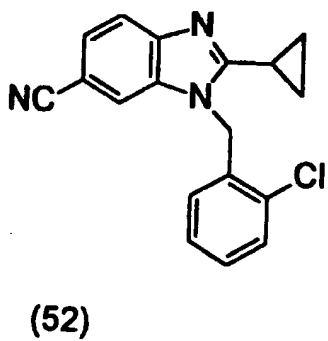
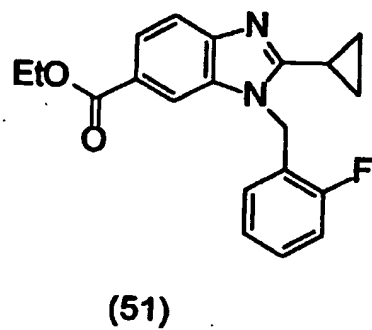
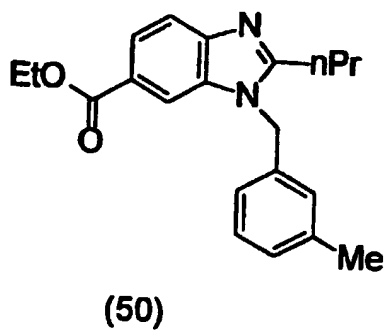
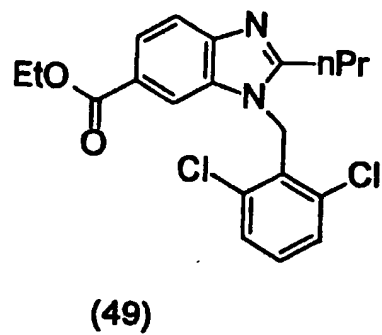
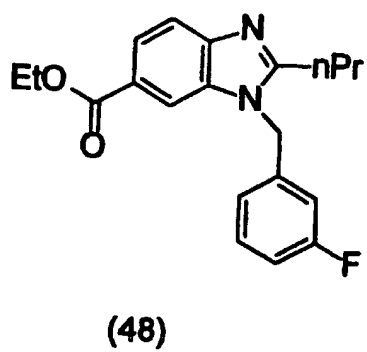
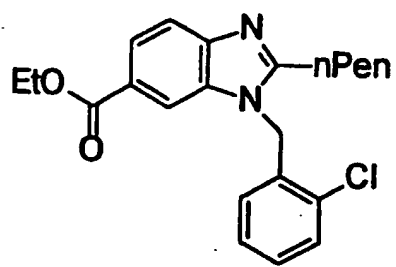
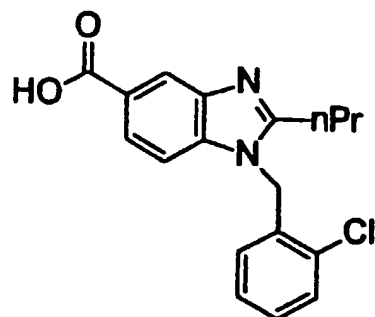


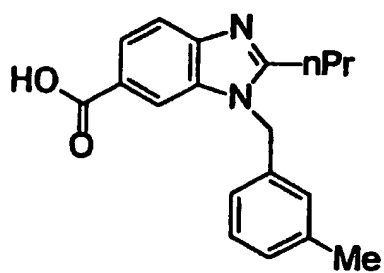
FIG. 3



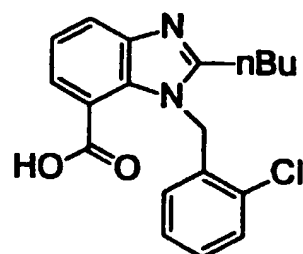
(54)



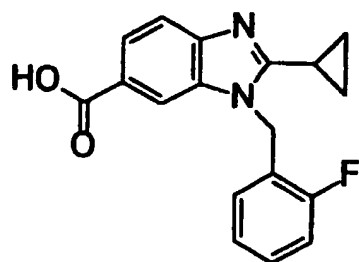
(55)



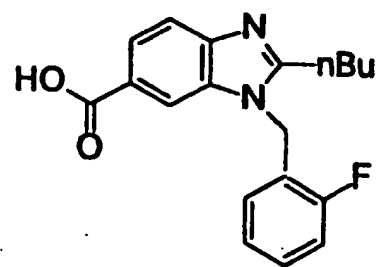
(56)



(57)

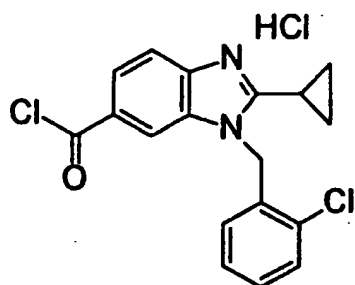


(58)

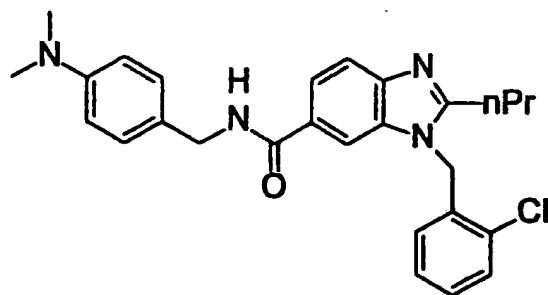


(59)

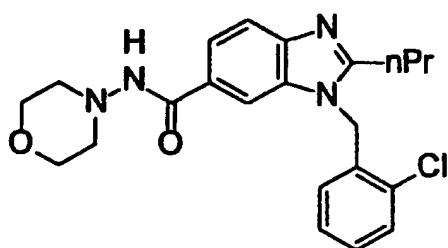
FIG. 4



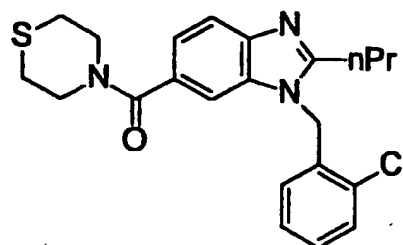
(60)



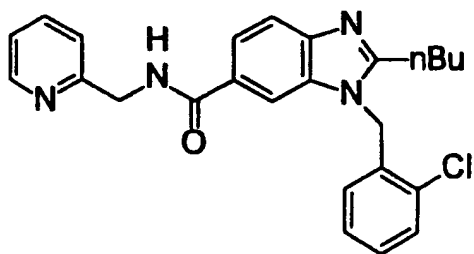
(61)



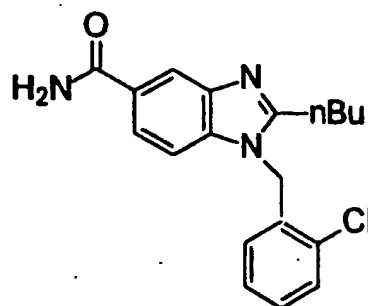
(62)



(63)

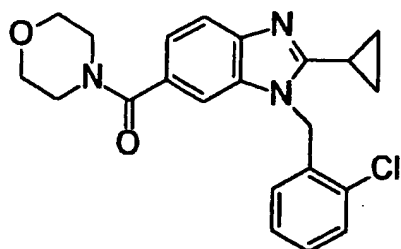


(64)

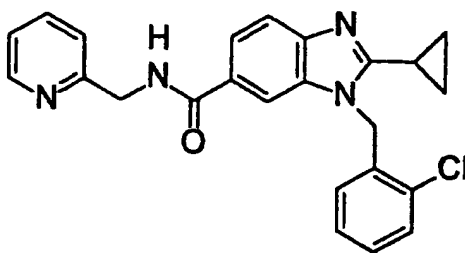


(65)

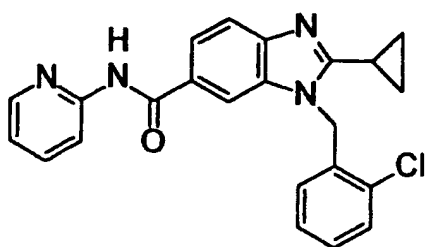
FIG. 5



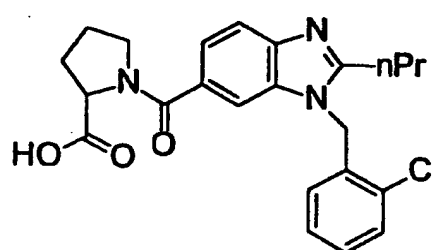
(66)



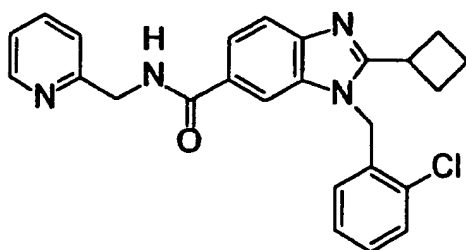
(67)



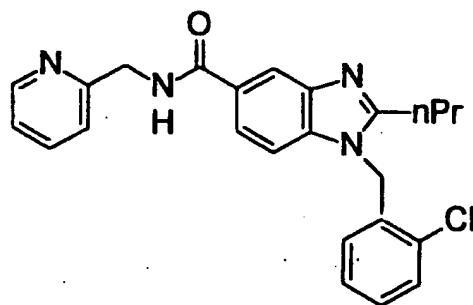
(68)



(69)

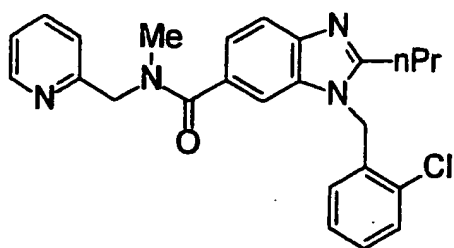


(70)

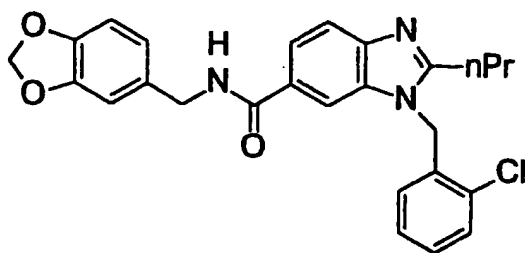


(71)

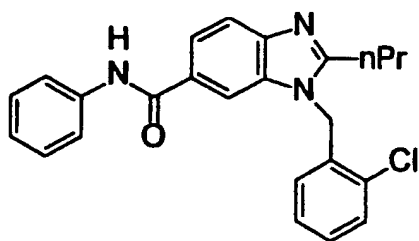
FIG. 6



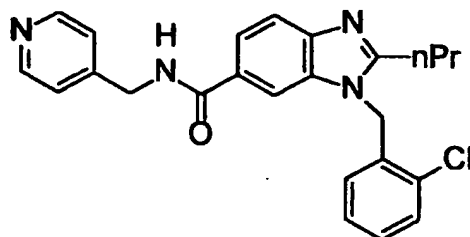
(72)



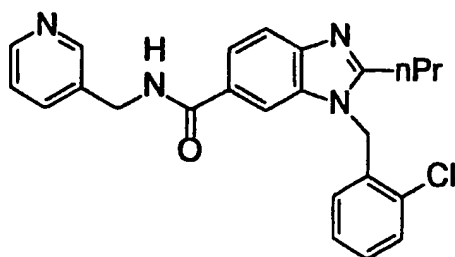
(73)



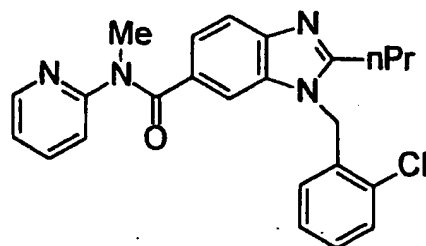
(74)



(75)

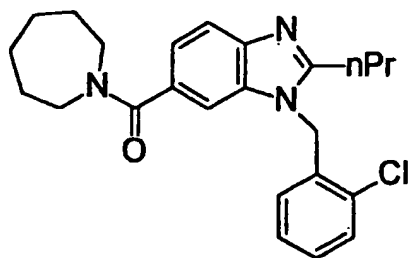


(76)

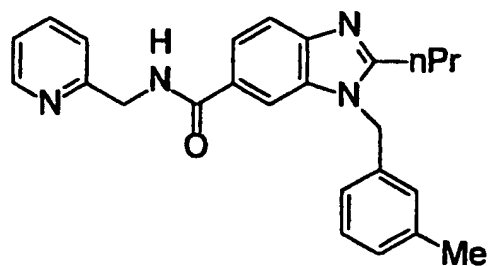


(77)

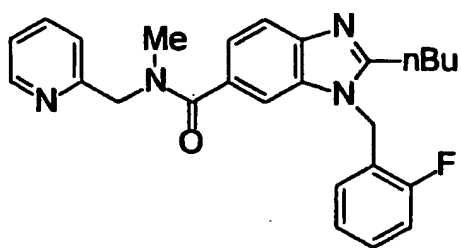
FIG. 7



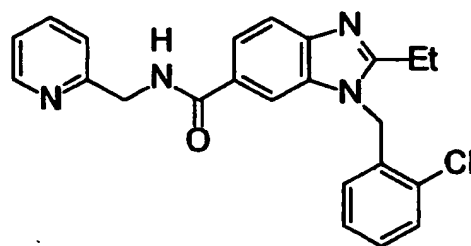
(78)



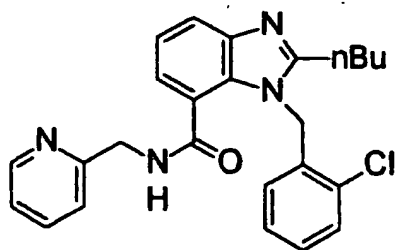
(79)



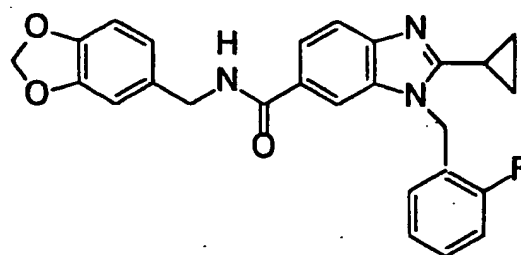
(80)



(81)

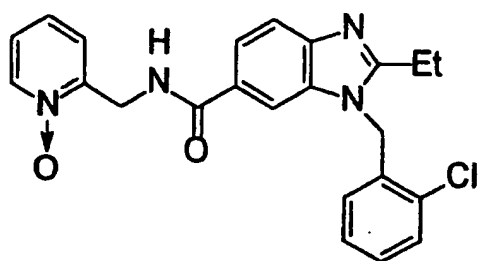


(82)

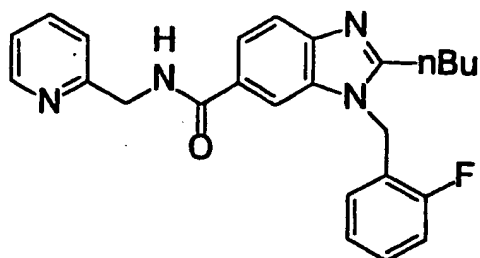


(83)

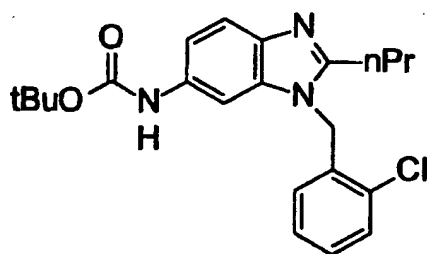
FIG. 8



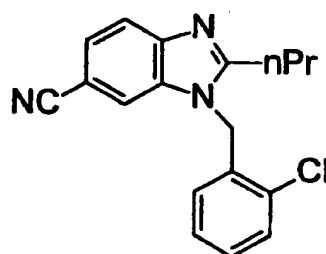
(84)



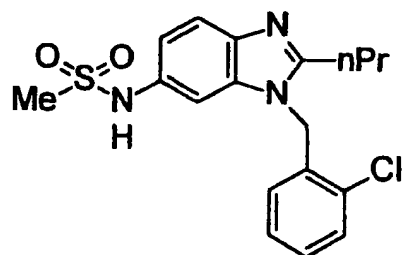
(85)



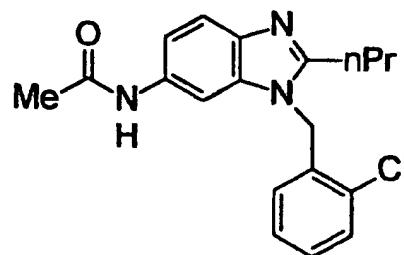
(86)



(87)

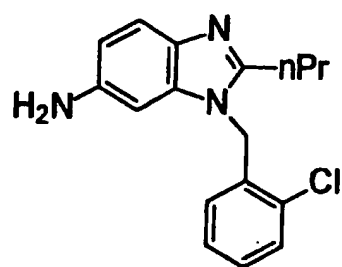


(88)

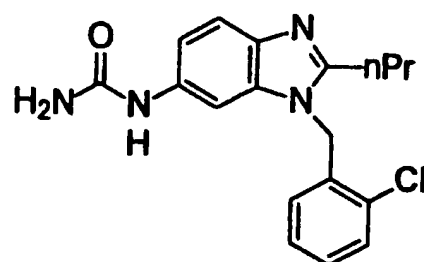


(89)

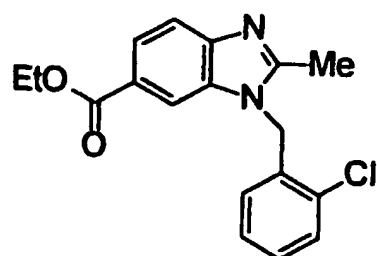
FIG. 9



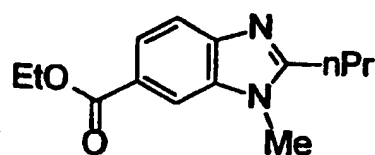
(90)



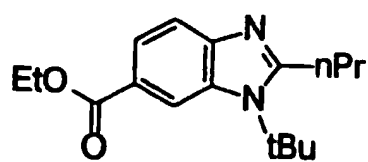
(91)



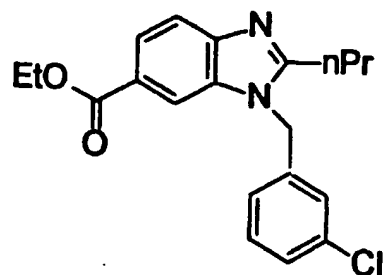
(92)



(93)

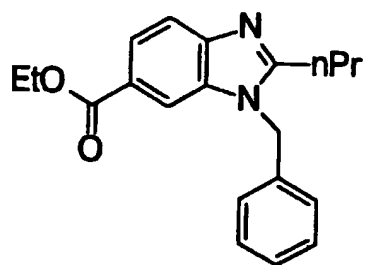


(94)

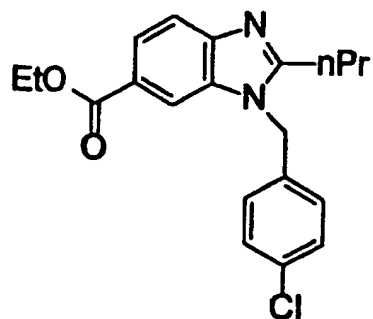


(95)

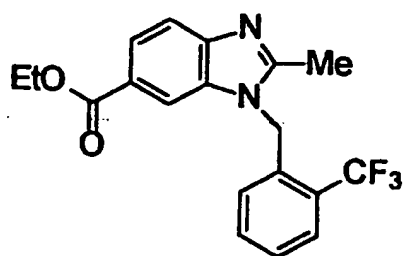
FIG. 10



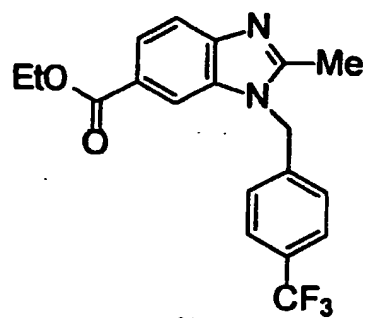
(96)



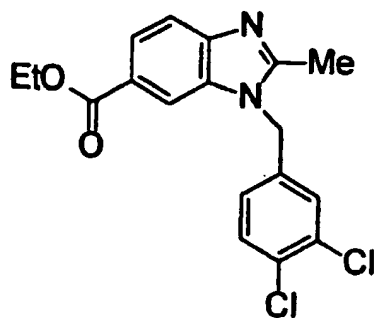
(97)



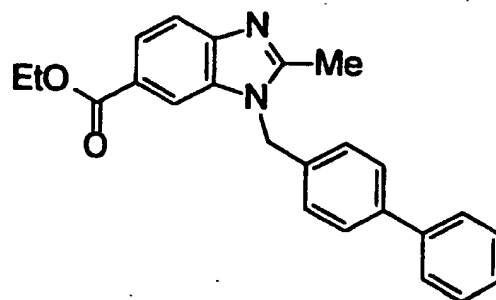
(98)



(99)

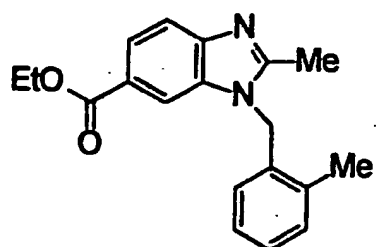


(100)

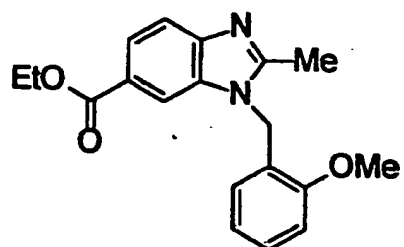


(101)

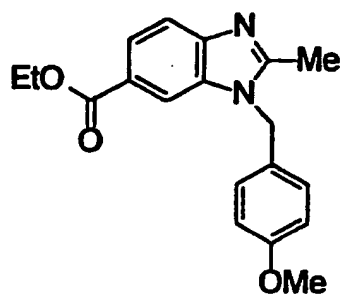
FIG. 11



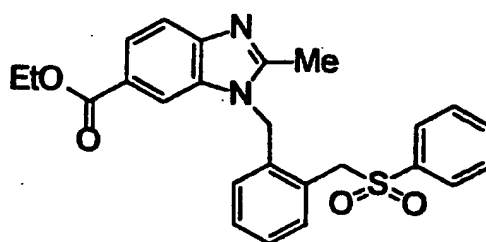
(102)



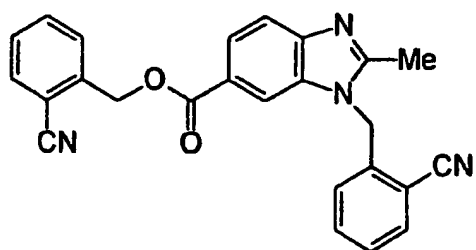
(103)



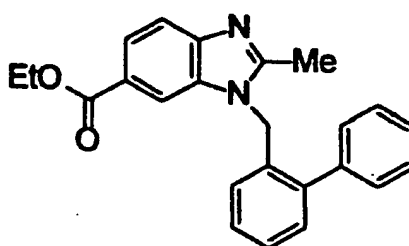
(104)



(105)

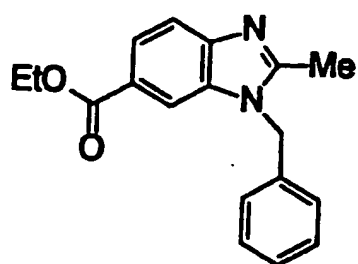


(106)

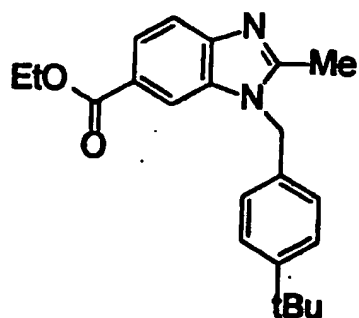


(107)

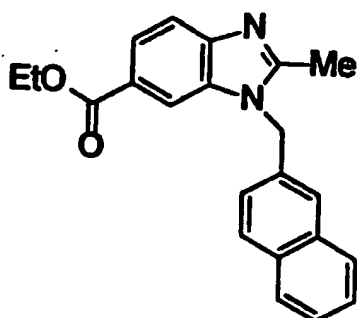
FIG. 12



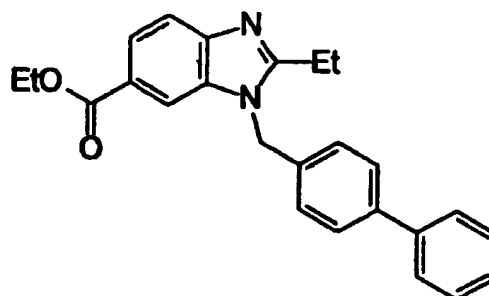
(108)



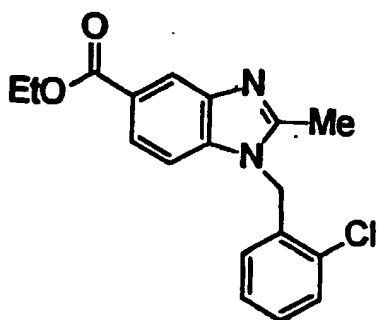
(109)



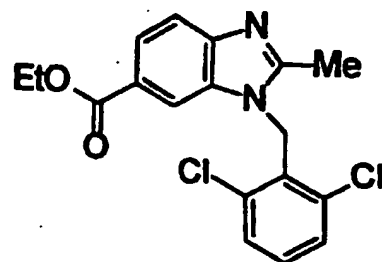
(110)



(111)

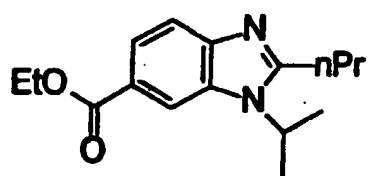


(112)

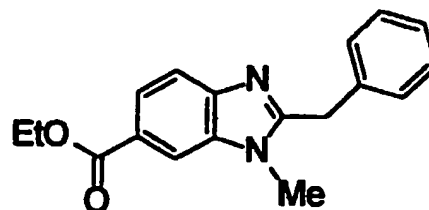


(113)

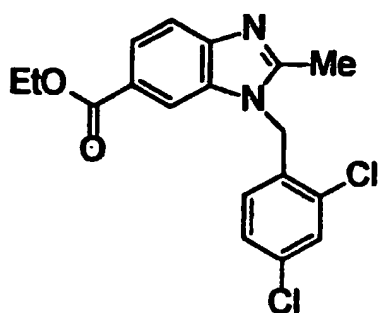
FIG. 13



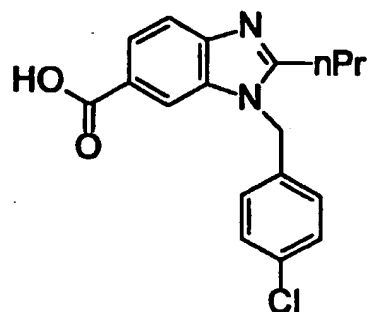
(114)



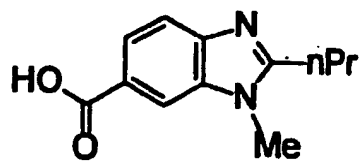
(115)



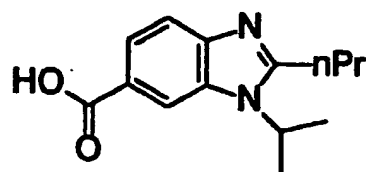
(116)



(117)

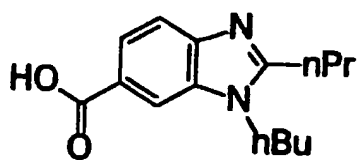


(118)

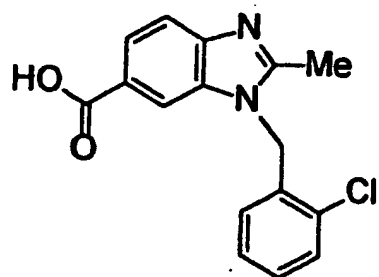


(119)

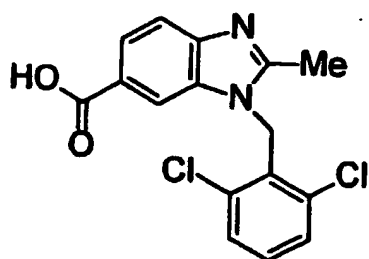
FIG. 14



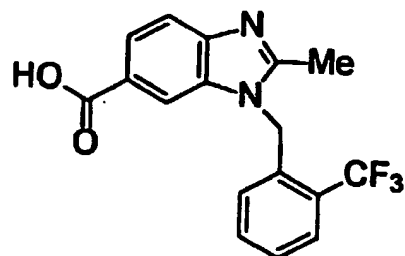
(120)



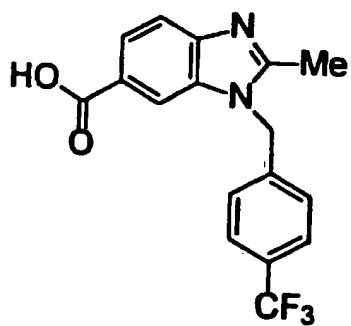
(121)



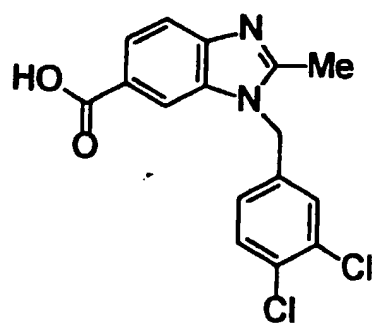
(122)



(123)

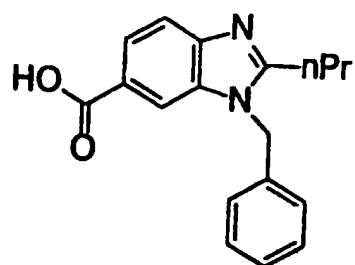


(124)

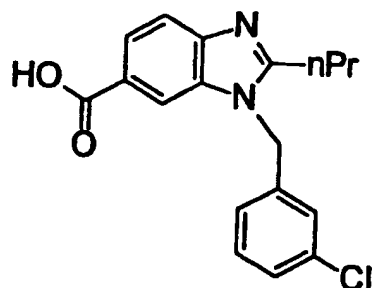


(125)

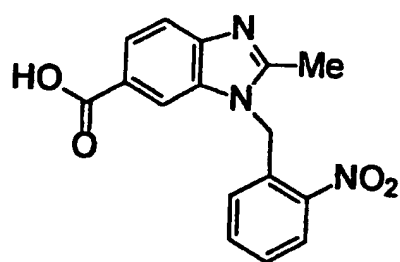
FIG. 15



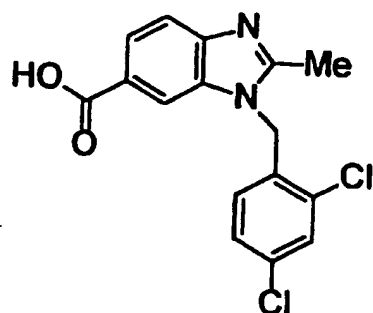
(126)



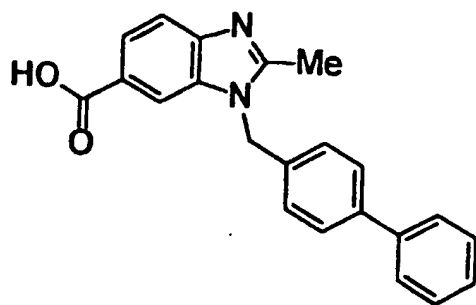
(127)



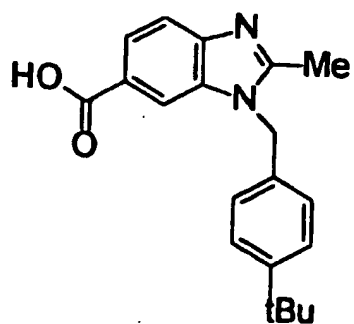
(128)



(129)

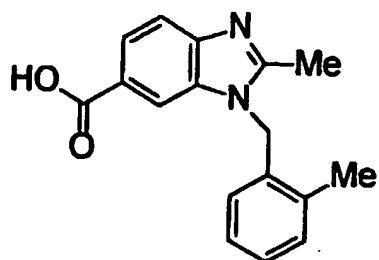


(130)

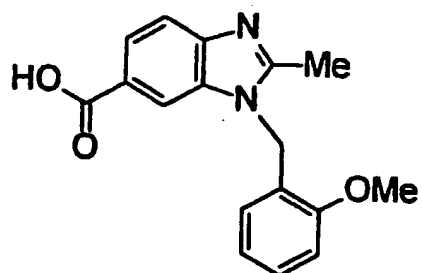


(131)

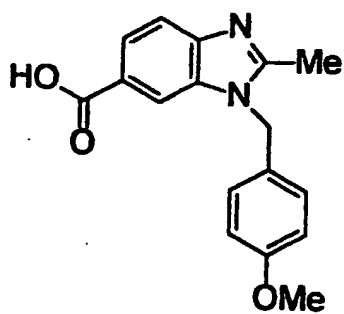
FIG. 16



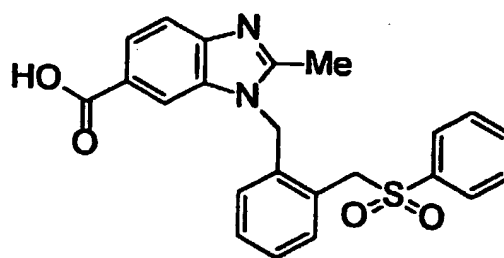
(132)



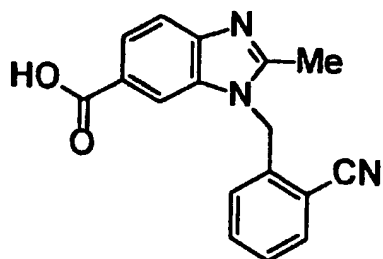
(133)



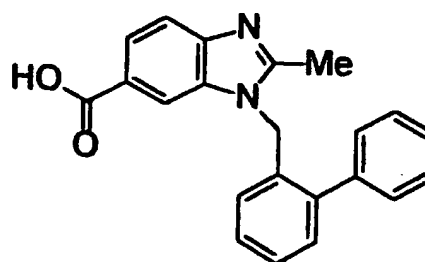
(134)



(135)

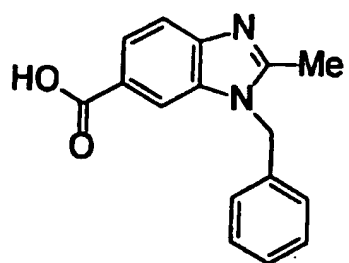


(136)

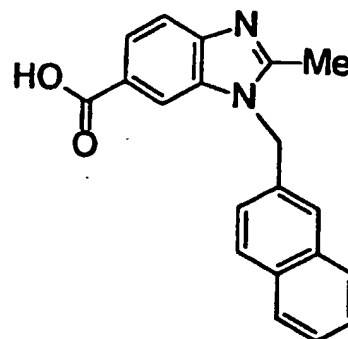


(137)

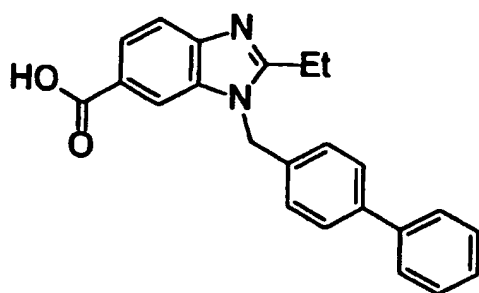
FIG. 17



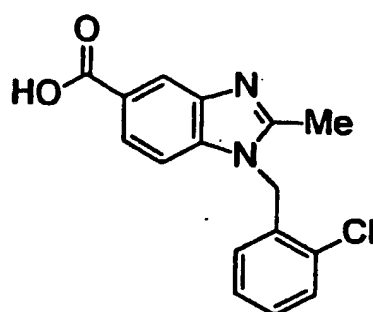
(138)



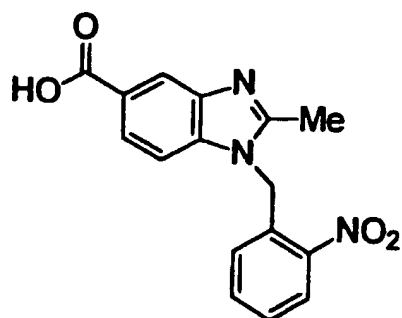
(139)



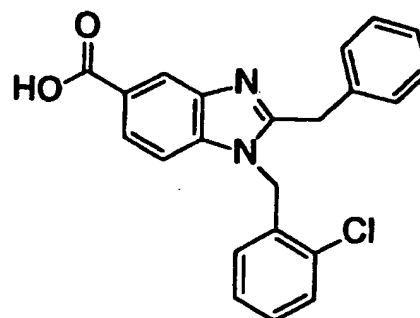
(140)



(141)

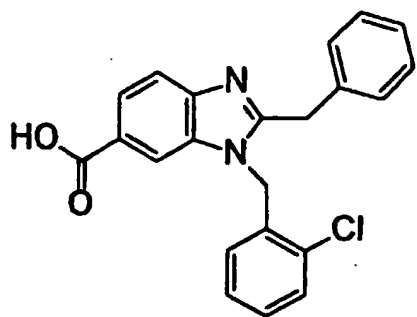


(142)

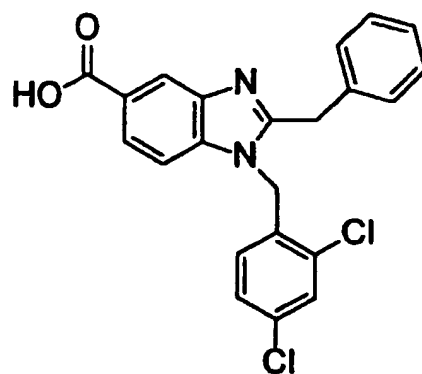


(143)

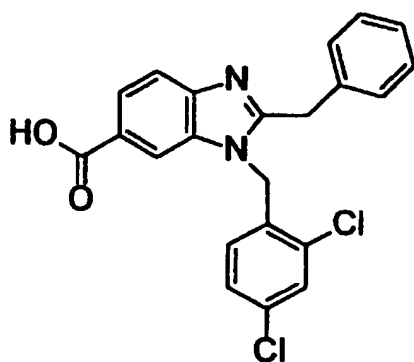
FIG. 18



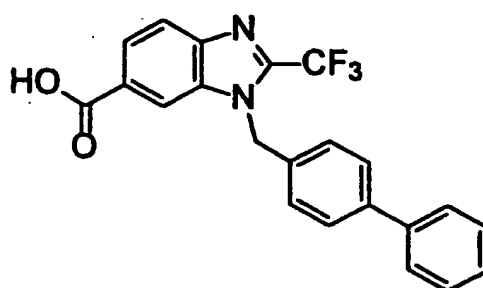
(144)



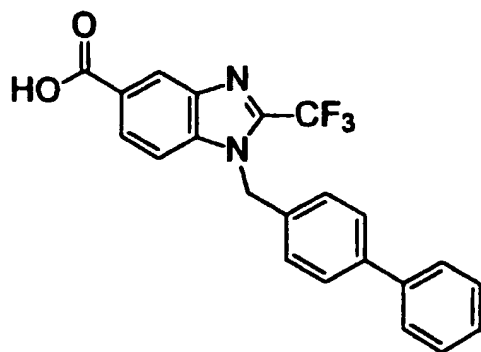
(145)



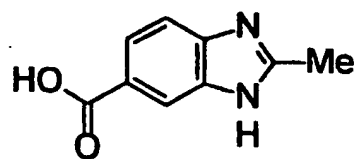
(146)



(147)

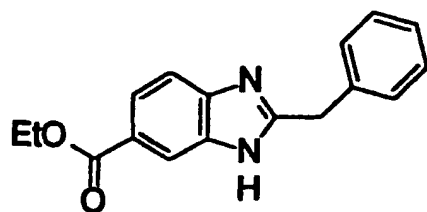


(148)

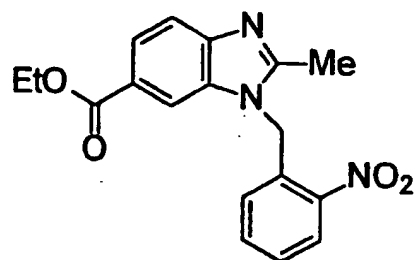


(149)

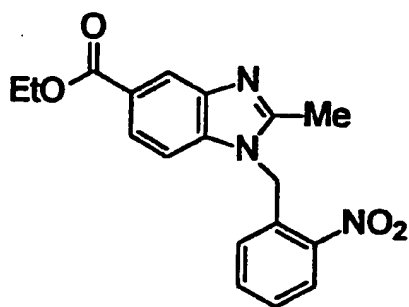
FIG. 19



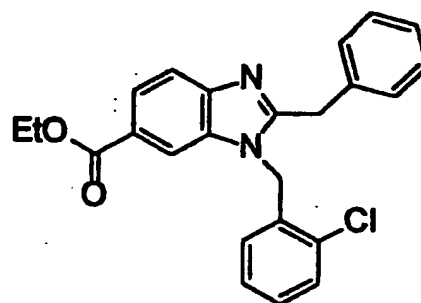
(150)



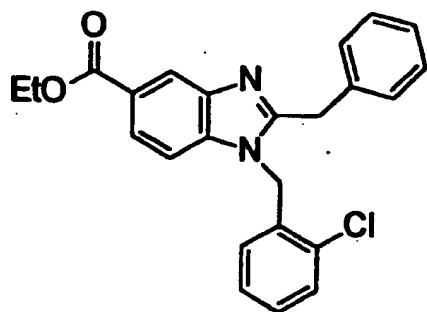
(151)



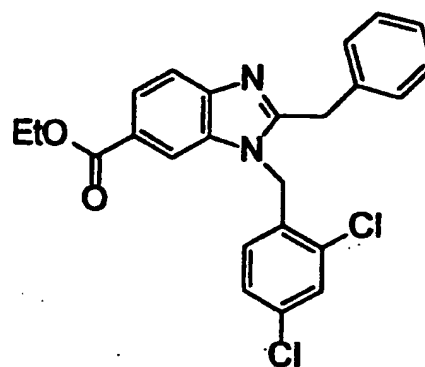
(152)



(153)



(154)



(155)

FIG. 20

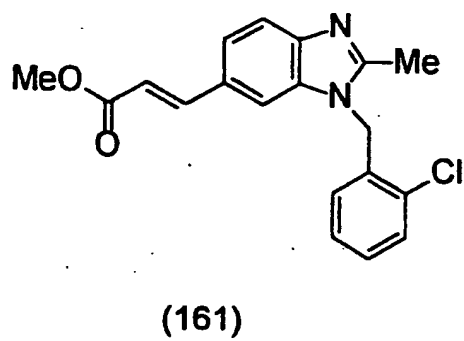
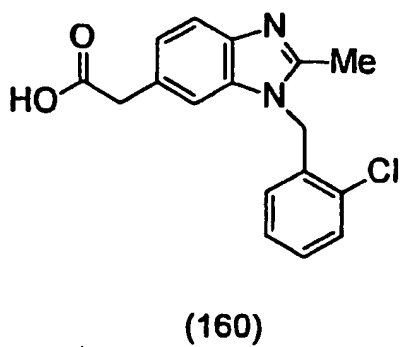
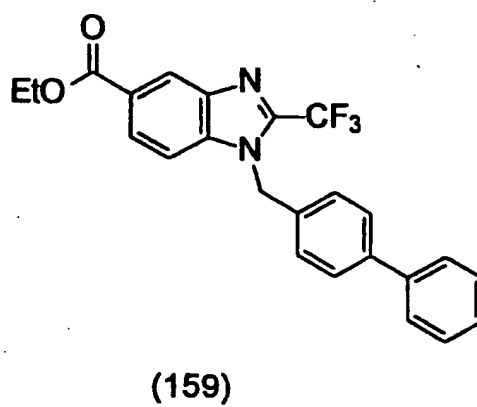
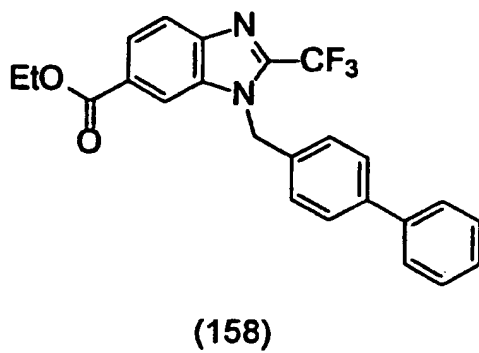
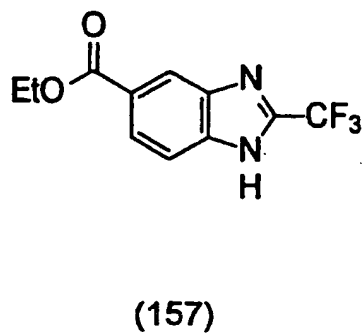
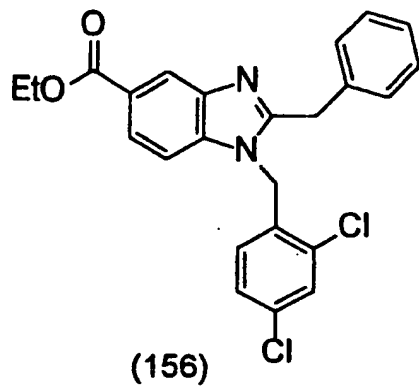
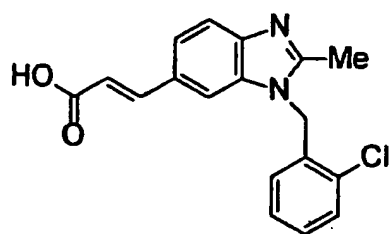
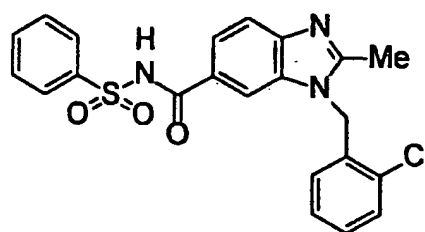


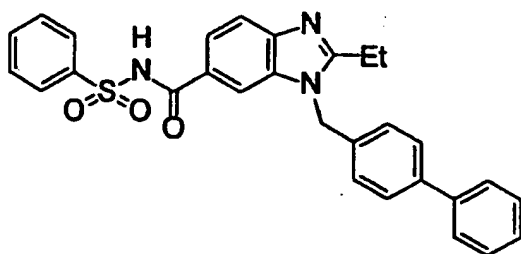
FIG. 21



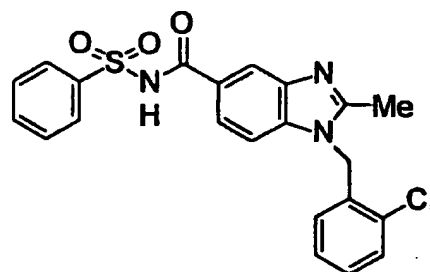
(162)



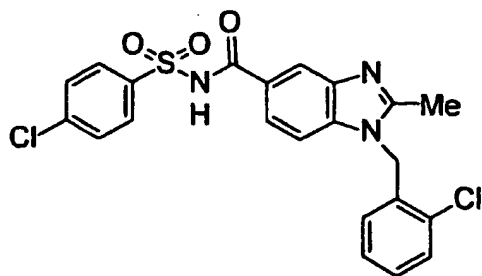
(163)



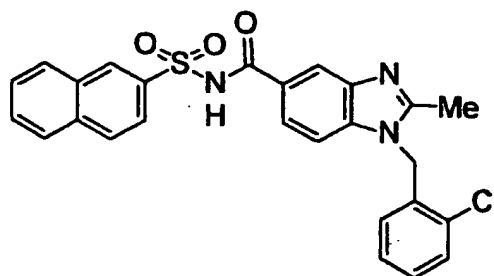
(164)



(165)



(166)



(167)

FIG. 22

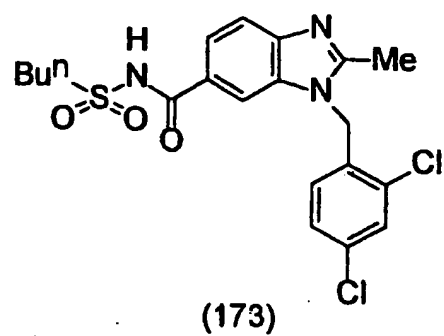
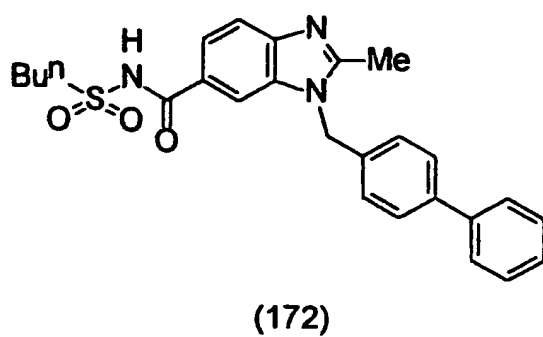
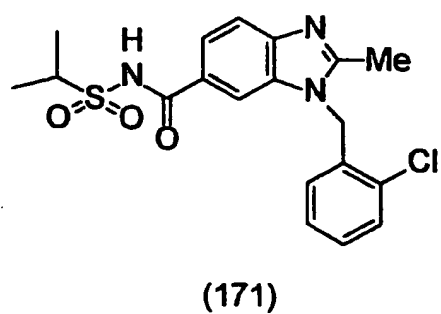
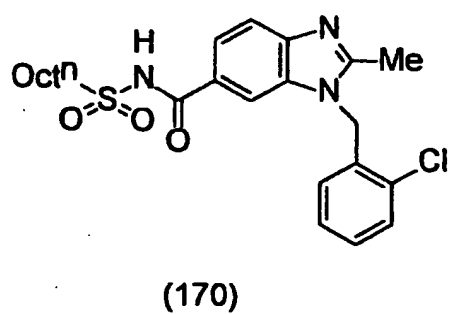
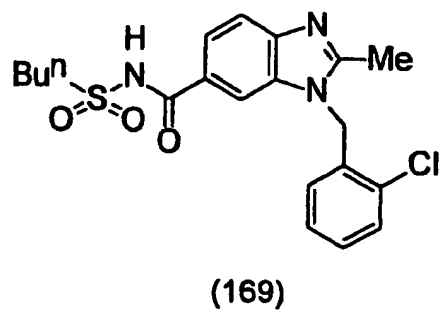
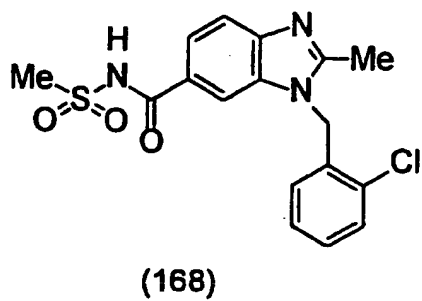
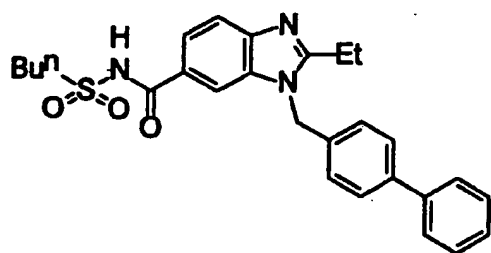
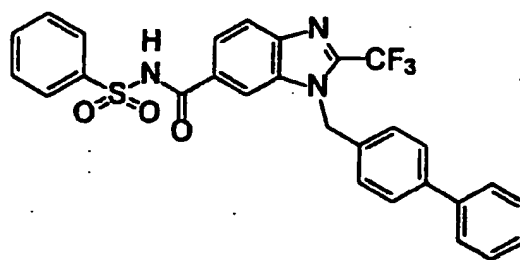


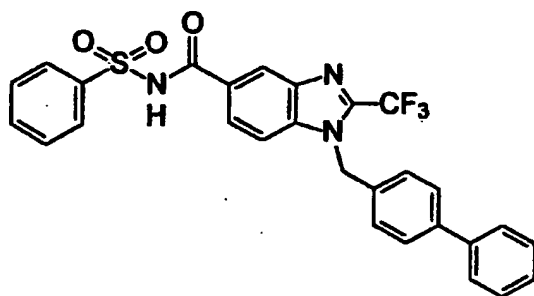
FIG. 23



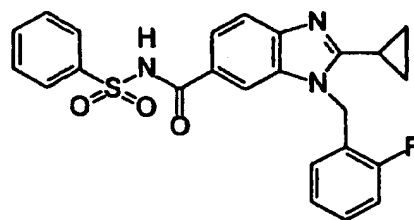
(174)



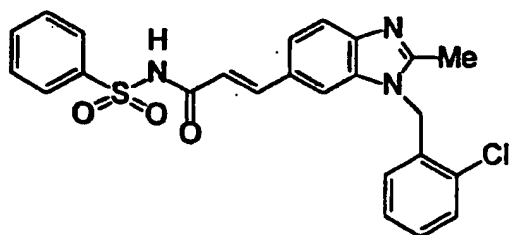
(175)



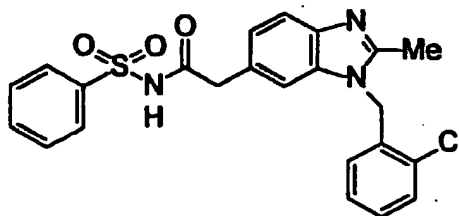
(176)



(177)



(178)



(179)

FIG. 24

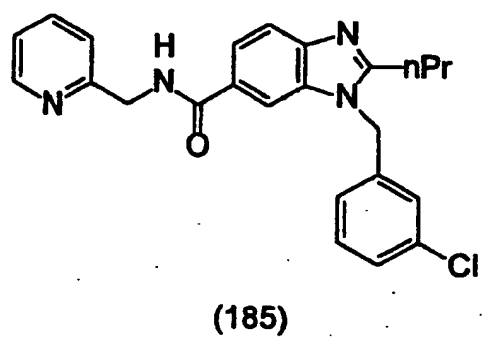
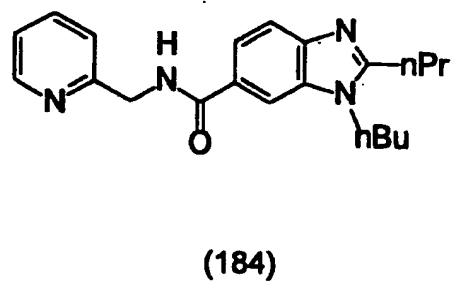
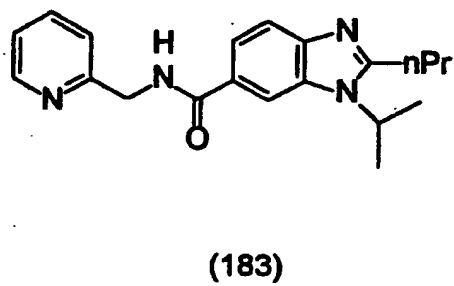
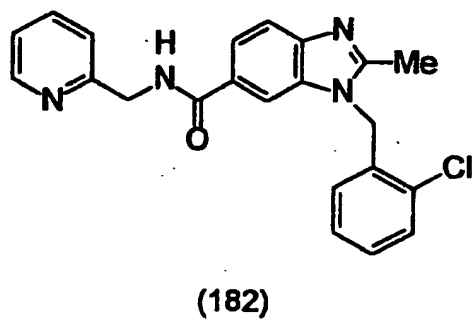
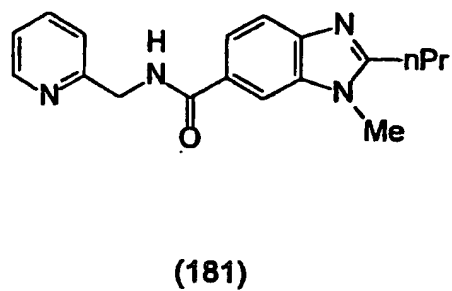
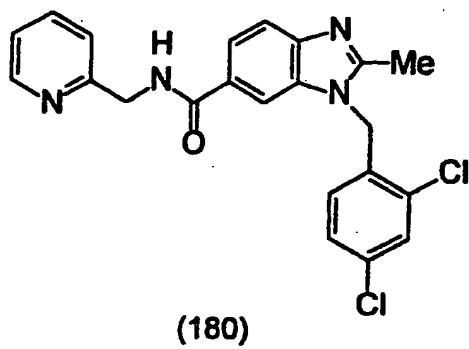
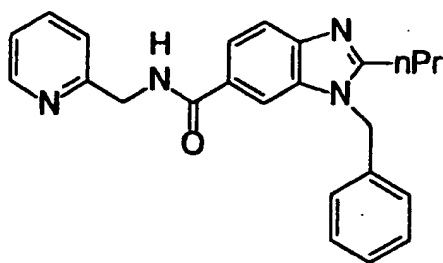
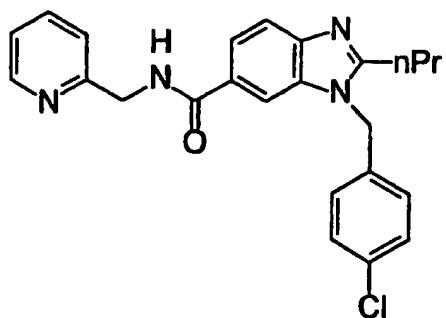


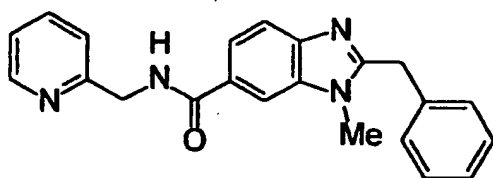
FIG. 25



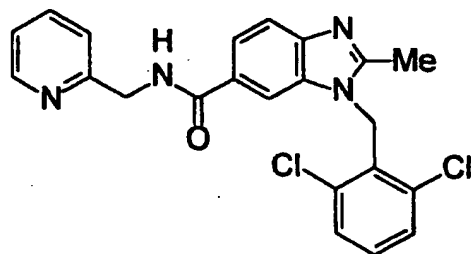
(186)



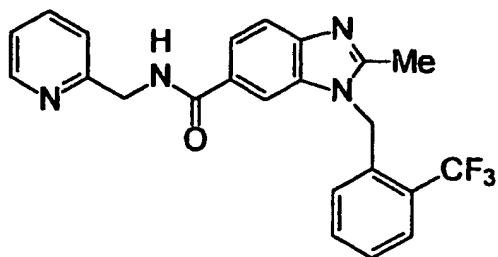
(187)



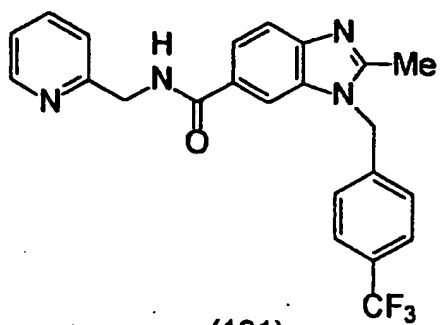
(188)



(189)



(190)



(191)

FIG. 26

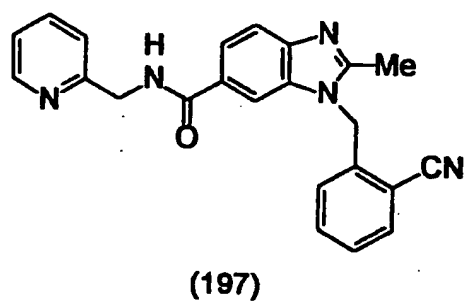
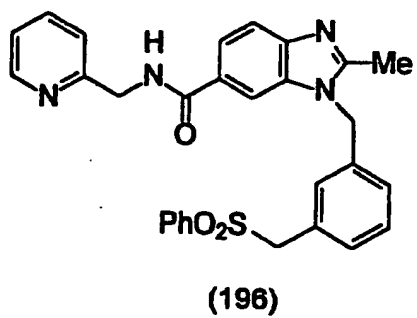
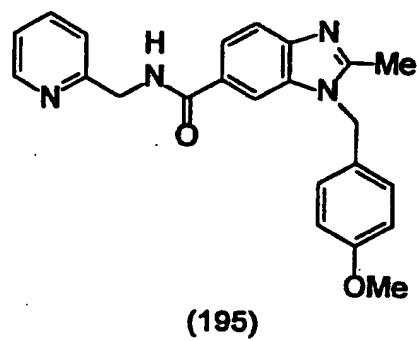
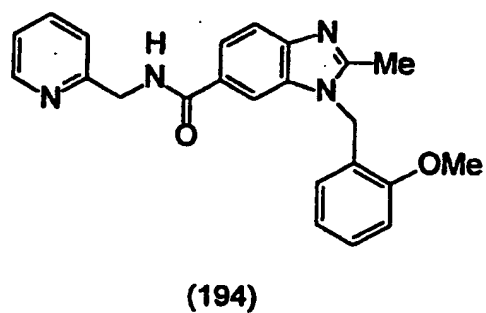
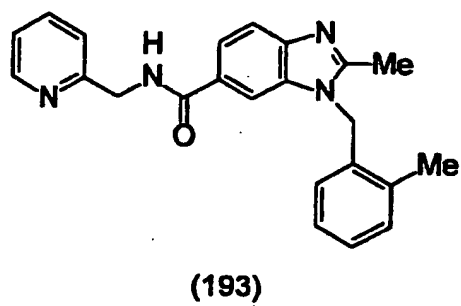
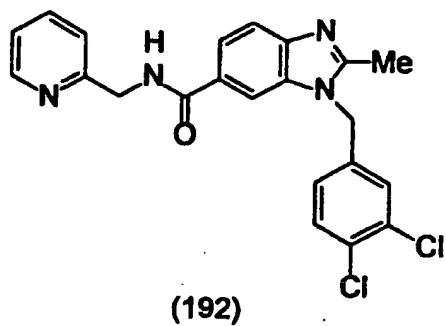
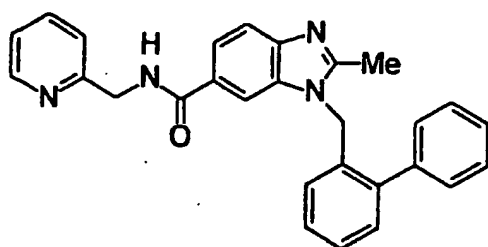
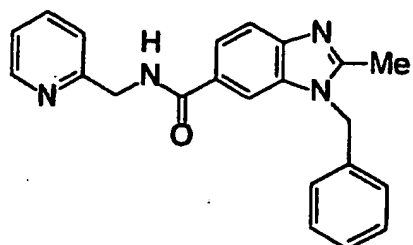


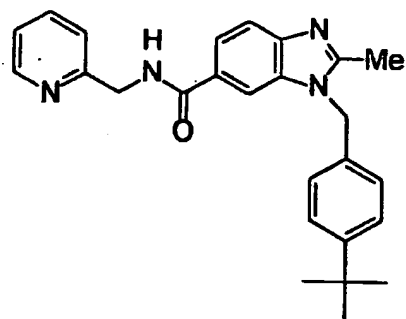
FIG. 27



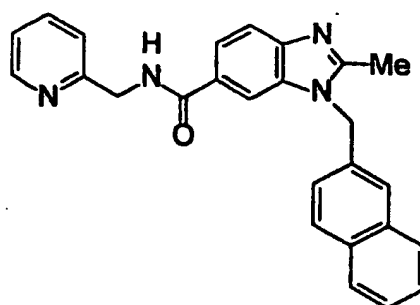
(198)



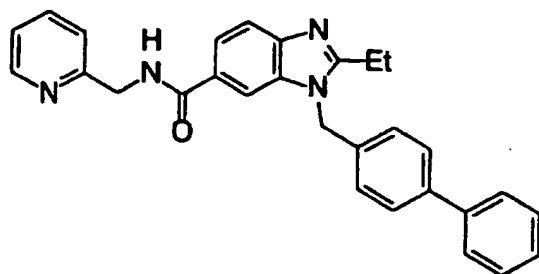
(199)



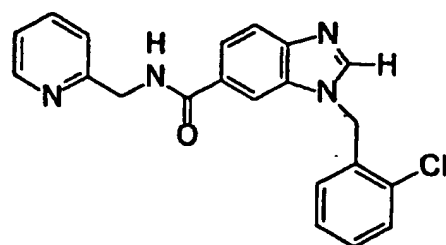
(200)



(201)

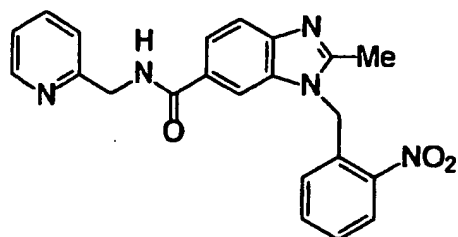


(202)

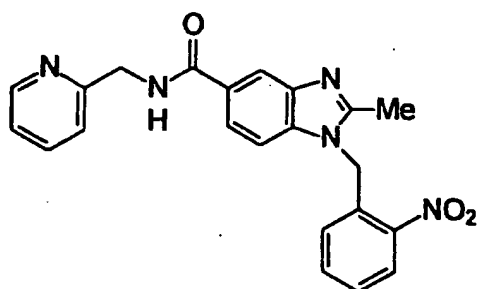


(203)

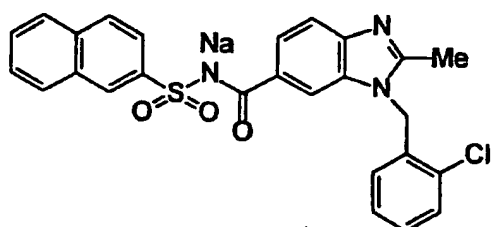
FIG. 28



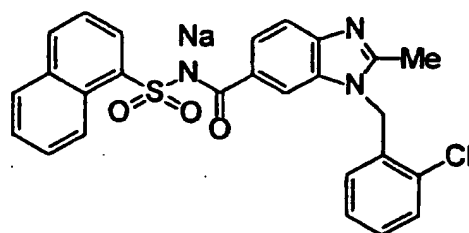
(204)



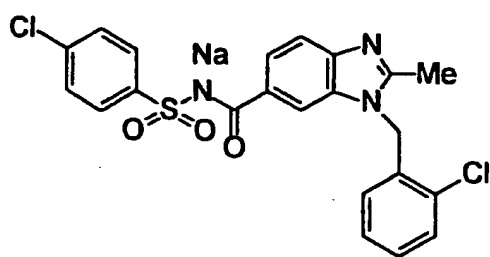
(205)



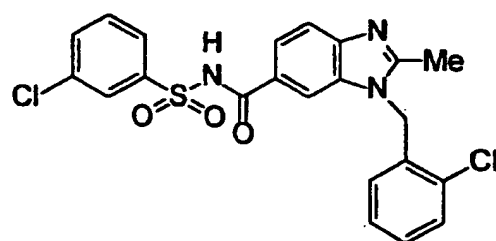
(206)



(207)

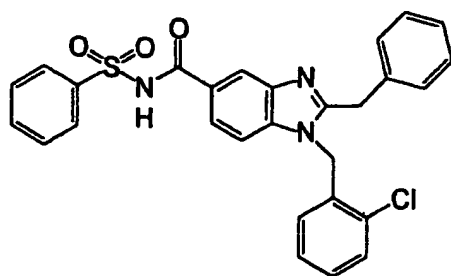


(208)

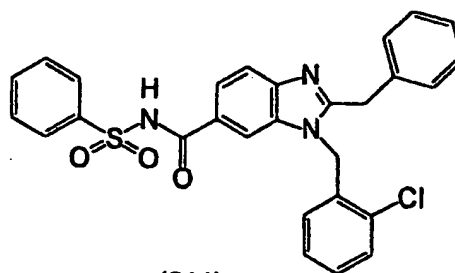


(209)

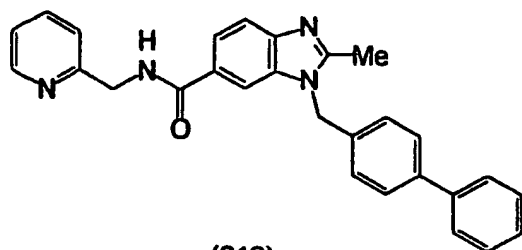
FIG. 29



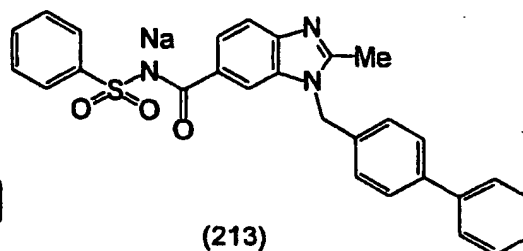
(210)



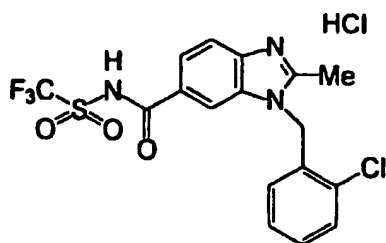
(211)



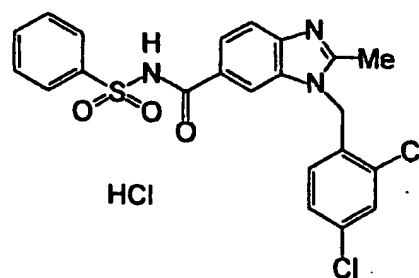
(212)



(213)



(214)



(215)

FIG. 30.

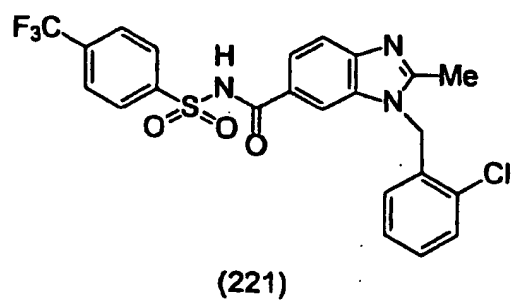
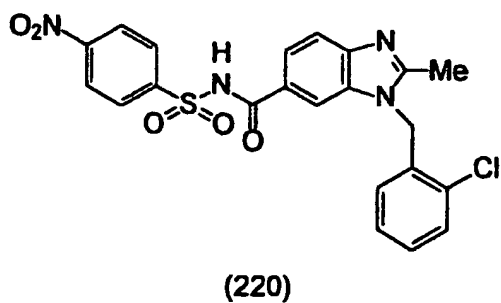
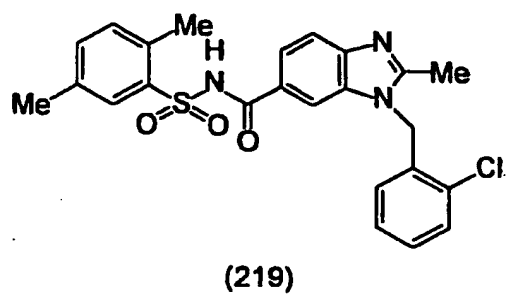
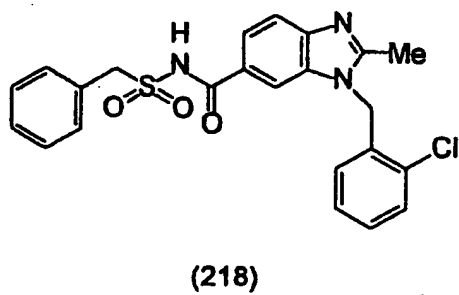
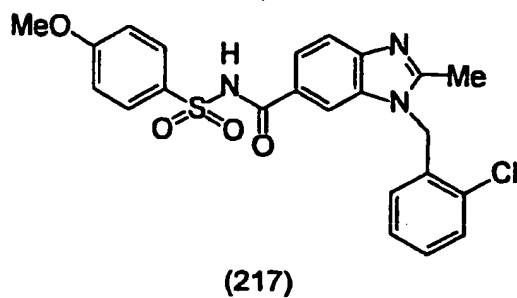
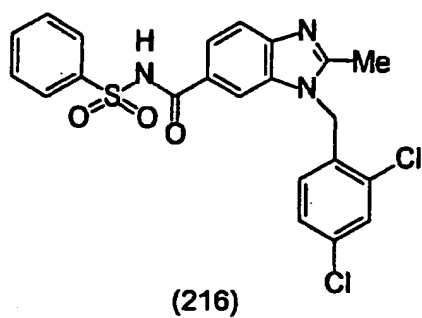
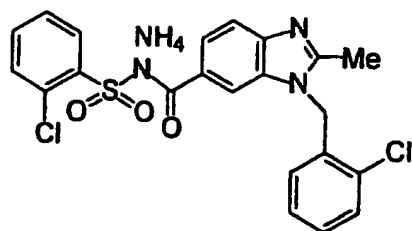
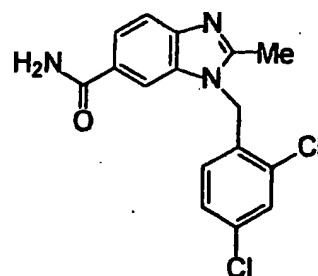


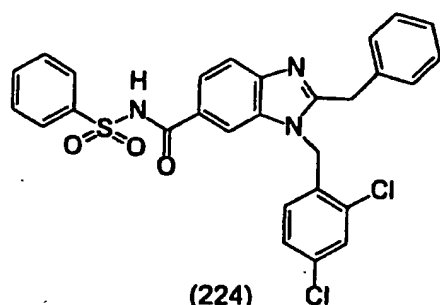
FIG. 31



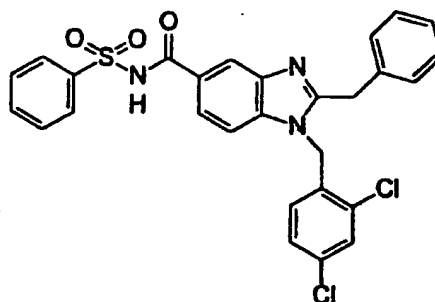
(222)



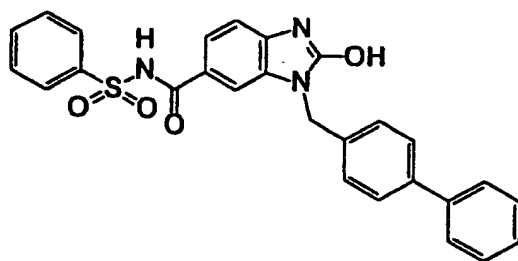
(223)



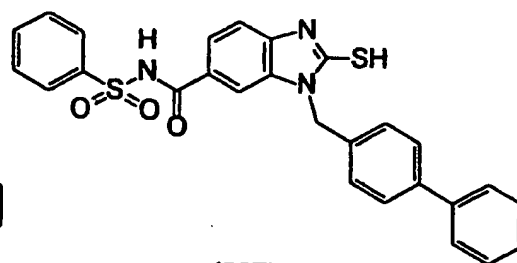
(224)



(225)

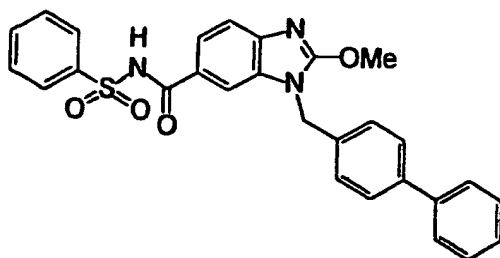


(226)

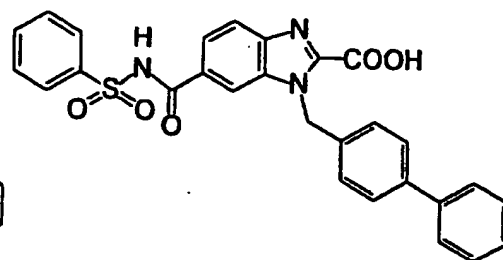


(227)

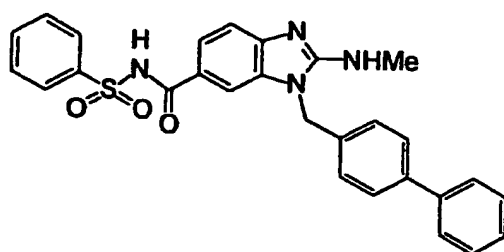
FIG. 32



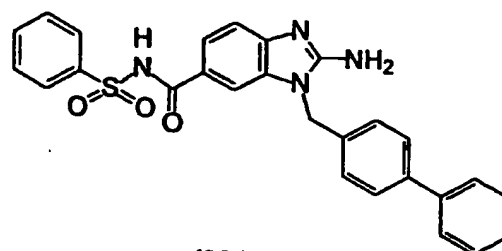
(228)



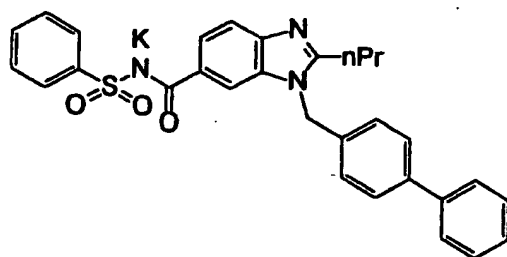
(229)



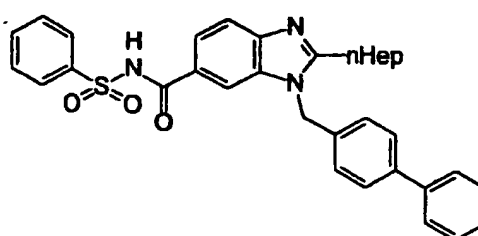
(230)



(231)

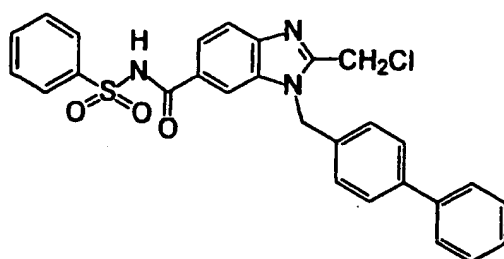


(232)

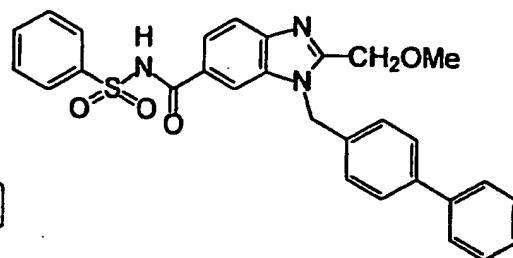


(233)

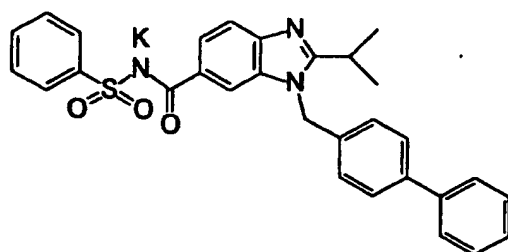
FIG. 33



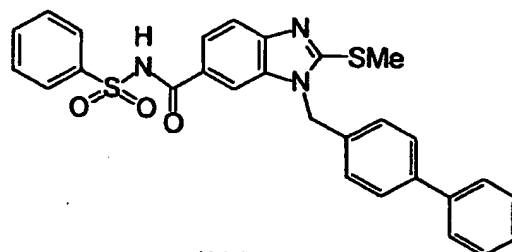
(234)



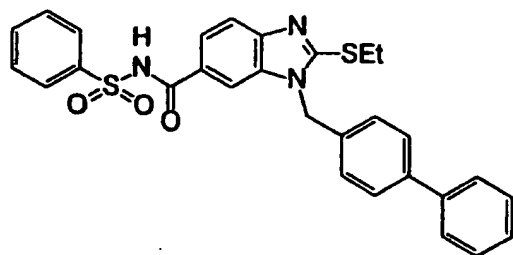
(235)



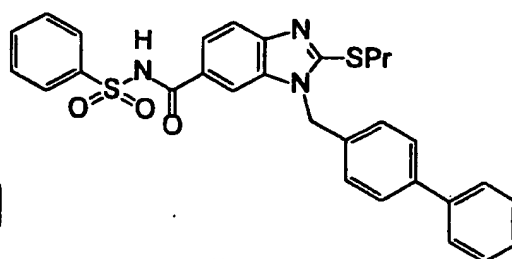
(236)



(237)

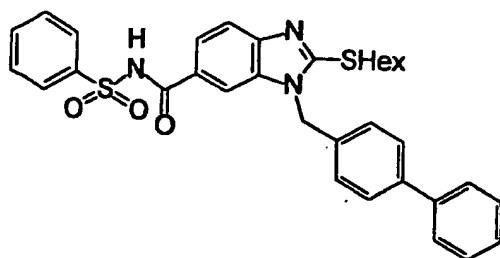


(238)

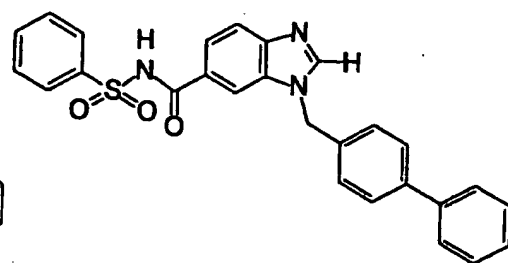


(239)

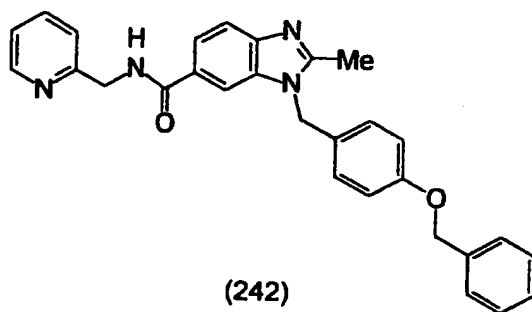
FIG. 34



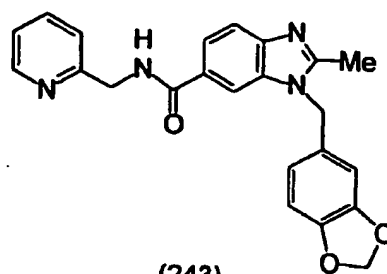
(240)



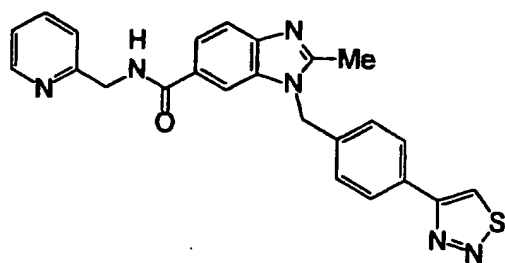
(241)



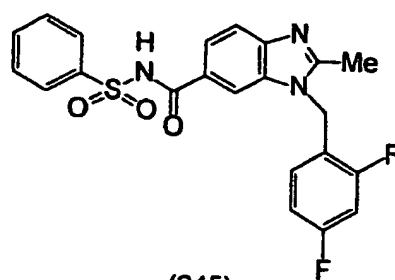
(242)



(243)

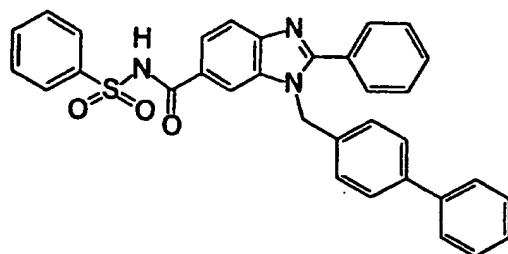


(244)

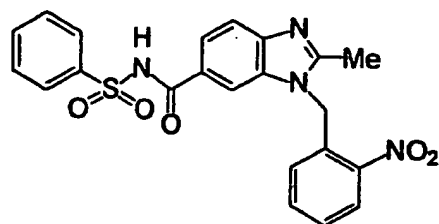


(245)

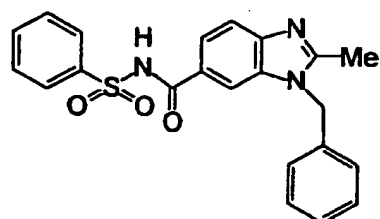
FIG. 35



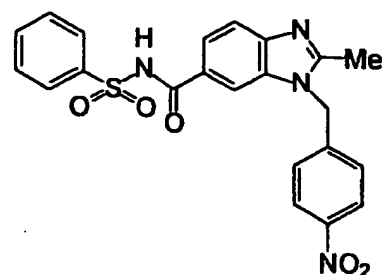
(246)



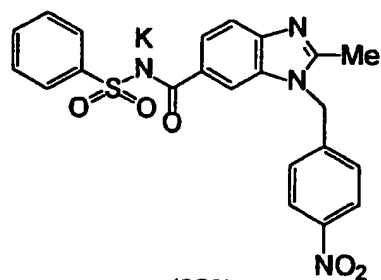
(247)



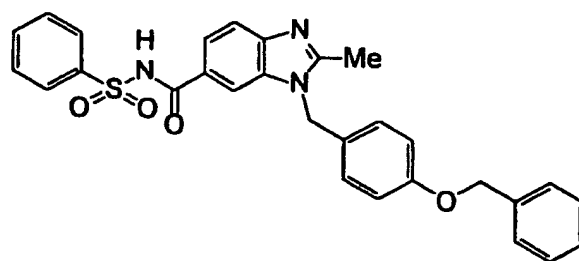
(248)



(249)

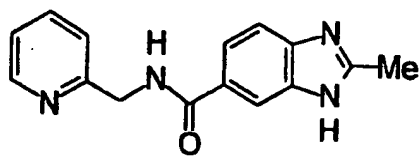


(250)

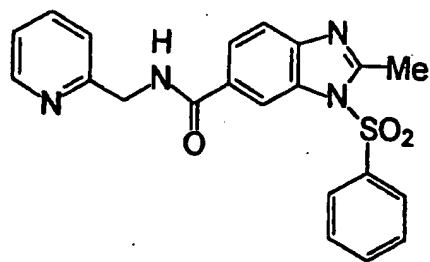


(251)

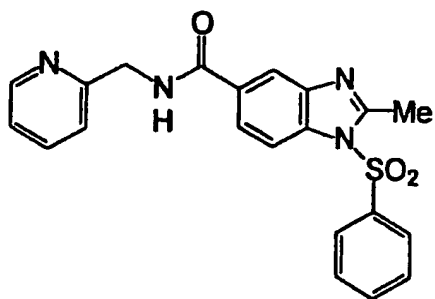
FIG. 36



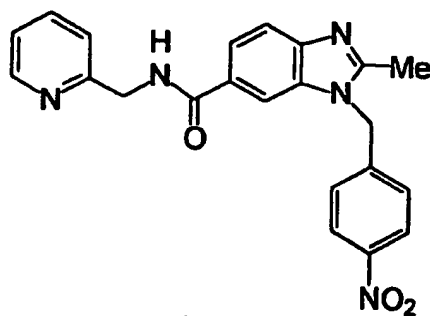
(252)



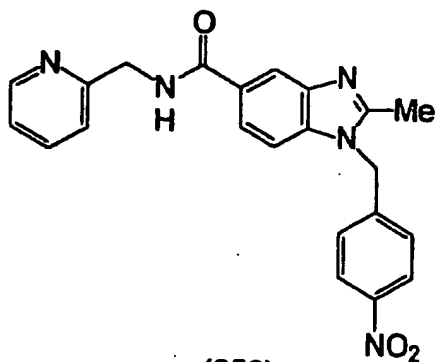
(253)



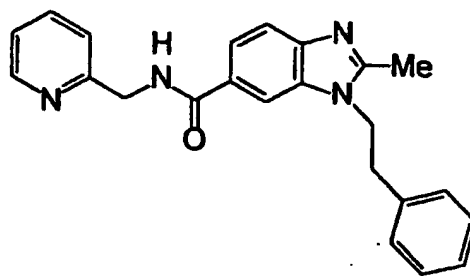
(254)



(255)



(256)



(257)

FIG. 37

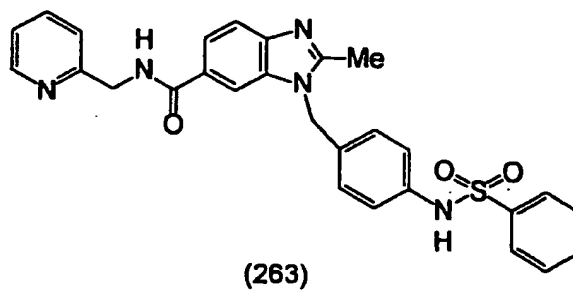
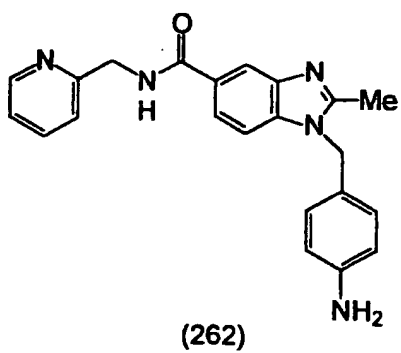
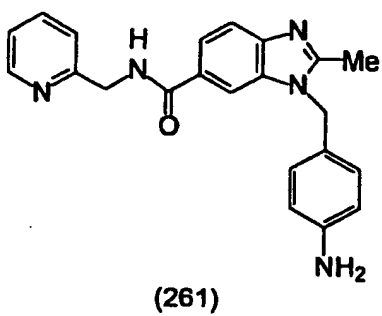
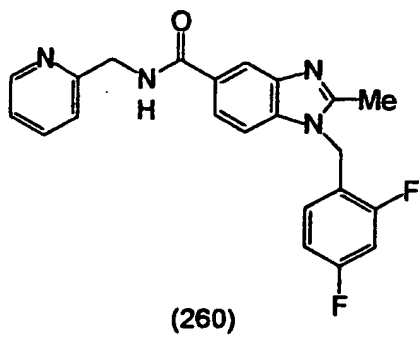
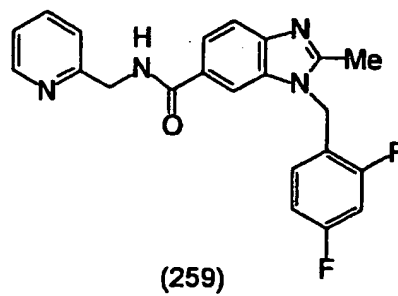
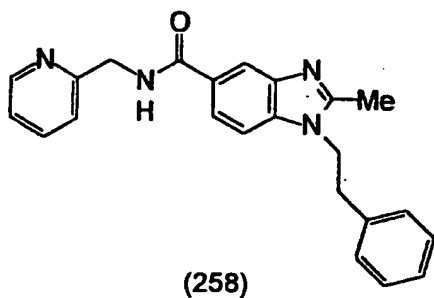


FIG. 38

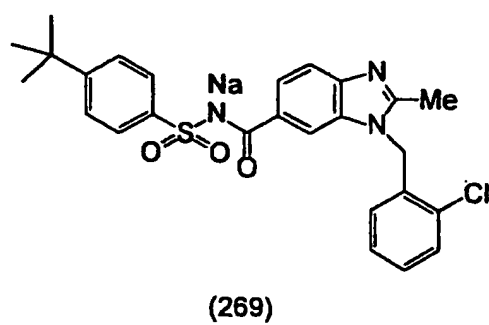
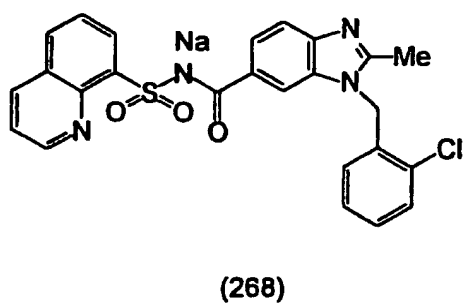
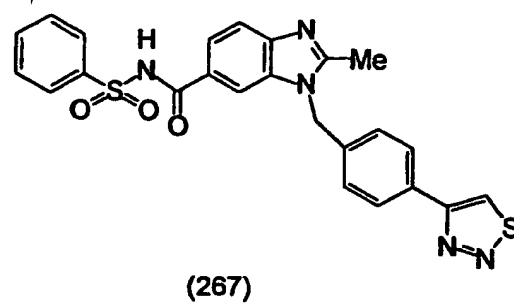
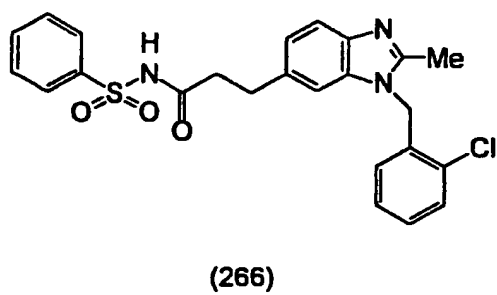
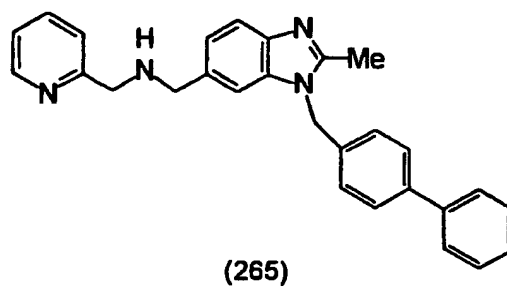
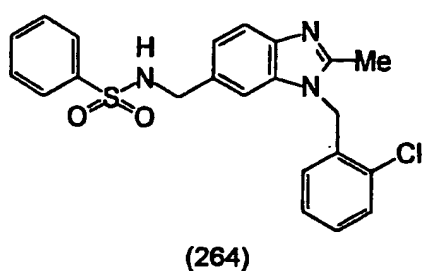


FIG. 39

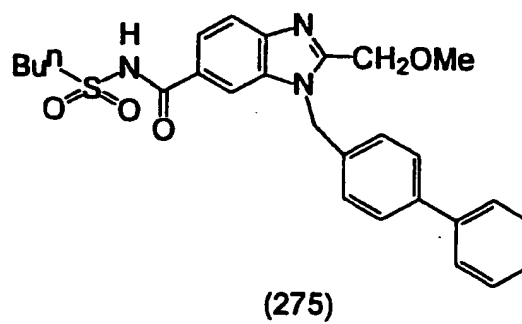
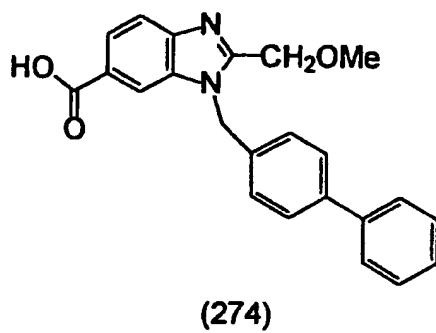
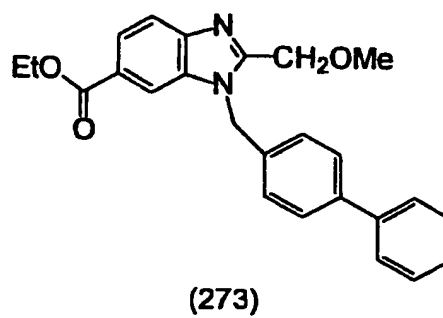
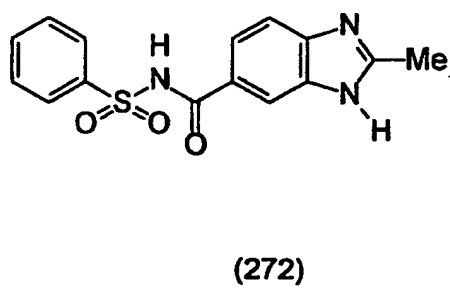
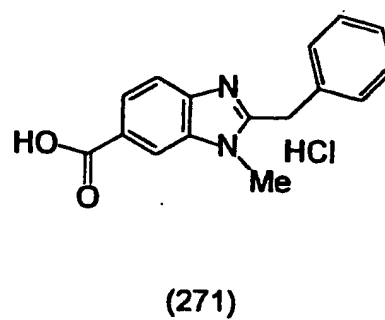
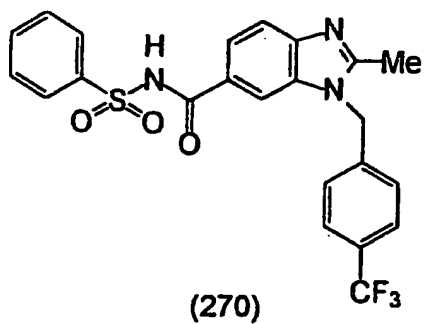
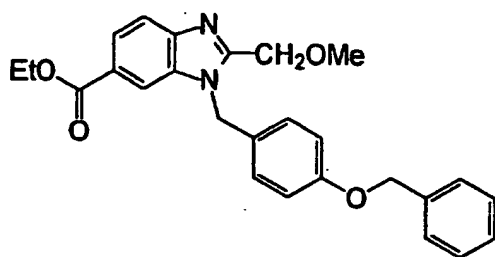
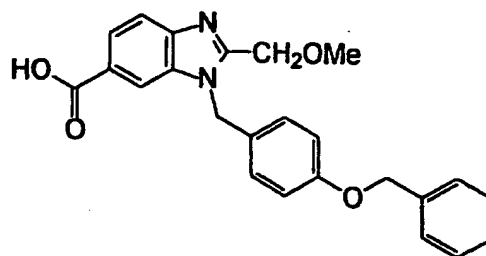


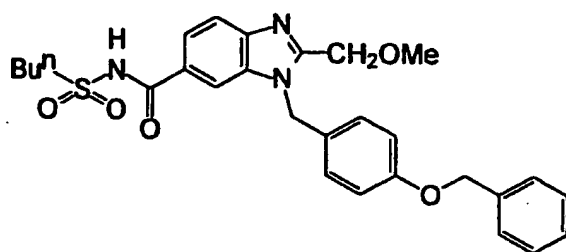
FIG. 40



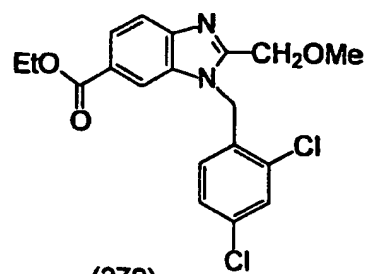
(276)



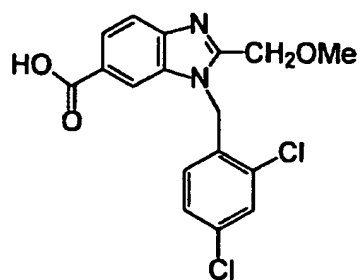
(277)



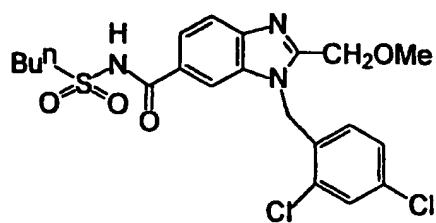
(278)



(279)

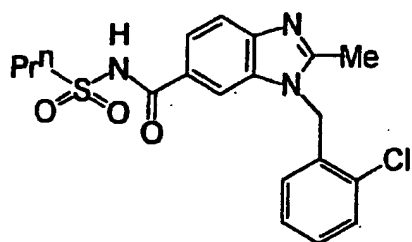


(280)

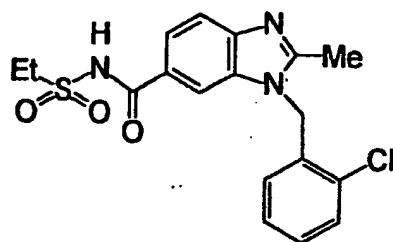


(281)

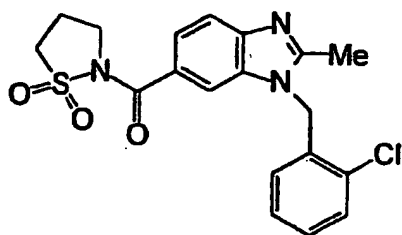
FIG. 41



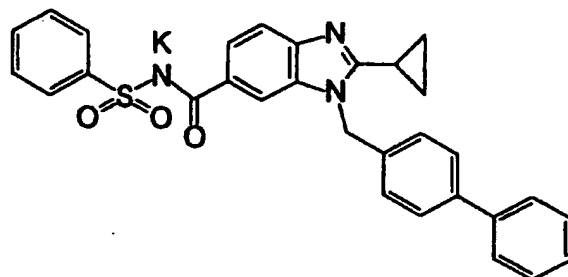
(282)



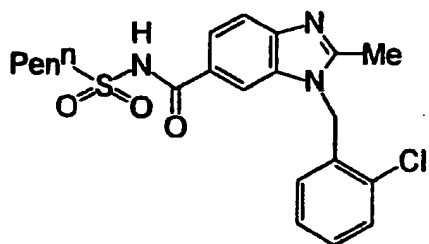
(283)



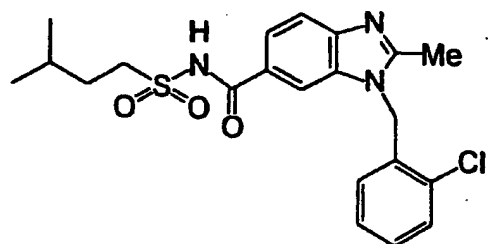
(284)



(285)



(286)



(287)

FIG. 42

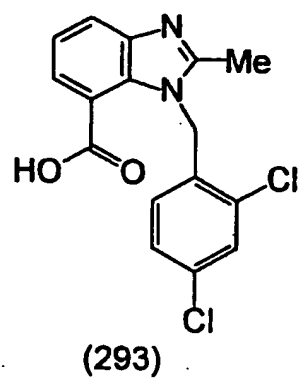
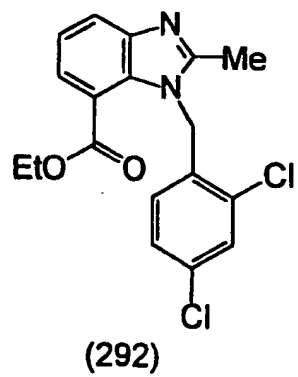
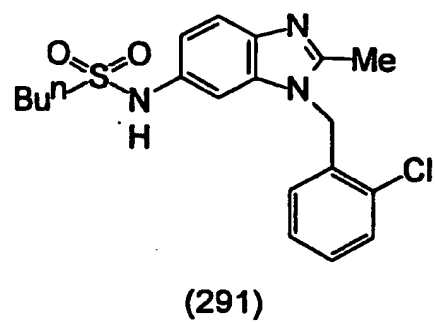
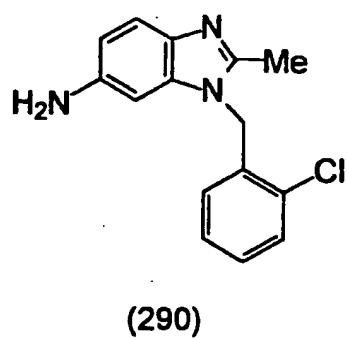
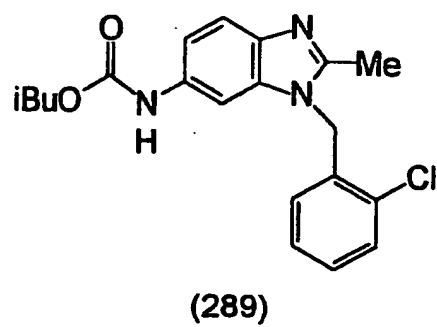
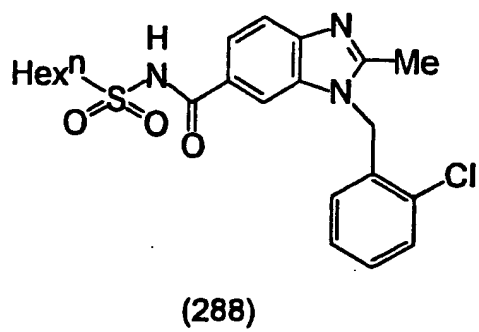


FIG. 43

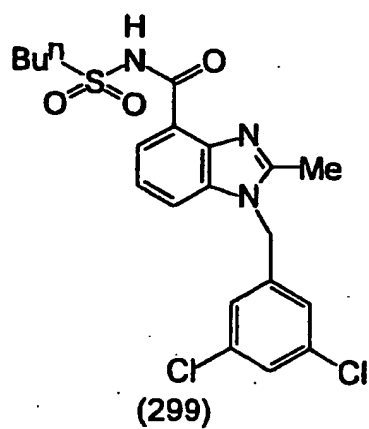
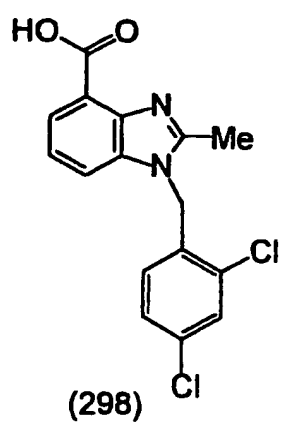
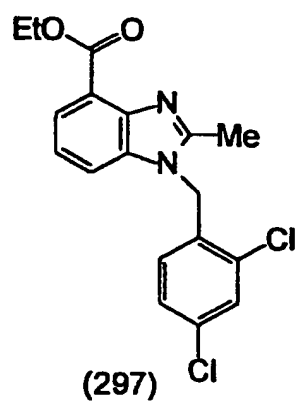
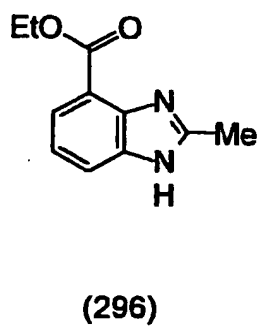
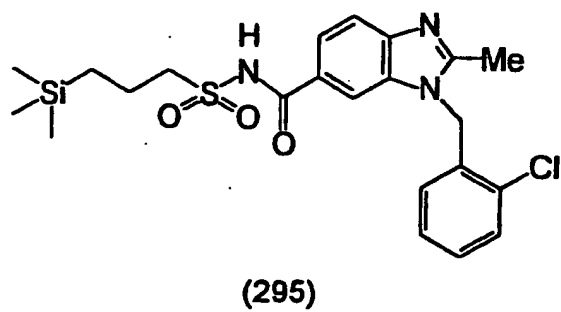
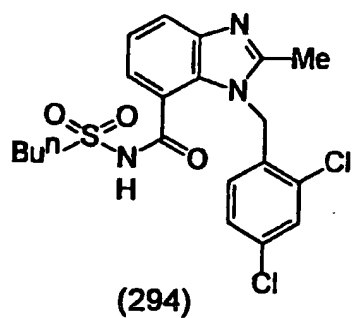
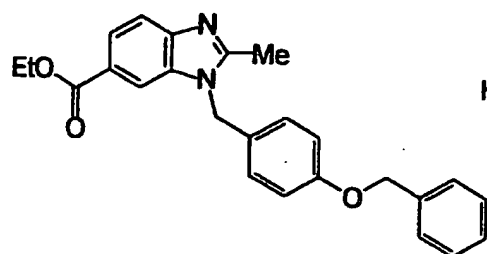
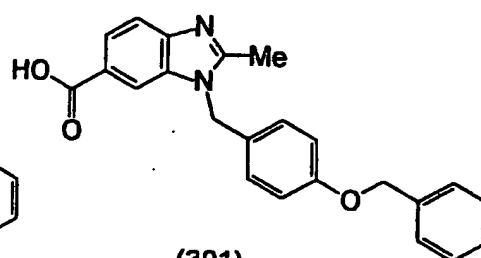


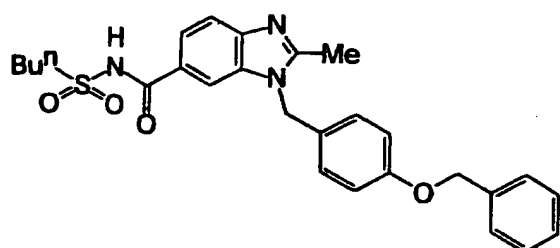
FIG. 44



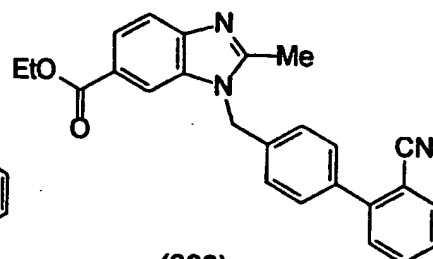
(300)



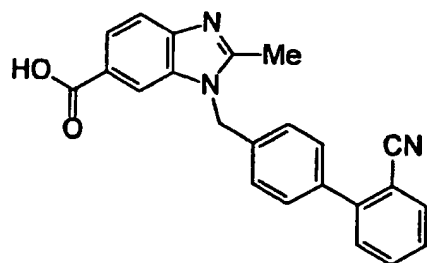
(301)



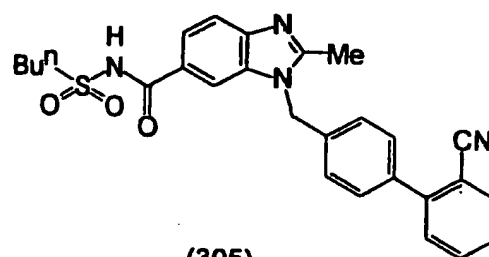
(302)



(303)

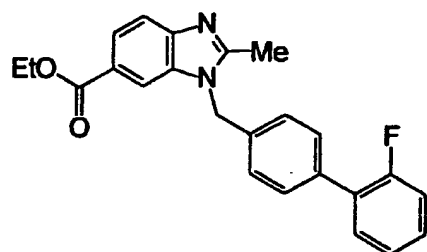


(304)

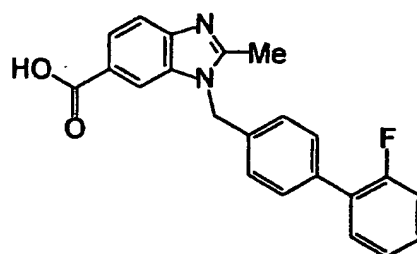


(305)

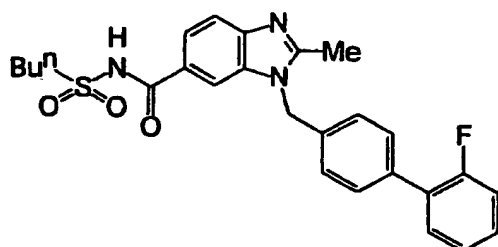
FIG. 45



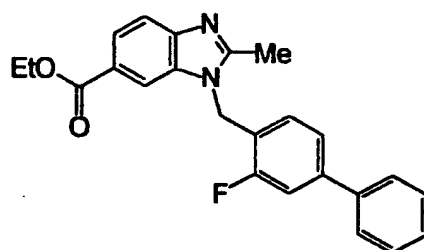
(306)



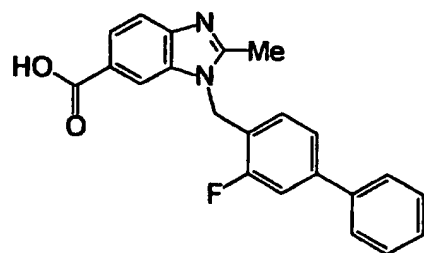
(307)



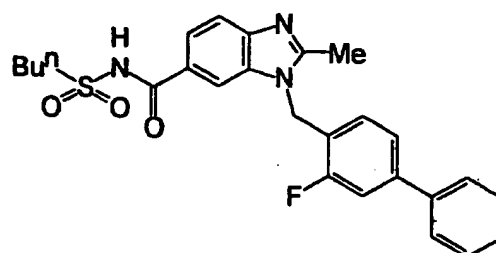
(308)



(309)



(310)



(311)

FIG. 46

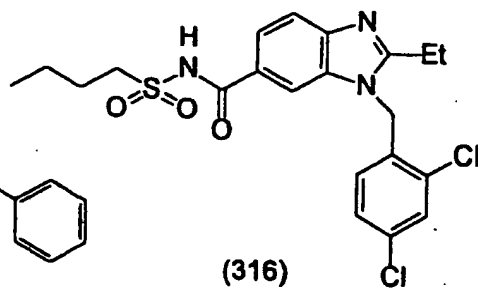
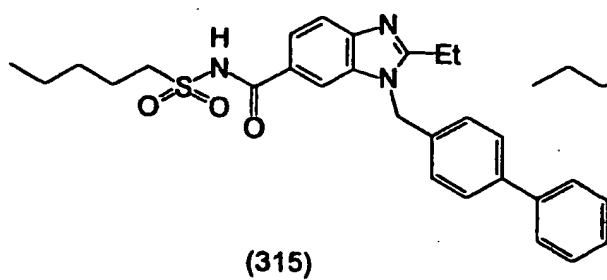
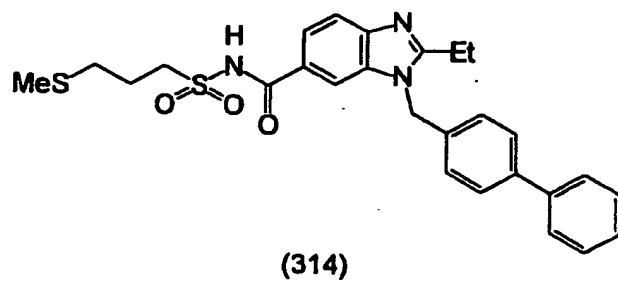
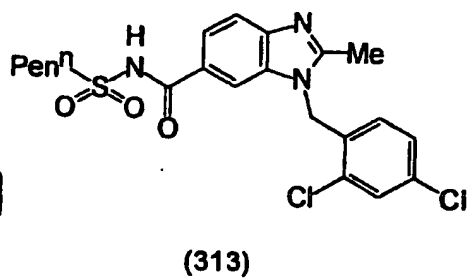
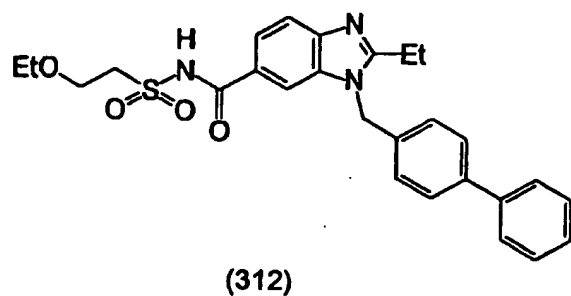


FIG. 47

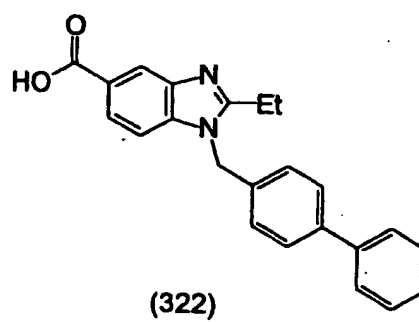
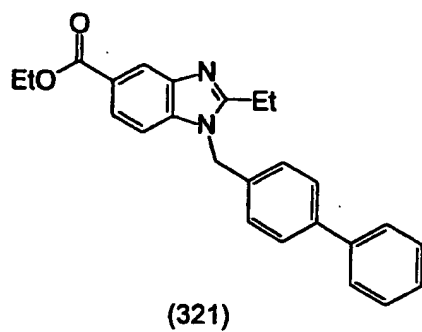
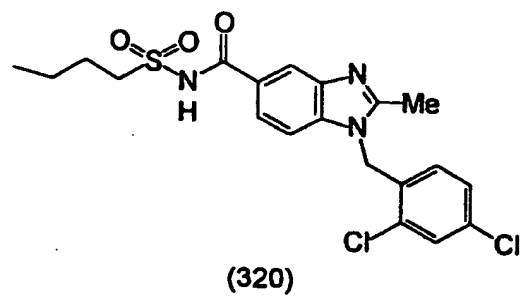
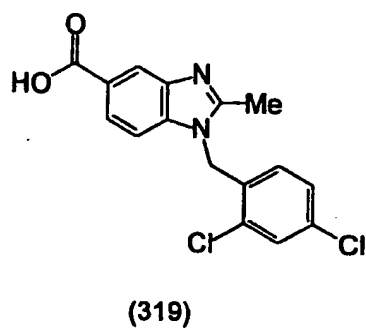
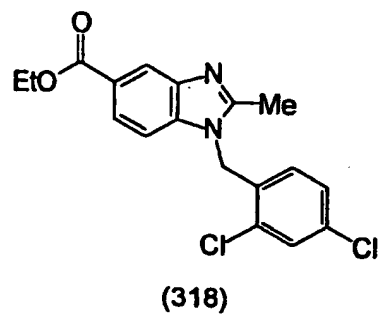
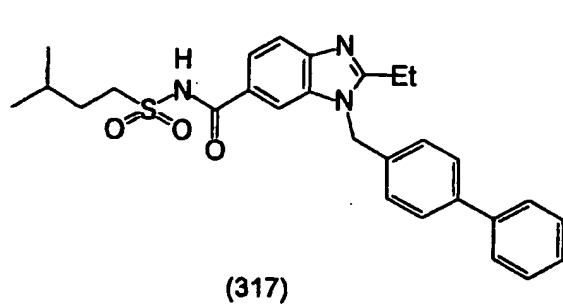


FIG. 48

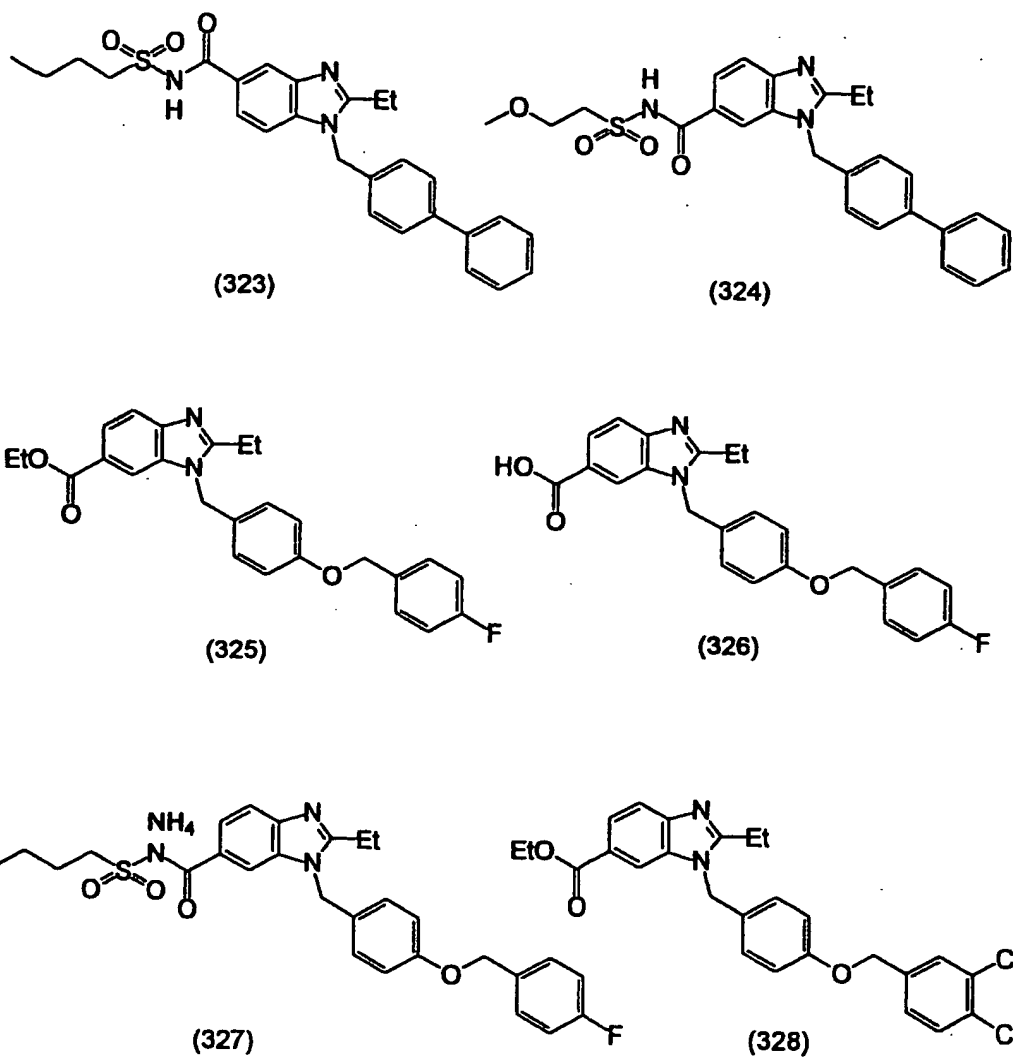


FIG. 49

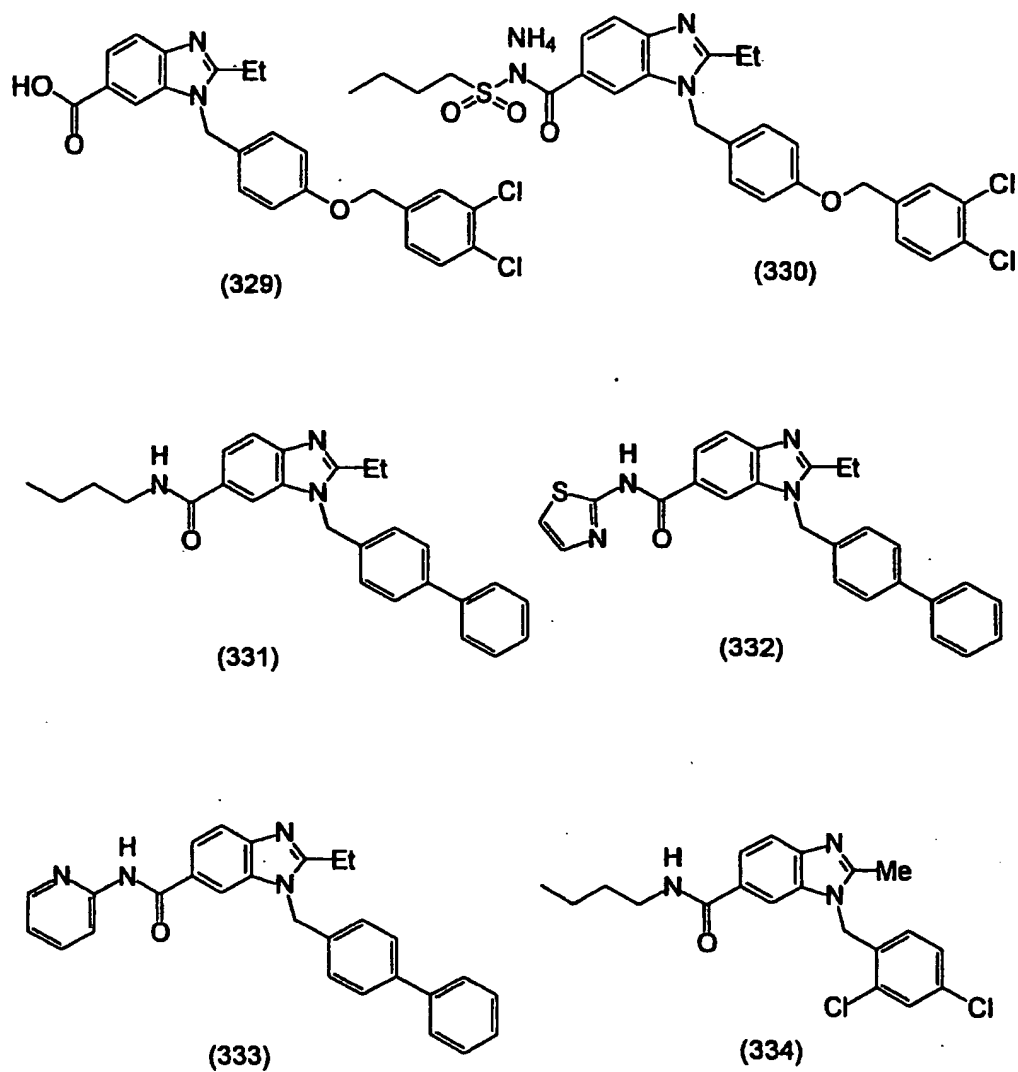
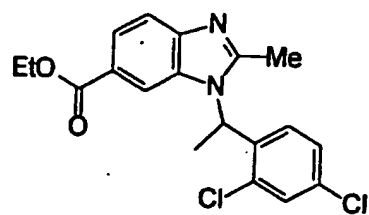
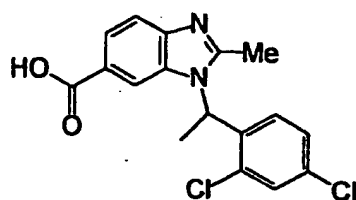


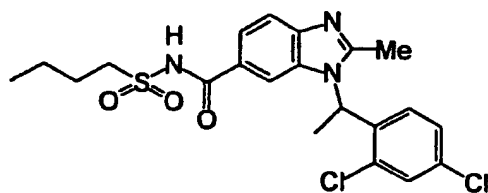
FIG. 50



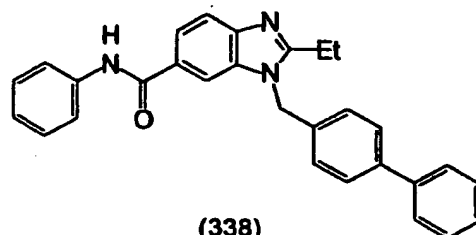
(335)



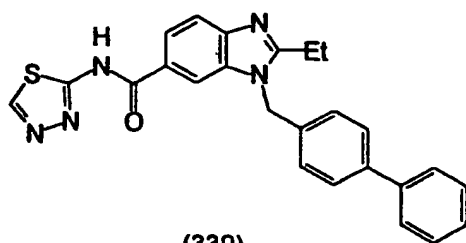
(336)



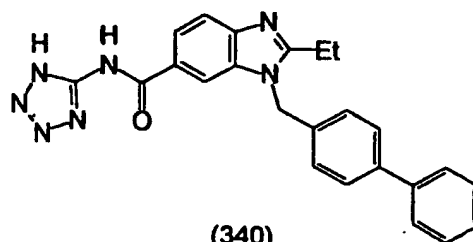
(337)



(338)



(339)



(340)

FIG. 51

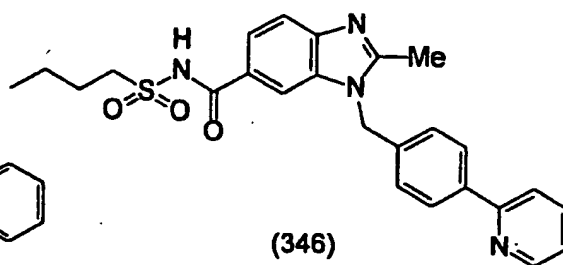
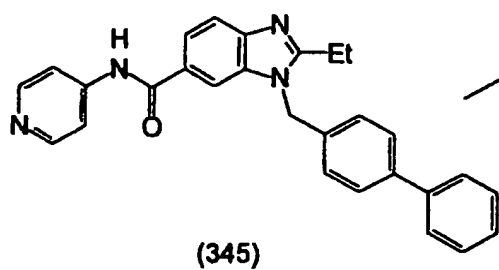
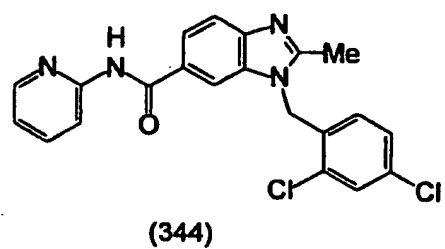
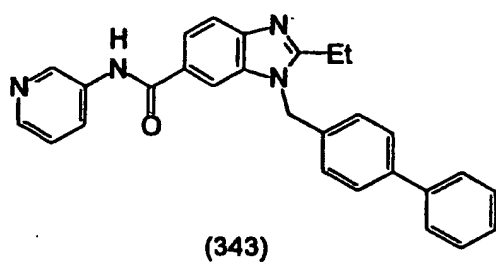
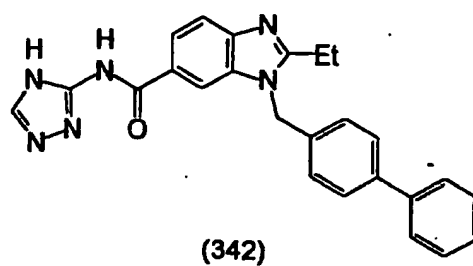
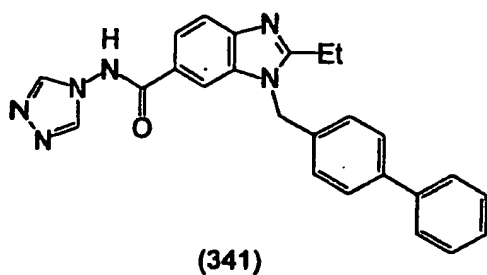
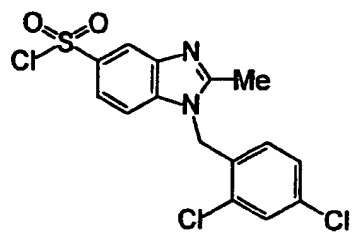
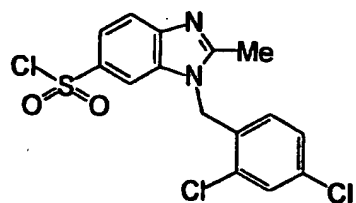


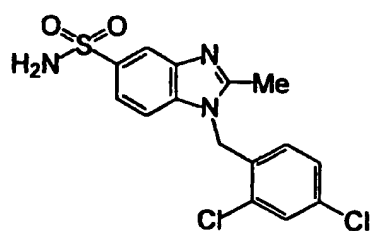
FIG. 52



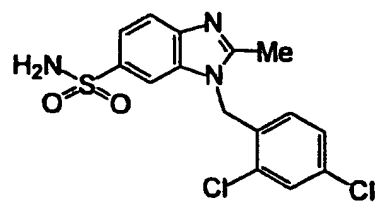
(347)



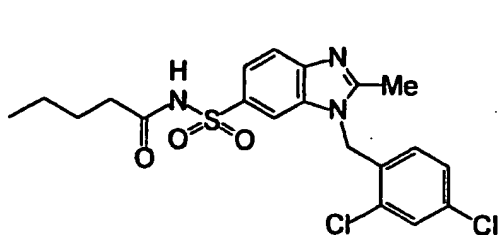
(348)



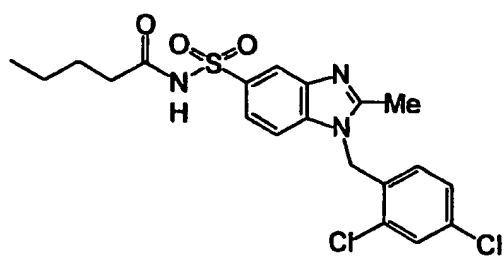
(349)



(350)

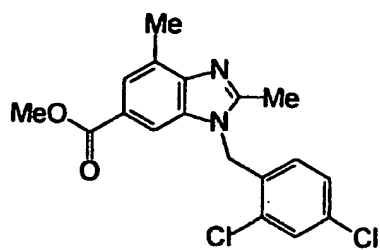


(351)

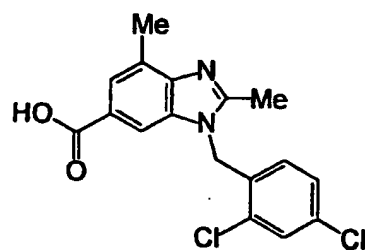


(352)

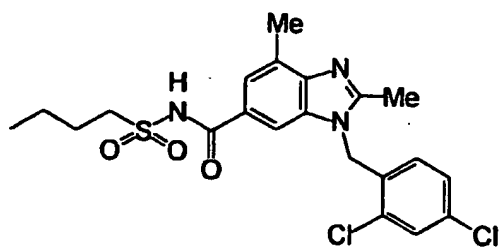
FIG. 53



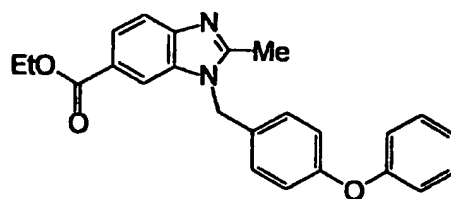
(353)



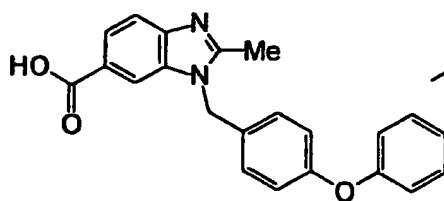
(354)



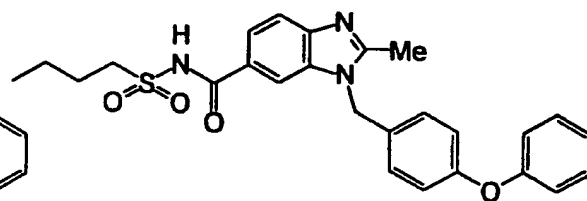
(355)



(356)

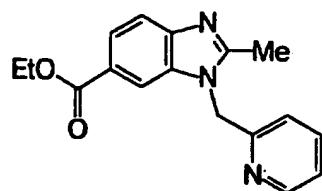


(357)

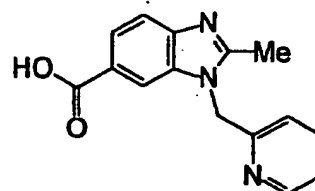


(358)

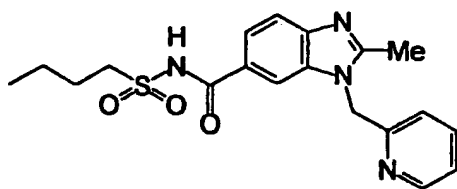
FIG. 54



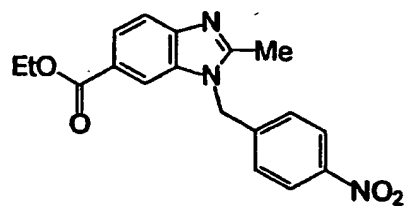
(359)



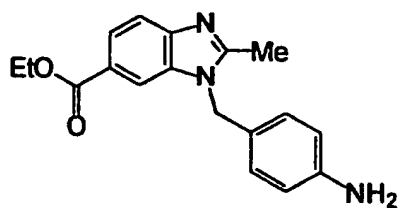
(360)



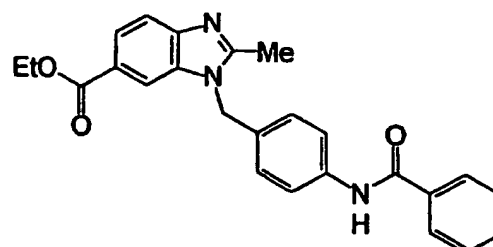
(361)



(362)



(363)



(364)

FIG. 55

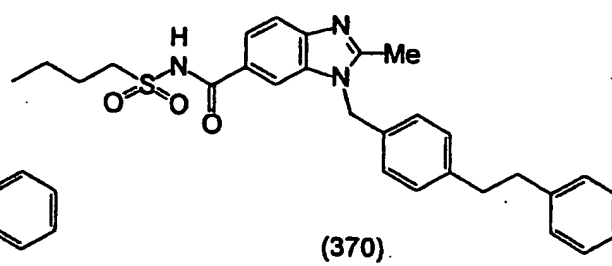
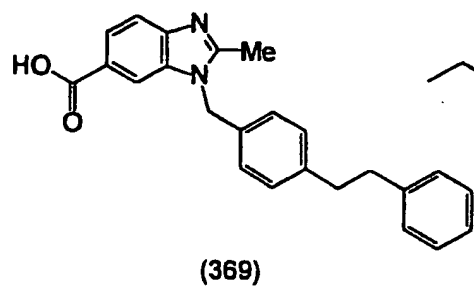
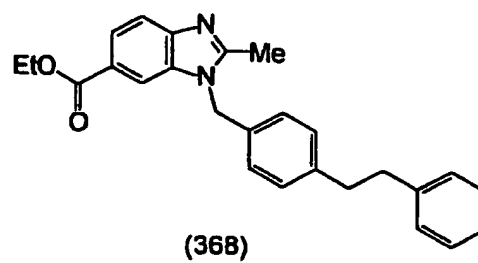
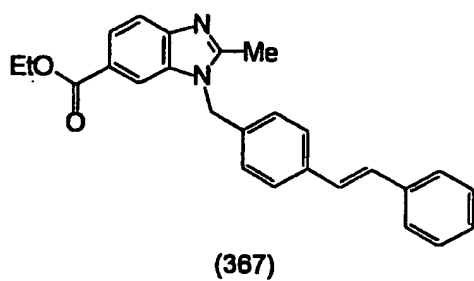
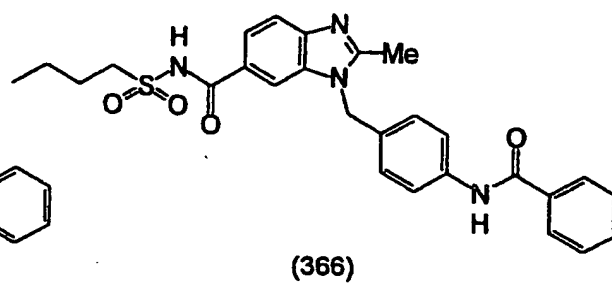
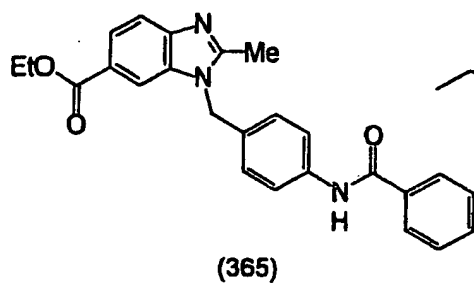


FIG. 56

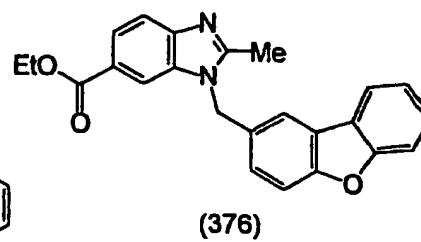
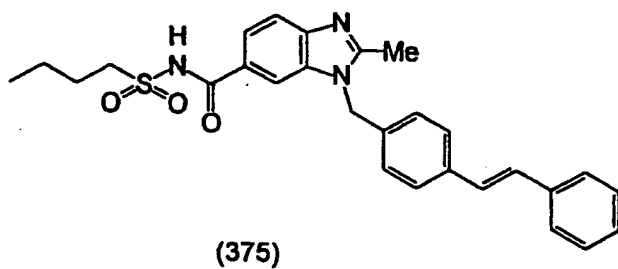
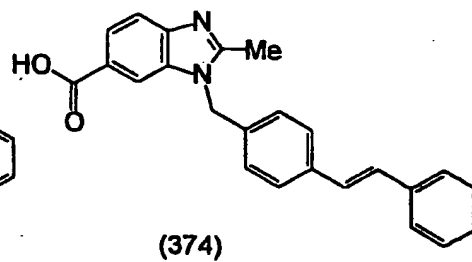
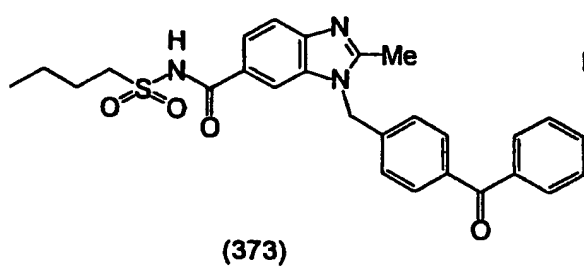
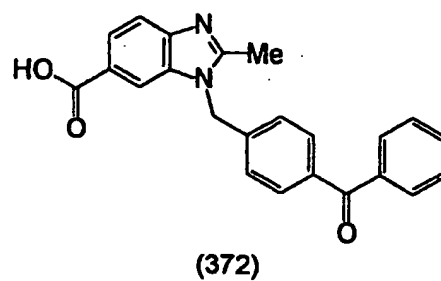
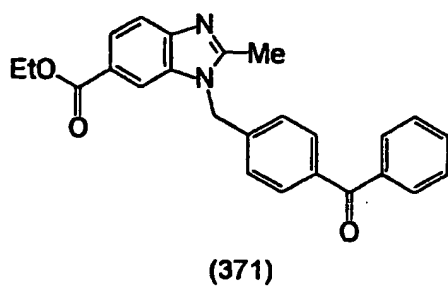
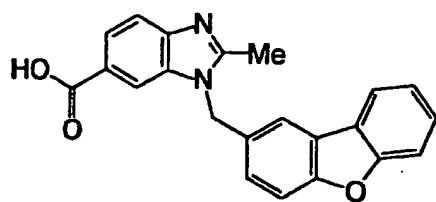
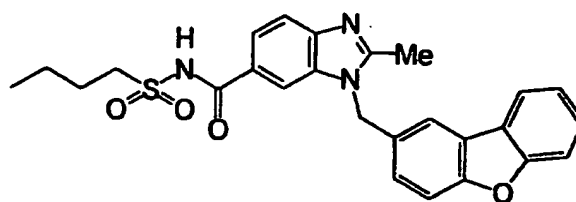


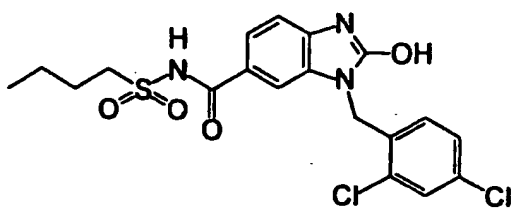
FIG. 57



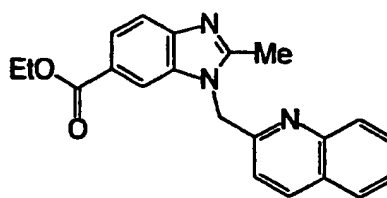
(377)



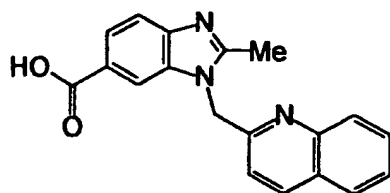
(378)



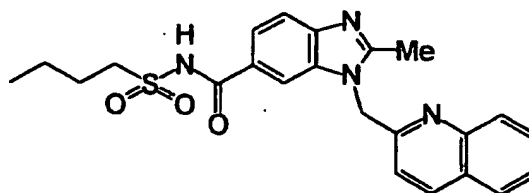
(379)



(380)

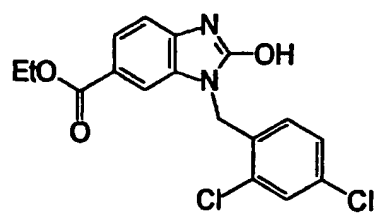


(381)

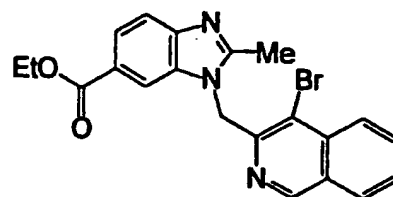


(382)

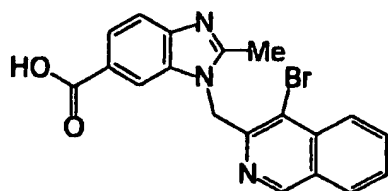
FIG. 58



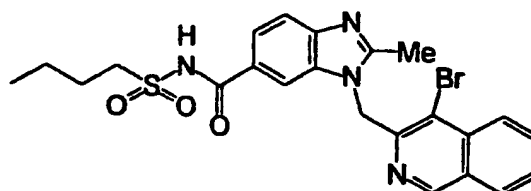
(383)



(384)



(385)



(386)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP96/03858

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER Int. Cl. ⁶ C07D235/08, C07D235/10, C07D235/22, C07D235/24, C07D235/26, C07D235/28, C07D235/30, C07D401/06 235, C07D401/12 235, C07D405/06 235, C07D417/14 235, According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC		
B. FIELDS SEARCHED Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols) Int. Cl. ⁶ C07D235/08, C07D235/10, C07D235/22, C07D235/24, C07D235/26, C07D235/28, C07D235/30, C07D401/06 235, C07D401/12 235, C07D405/06 235, Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched		
Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used) CAS ONLINE		
C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
PX	WO, 96-16644, A (Pfizer Ltd.), June 6, 1996 (06. 06. 96), Claims 1, 3 (Family: none)	1, 2, 15, 21, 22, 24
X	JP, 5-507469, A (Smith Kline Beecham Corp.), October 28, 1993 (28. 10. 93), Claims 1, 17 to 20; examples 3, 4, 8, 9 & WO, 91-16313, A & EP, 525129, A & US, 5294631, A	1, 2, 15, 18, 20, 24
X	JP, 5-222000, A (Fujisawa Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd.), August 31, 1993 (31. 08. 93), Claims 1 to 4; page 2, column 4, lines 15 to 18 (Family: none)	1, 2, 4, 5, 15, 20, 21, 22, 24, 25, 26
X	JP, 51-133267, A (Eli Lilly and Co.), November 18, 1976 (18. 11. 76), Examples 1, 2 & BE, 830719, A	15
X	JP, 3-218362, A (Yamanouchi Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd.),	15
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. <input type="checkbox"/> See patent family annex.		
* Special categories of cited documents: "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art "&" document member of the same patent family		
Date of the actual completion of the international search April 1, 1997 (01. 04. 97)		Date of mailing of the international search report April 15, 1997 (15. 04. 97)
Name and mailing address of the ISA/ Japanese Patent Office Facsimile No.		Authorized officer Telephone No.

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1992)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP96/03858

C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
	September 25, 1991 (25. 09. 91), Page 6, lower right column; page 7, upper left column; page 8, upper left column, upper right column & EP, 376624, A & US, 4977175, A	
X	JP, 6-179659, A (Dr. Karl Thomae GmbH.), June 28, 1994 (28. 06. 94), Claim 1; example 1 & EP, 581166, A & US, 5591762, A	15
X	JP, 4-364171, A (Takeda Chemical Industries, Ltd.), December 16, 1992 (16. 12. 92), Claim 1; page 4, column 5, lines 30 to 35; page 15, column 27; reference examples 14 to 16, 18, 20, 21 & EP, 459136, A & US, 5328919, A	15, 25
X	JP, 53-141287, A (Junssen Pharmaceutica N.V.), December 8, 1978 (08. 12. 78), Page 13, lower right column; example 9 & US, 4179505, A	15, 25
X	M.R. Hague et al., Ambient heterocyclic reactivity: Alkylation of 4-substituted and 2,4-disubstituted benzinidazoles, Aust. J. Chem., Vol. 47, No. 8 (1994) p. 1523-1535, especially p. 1534	17
X	L. Garuti et al., Synthesis and antimycotic activity of some benzyloxyimino compounds, Pharmazie, Vol. 42, No. 6 (1987) p. 378-381, compound 17	17

Form PCT/ISA/210 (continuation of second sheet) (July 1992)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP96/03858

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of Item 1 of first sheet)

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.: 3, 6, 9, 12, 23
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
Namely, the inventions of Claims 3, 6, 9, 12 and 23 pertain to
methods for treatment of the human or animal body by therapy.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such
an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of Item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all
searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite
payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report
covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is
restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

Form PCT/ISA/210 (continuation of first sheet (1)) (July 1992)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP96/03858

A. (Continuation) CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

C07D417/10 235, A61K31/415, A61K31/44

B. (Continuation) FIELD SEARCHED

C07D417/14 235, C07D417/10 235, A61K31/415, A61K31/44

PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN

(11)Publication 04-308533

n number :

(43)Date of 30.10.1992

publication of

application :

(51)Int.Cl.

A61K 45/06

A61K 31/275

A61K 31/40

A61K 31/41

A61K 31/425

A61K 31/455

A61K 31/47

A61K 31/55

(21)Applicati 03-310608

on number :

(22)Date of 26.11.1991

filing :

(71)Applicant HOECHST AG

:

(72)Inventor : BECKER REINHARD

HENNING RAINER

TEETZ VOLKER

URBACH HANSJOERG

(30)Priority

Priority number : 90 4037691 Priority date : 27.11.1990 Priority country : DE

**(54) USE OF COMBINATION OF ANGIOTENSIN-CONVERTING ENZYME
INHIBITOR WITH CALCIUM ANTAGONIST IN THE TREATMENT OF
PROTEINURIA**



(57)Abstract:

PURPOSE: To prevent and treat proteinurea by using a combination of an angiotensin-converting enzyme(ACE) inhibitor with a calcium antagonist.

CONSTITUTION: A combination of a ACE inhibitor, for example, a compound of formula I [n is 1, 2; R is H, a 1-8C aliphatic group, a 3-9 alicyclic group, an 6-12C aromatic group; R1 is H, a

1-6C aliphatic group, a 3-9C alicyclic group, a 4-13C alicyclo-aliphatic group; R2 and R3 are each H, a 1-6C aliphatic group, a 6-12C aromatic group, a 7-16C aroaliphatic group; R4 and R5 form heterocyclic mono-, di- or tricyclic ring] with (B) a Ca antagonist, for example, a compound of formula II (R6 is methyl, ethyl, isopropyl; R7 is methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, 1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl) is used for prevention and therapy of proteinurea. the component A is, for example, ramipril, trandolapril or quinapril, while the component B is, for example, verapamil, diltiazem or nifedipine.

LEGAL STATUS

[Date of request for examination]

[Date of sending the examiner's decision of rejection]

[Kind of final disposal of application other than the examiner's decision of rejection or application converted registration]

[Date of final disposal for application]

[Patent number]

[Date of registration]

[Number of appeal against examiner's decision of rejection]

[Date of requesting appeal against examiner's decision of rejection]

[Date of extinction of right]

Copyright (C); 1998,2003 Japan Patent Office